



# Thai for Beginners

Jacob Y. de Groot



# Thai for Beginners





# Thai for Beginners

Jacob Y. de Groot



Prince of Songkhla University, Phuket Campus  
2010

Text: Copyright © Jacob Y. de Groot 2010  
Illustrations: Copyright © Jacob Y. de Groot 2010  
Jacob Y. de Groot has asserted his right under the Copyright, Designs  
and Patents Act 1988 to be identified as the author of this work.

## Table of Contents

Table of Contents	V
Introduction	IX
 <b>Lesson 1: Introduction to language, grammar and script</b>	 1
ความรู้เบื้องต้นในการใช้ภาษาไทย	
1.1 Introduction	3
1.2 The Thai language	4
1.3 The Thai alphabet	5
1.4 The alphabet and the five tones	13
1.5 Diacritics and punctuation marks	19
1.6 Writing Thai	20
1.7 Our transcription method	20
1.8 Thai grammar and script	24
1.9 Exercises	24
 <b>Lesson 2: Questions and answers</b>	 27
คำถามและคำตอบ	
2.1 Introduction	29
2.2 The Thai sentence (1)	29
2.3 Cultural notes: Khunna, Decha and Bunkhun	34
2.4 Characteristics of the Thai language	36
2.5 The Thai sentence (2)	36
2.6 Exercises	41
2.7 Answers to exercise 1	42
 <b>Lesson 3: Introducing yourself</b>	 43
การแนะนำตัว	
3.1 Introduction	45
3.2 Introducing yourself	45
3.3 Idioms, polite gestures, greetings	51
3.4 The verb “to be”	53
3.5 Exercises	55
3.6 Answers to the exercises	56
 <b>Lesson 4: Two friends</b>	 59
เพื่อนผู้หญิงสองคน	
4.1 Introduction	61
4.2 Dialogue	62
4.3 The tones 1: the mid tone and the low tone	68

4.4	Grammar and idioms: Words for ‘and’; ‘the word ‘แล้ว’; long loan words from foreign languages	69
4.5	Exercises	71
4.6	Answers to exercise 1	71

## **Lesson 5: In the morning at the university** 73

### **ตอนเช้าที่มหาวิทยาลัย**

5.1	Introduction	75
5.2	Dialogue 1	75
5.3	Dialogue 2	84
5.4	Idioms	87
5.5	The tones 2: The mid tone and the high tone	88
5.6	Grammar: Head nouns; Classifiers; Degrees of comparison; Manners of speech	88
5.7	Exercises	93
5.8	Answers to exercise 1	94

## **Lesson 6: A relaxing weekend in Hua Hin** 95

### **วันสุดสัปดาห์พักผ่อนที่หัวหิน**

6.1	Introduction	97
6.2	Dialogue	97
6.3	The tones 3: The mid tone, the rising tone and the falling tone	105
6.4	Idioms; Personal pronouns; Particles, interjections and stopgaps	106
6.5	Grammar: ไป and มา as directional verbs	108
6.6	Exercises	110
6.7	Answers to exercise 1	110

## **Lesson 7: Joy! Wake up!** 113

### **จอย! ตื่นได้แล้ว!**

7.1	Introduction	115
7.2	Dialogue	115
7.3	Idioms: The polite final particle; names, relation terms and functions used as personal pronouns; the phrase ‘ไม่เป็นไร’;	125
7.4	Writing I: The consonants ก - ฉ	127
7.5	Exercises	129
7.6	Answers to exercise 1	130

## **Lesson 8: Welcome** 133

### **ยินดีต้อนรับ**

8.1	Introduction	135
8.2	Dialogue	135
8.3	Grammar: Repetition and addition: the Thai sentence; Idiomatic expressions;	140
8.4	Writing II: The consonants ญ - ถ	142



8.5 Exercises	143
8.6 Answers to exercise 1	145
<b>Lesson 9: Meeting family at the airport</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>มา รับ ญาติ ที่ ดอน เมือง</b>	
9.1 Introduction	149
9.2 Dialogue	149
9.3 Idioms	156
9.4 Grammar: Leaving out the subject; the negation: Rehearsal and additional constructions	158
9.5 Cultural notes	165
9.6 Writing III: The consonants ท - ภ	166
9.7 Theoretical overview of the five tones	168
9.8 Exercises	169
9.9 Answers to exercises 1 and 2	171
<b>Lesson 10: At the restaurant</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>ที่ ภัตตาคาร</b>	
10.1 Introduction	175
10.2 Dialogue	175
10.3 Idioms	185
10.4 Grammar: Meanings of the word “ได้”; intensifying or mitigating negations; the causative and its negation; Saying ‘no’ Negative conditional clauses	186
10.5 Cultural note	194
10.6 Writing IV: The consonants ม - ฮ	195
10.7 Exercises	196
10.8 Answers to exercises 1 and 2	198
<b>Lesson 11: Stuck in traffic again</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>รถ ติด อีก แล้ว</b>	
11.1 Introduction	203
11.2 Dialogue	204
11.3 Idioms	219
11.4 Grammar: The imperative mood and its negative; the passive voice	220
11.5 Cultural notes	222
11.6 - Writing V: The vowels and diphthongs	223
- Writing VI: The triphthongs	224
- Writing VII: Unwritten vowel sounds (inherent vowels)	225
11.7 Diacritics and punctuation marks	225
11.8 Exercises	226
11.9 Answers to exercise 1	227

<b>Lesson 12: Out on the town in Bangkok</b>	229
<b>ไปเที่ยวกรุงเทพ ฯ</b>	
12.1 Introduction	231
12.2 Dialogue	231
12.3 Idioms: Spoken language: Stopgaps, abbreviations and link words	244
12.4 Cultural notes	246
12.5 Irregularities in Thai spelling and class modifiers	248
12.6 Writing VIII: The script and the tones; further instructions in reading and writing	250
12.7 Exercises	257
12.8 Answers to exercise 1	257

## Introduction

**T**hai is a member of the Tai subgroup within the Tai-Kadai language family. Tai languages are spoken in an area that stretches from south-western China and North Vietnam to north-eastern India. Thai is by far the largest language within the Tai subgroup. Languages closely related to Thai are Lao, the national language of Laos, and Shan, the language spoken in the Shan state in Burma. From the eighth century, Tai speakers migrated from their homeland in southern China towards the areas now dominated by them in present-day Thailand, Laos and Burma. In Thailand, they replaced the former inhabitants of the area, the Mon and the Khmer, almost completely.

Sukhothai, the first Thai nation state, was founded in 1238 AD. The kingdom was conquered in 1376 by the young Thai kingdom of Ayutthaya, which had been founded in 1350. Four hundred years later, in 1767, Ayutthaya fell to the Burmese. From the chaos, the Thai people arose under General Taksin, who subsequently led the country from 1769 until 1782, and founded a new capital: Thonburi. The present Thai kingdom, named ‘Siam’ until 24 June 1939<sup>1</sup>, was founded in 1782 by Chao Phraya Chakri. He moved the capital from Thonburi to Bangkok, on the other side of the Chao Phraya River. As Buddha Yodfa Chulalok, or Rama I, Chao Phraya Chakri became the first king of the Chakri Dynasty, which rules Thailand up to this day. The present King Bhumibol Adulyadet is the ninth Chakri Monarch.

Within the Thai language, there exist four main dialects: Central Thai, North-eastern Thai (Isan), Northern Thai (Kham Muang) and Southern Thai (Tâi). The national language of Thailand, and therefore the most prestigious dialect, is Central Thai (phaasāa klaang), which is spoken as a mother tongue in the 26 provinces of the Chao Praya basin, the northernmost part of the Malay peninsula and the northern coast of the Gulf of Thailand. To the east, the area includes the provinces Trat, Chantaburi and Sa Kaew on the Cambodian border, to the north the provinces Prachinburi, Nakhon Nayok, Saraburi, Lopburi, Chai Nat and Suphanburi; to the west the provinces Kanchanaburi and Phetburi, and the southernmost province where Central Thai is spoken is Prachuap Khiri Khan. The national capital, Bangkok, lies right in the middle of this area. Central Thai is taught from the first grade of primary school throughout the country to every Thai child, and thus every Thai who has been to school can speak and understand it. Through this course, you will learn this dominant central dialect of the Thai language. From now on, the language will be called ‘Thai’.

Thai is spoken as a first or as a second language<sup>2</sup> by around 60 million people, most of whom live in Thailand. Through migration, a large number of Thais live in the United States. In Europe, significant numbers of Thais live in Great Britain, Germany, the Netherlands and France. Lively Thai communities also exist in Australia, Malaysia, Singapore and Japan.

---

<sup>1</sup> The official name of the country was Siam until 24 June 1939, when it was changed into Thailand; The country was called Siam again in 1945, until the name Thailand eventually became official again on 11 May 1949.

<sup>2</sup> If one would consider Isan, Kham Muang and Tâi as separate languages. 99 % of the speakers of these dialects also speaks and understands Central Thai. Within the large Chinese communities in the cities, there is nobody who doesn't speak Central Thai as a first or a second language. The Mon communities in Kanchanaburi, Ratchaburi, Ayutthaya, Lopburi and Bangkok are mostly Thai monolingual. Around 50,000 of the 120,000 Thai of Mon origin still speak Mon at home (especially the Mon in Bangkok). The Khmer community around Surin, Si Saket and Buri Ram (around a million people) is bilingual.

This practical Thai course is comprised of 60 lessons divided into three unequal parts. The first part, 'Thai for Beginners' is a twelve-lesson elementary introduction to the Thai language. In this first part, you will be offered sufficient learning material to gain a basic knowledge of modern Thai. For beginners, an important part of the learning process is mastering the Thai script. Without being able to read and write, it is simply impossible to learn Thai well. In the first part of the course, emphasis is also given to important grammatical features as sentence construction and the all-important basic vocabulary. After conclusion of 'Thai for Beginners', you will be able to communicate with Thai people on a basic level, as well as be able to read and write simple texts in Thai.

In the next 36 lessons, 'Intermediate Thai', your knowledge will be augmented and improved towards an advanced level. Finally, the intermediate course is followed up by a twelve-lesson course called 'Thai for Advanced Students', in which the finesses of the correct usage of spoken and written Thai will be further explained. After completion of the whole course, you will be able to converse fluently in the language and understand it proficiently. You will also be able to read modern Thai texts (novels, newspapers and magazines), and you will be sufficiently equipped to independently further your mastery of the Thai language.

Each lesson in the course exists of:

- An introduction;
- A text, called 'dialogue', written in Thai, followed in the course for beginners by a combined transcription and literal word-for-word translation (a word-for-word translation in English is given under each transcribed line of text). In the course for intermediate students a transcription and word-for-word translation is still given in lessons 1-12, but in an appendix at the end of each lesson. Word-for word translations - without transcription - are given up to and including lesson 32 for intermediate students. After that, only translations in natural English are given. All dialogues in the course are meant as practical reading exercises, but function in the mean time as listening exercises. To this course belong 13 CDs, recorded with native speakers' renditions of the dialogues of every lesson;
- A Thai-English vocabulary list of all new words appearing in the dialogue. Up to and including lesson 12 for intermediate students, the vocabulary lists are provided with a transcription of each Thai word in phonetic script. The vocabulary lists appear in a spoken version on the CDs belonging with the course;
- A translation of the dialogue in natural English;
- A theoretical part, consisting of one or more articles on language or culture. Articles on language are on script and writing, grammar, idiom and vocabulary. These 'linguistic' articles are supplemented with short essays on Thai society, customs and culture;
- Tone exercises: In lessons 4 through 6 for beginners exercises are given to familiarize you with the five tones of the Thai language;
- Exercises, consisting of translation exercises, fill-in exercises or questions. For part of the exercises a key is given. The rest of the exercises is meant to be corrected by a teacher in a classroom situation or as homework given;
- The key to part of the exercises.

### 1. Introduction

The introduction offers some short background information about the events about to take place in the dialogue. When the dialogue is a sequel of the previous lesson's dialogue, a summary of prior events is given. The introduction also mentions which grammar and culture articles the lesson includes, and it prepares you for changes in format of a new series of lessons.



## 2. Dialogue

### 2.1. Form of the dialogue

In lessons 4 for beginners up to and including lesson 30 for intermediate students, the text part of each lesson consists of dialogue, introduced and connected by paragraphs in prose. These dialogues and connecting texts are written in Thai script. In the first 23 lessons of which a dialogue is a part, a concession is done to the beginning student: In Thai, traditionally no space is used between words; all words in a sentence are written in an uninterrupted sequence of characters. Only between clauses and sentences is a ligature (วรรณ) found. This ligature often appears approximately at the same points in a text where writers of the Latin script would place a period, colon, semicolon or comma, but beware - not always and exactly.

In view of the training you must undergo in word pattern recognition, the words will be written separated by a space in all dialogues of the lessons up to and including lesson 12 for intermediate students. From lesson 13 for intermediate students on, the sentences in the dialogues will be written long and without spaces, as is usual in a Thai written text.

In the beginning of the course, emphasis is laid on actual dialogue: conversation between people. A large part of the texts in the dialogue are, therefore, written in dialogue format:

*Name of the character that speaks:            Spoken words without quotation marks.*

As the course - and you along with it - develops, descriptive parts in prose will become of increasing importance within the dialogue. They will eventually substitute all text in dialogue format after lesson 31 for intermediate students. After this point, conversation will still be an important element in the lessons, but will be written between quotation marks, as in a novel.

Finally, in the last few chapters of the course for advanced students, some media articles have been reproduced as reading exercises. The text of these articles is not available on CD, and has to be considered as a preparation on further reading outside the framework of the course. In the articles, the Thai variant of short descriptive reportage style is offered against the general language of the dialogue format and the narrative style in the later lessons.

The texts meant for reading and listening at the beginning of each lesson are indicated with the nominative 'dialogue' during the entire course; whether they are indeed mainly in dialogue format, or whether they are in fact prose texts with dialogue between quotation marks. On the CDs, real dialogue as well as prose with dialogue within quotation marks is presented as a radio play: the narrative texts and the voices of the characters are read and acted by different voice actors.

### 2.2. Transcription and translation

Transcription method: The transcription of the Thai script in this course is loosely based on existing methods, (notably IPA – International Phonetic Alphabet, and the Mary Haas transcription) but has been adapted to the needs of the non-linguistically schooled speaker of English. Some signs in the transcription script will require a short period of habituation, such as the sign 'c', which is used as the transcription of the sound of the Thai letter 'จ'; a voiceless unaspirated alveolo-palatal affricate. The IPA symbol for it is: tɕ, and it is a sound similar to the sound one would get if one would pronounce the 'ch' in 'change', but without the aspiration (the puff of air that follows the sound), which in English is always inherent to the 'ch'-sound. The Thai language *also* knows this aspirated variant of this phoneme (the voiceless *aspirated* alveolo-palatal affricate; noted in IPA as tɕʰ), which is in fact so similar to the 'ch' in 'change' that an English speaker could use this English 'ch' to pronounce the Thai characters for the sound tɕʰ, which are written 'จ', 'ช' and 'ฉ'. In our transcription system, 'ch' is

therefore maintained as transcription of all Thai tɕ<sup>h</sup>-sounds. Equally, for the transcription of the close back unrounded vowel ɯ (IPA) - which doesn't exist in English or any other Western European language, but which in Thai has a short and a long variant (written 'อี' and 'อื' respectively) - the easy to remember symbols 'ue' (short) and 'ue' (long) have been chosen. The mid central rounded vowel ə (IPA), which occurs in French in words like 'je' and 'ce', and in Thai in words like 'เอะ' (short) and 'เอิน' (long) is transcribed as 'eu' (short) and 'eu' (long). Thai vowels with equivalents in English are, for instance เ: 'e' (as in 'lane', 'main', 'may'), which in the transcription appear in transcription as 'e' (short; Thai: เะ; เอี-) and 'ee' (long; Thai: เอ), and for IPA 'ɛ' (as in 'met', 'cat'. Short; Thai: แะ; แี-), and 'εε' (as in 'man', 'dad'. Long; Thai: แอ), IPA transcription is maintained; these phonemes are thus transcribed as 'ε' (short) as 'εε' (long).

In the transcription, the five tones of Thai are indicated with diacritics: The *accent égue* (ô) indicates the high tone, the *accent grave* (ò) the low tone, the *accent circonflexe* (ô) the falling tone, and the 'háček' or 'caron' (ǎ) the rising tone. The mid tone doesn't get any diacritic (o).

With this simple but effective transcription system, which is explained completely in lesson 1, care has been taken that while learning the Thai alphabet during the initial stage of your study, you are not also overwhelmed with too many unknown characters from, for example, the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA). The transcription system used in the course is fast and easy to learn with a minimal effort.

... And don't forget: once the Thai alphabet has been completely mastered, the transcription script should immediately be discarded.

Transcription and word-for-word translation: In lessons 4 through 12 for beginners, the transcription of the dialogues is given directly under the Thai dialogues. Under every transcribed line, a literal translation of each transcribed word is given in a one-to-one or word-for-word translation. The transcription is meant to provide the beginning student with an immediate hold on the pronunciation of the matter which is read or listened to. In the mean time, the word-for-word translation under the transcription shows the meaning of each separate word or morpheme, and offers you an insight in how the Thai sentence is constructed. In lessons 1 through 12 for intermediate students, a combined transcription and word-for-word translation of the dialogue has been added to each lesson as an appendix. A word-for-word translation (without the by then redundant transcription) still follows each dialogue up to and including lesson 32 for intermediate students. From lesson 33 for intermediate students at the latest, you are supposed to understand Thai well enough to be able to follow each lesson without the help of a word-for-word translation.

Translation: Until the end of the course, a translation in natural English is given of each dialogue. This translation tries to stay as close as possible to the contents and atmosphere of the original Thai text. Because of the completely different character of source- and target language, it will sometimes be impossible to transfer all finesses of the Thai language into English. In some instances, footnotes are used to explicate sayings or puns, or to clarify a cultural reference.

### 2.3. Content of the dialogue

The course is meant to make it as pleasant as possible for you to learn the Thai language. The dialogues in each lesson are therefore arranged as a collection of short stories and novellas. The adventures of a small number of main characters are used as a framework to offer you an instructive and, in the meantime, as attractive as possible tour around the Thai language. Main protagonists in the course are:

- ‘Joy’ Jintana Chakraphet is a student of English and French at Chulalongkorn University. She is intelligent, curious, adventurous and pretty. Joy comes from a wealthy and socially respected family. Her father is a pilot with Thai Airways, her mother a TV-personality. Joy’s parents are acquainted with many persons of high standing. In lesson 10 for intermediate students, Joy becomes a fashion model, and this work brings her into contact with several secondary characters. Joy has an older brother named Sua.
- Nikki Wolf is also a student at Chulalongkorn University. She has a Dutch father (a successful expatriate) and a Thai mother. Nikki likes to shop and to go out. Her character is more traditional than Joy’s, but Nikki loves to follow her friend in all kinds of adventures. At the beginning of the course for intermediate students, she starts to date Joy’s brother Sua.
- Maew is from North-eastern Thailand. She is a student at Ramkhamhaeng University. Her father is a Colonel of Police in Bangkok. She has a brother, Krit, who is friends with Joy’s brother Sua and with Vincent (see below). Maew has a quieter and more subdued character than her friends, but she takes them to places where the two Bangkokian girls might not go on their own. During the intermediate course, she starts dating Vincent.
- ‘Sua’ Surasak Chakraphet is Joy’s elder brother. He is a recent naval engineering graduate. He takes his sister and her friends often out on trips in Bangkok and on short holidays. He really likes to do this, because he has designs upon Joy’s friend Nikki. From lesson 7 of the intermediate course on, Sua and Nikki are a couple.
- Vincent Wolf is Nikki’s cousin, a Dutchman. Sua and Maew’s brother Krit often take him out to bars and night spots in Bangkok. He also often functions as a chaperone and driver for Joy, Nikki and Maew when they go on holiday. Vincent is an interested observer who speaks Thai fluently already. Eventually he moves into a relationship with Maew, and marries her.

The Thai main protagonists have been designed as modern young Bangkokians: intelligent, well educated, curious, eager to travel and explore, and born in the educated classes of the population. The foreigner, Vincent, functions now and then as an inquirer on one or the other thing, but his Thai is more than fluent (on the CD’s, Vincent’s voice is provided by a native speaker of Thai). These five characters appear in a large number of different situations, and go through a couple of interesting, sometimes exciting adventures during the course.

On the one hand, the stories in the dialogues describe regular situations and places in which, sooner or later, you will certainly find yourself as well. On the other hand, the adventures of the protagonists are used to introduce you to themes like politics and social problems, and to literary styles such as the ghost story and the crime story; both very popular in Thailand. Also, certain historical events will be introduced within the dialogues.

Other characters that play a role in more than one lesson are Joy’s parents, Nikki’s father, Maew’s brother Krit, fashion photographer Wasan Charupakorn, Maew’s uncle Wirote, former child-prostitute Jiap, Chintamani, the ghost of a Princess from Ayutthaya, Police Colonel Samrueng Dechakrachang, gunman for hire Manas Chatuwong and former communist rebel Wirachai Na Pomphet.

### 3. Vocabulary list

All lessons – except lesson 1, which doesn’t contain any dialogue or reading texts – include one or more vocabulary lists. With each dialogue belongs a main vocabulary list, which follows behind the Thai dialogue and auxiliary translations (transcriptions and word-for-word translations), and precedes the English translation of the dialogue. New words from the dialogue are arranged in order of appearance in the text. Up to lesson 12 for intermediate students, every Thai word is accompanied by a transcription. From lesson 13 for intermediate students on, transcriptions are only given of words with an irregular or ambiguous spelling, and words which contain exceptions on the tone rules.

#### 4. Learning how to read and write

The first lesson of the course consists of an outline of the Thai alphabet. The consonants and vowels are given, as are the consonant classes and tone markers, and the tone rules are explained. Punctuation marks and diacritics are introduced and the transcription method is explained. Lesson 1 contains all basic information on language and script, and should be used as reference material while studying the following lessons.

In lessons 2 through 6, a small but useful vocabulary is built up, and the very basics of Thai grammar are explained. The correct pronunciation of the tones will be practiced through tone exercises. In lessons 7 through 11 for beginners, you will be made thoroughly acquainted with the alphabet and with the way the Thai write their language.

The alphabet is discussed as follows:

In lesson 7: The consonants ก, ข, ฃ, ค, ฅ, ฆ, ง, จ, ฉ, ช, ฌ and ฎ;

In lesson 8: The consonants ฏ, ฐ, ฑ, ฒ, ณ, ด, ต and ถ;

In lesson 9: The consonants ท, ธ, น, บ, ป, ผ, ฝ, พ, ฟ and ภ;

In lesson 10: The consonants ม, ย, ร, ล, ว, ษ, ส, ห, พ, อ and ฮ;

In lesson 11: The vowels

In lesson 12 for beginners, the theory of the consonant classes and the tone rules are repeated intensively, and the most common spelling anomalies are given. Eventually, by means of a list of 32 sample words, in which all consonants, vowels, consonant classes, tone rules, tone markers, diacritics and a choice of anomaly spellings are represented, it is clarified in detail how the combination of characters, diacritics and rules are used to represent the spoken word in written text.

It is not so that you will be effortlessly able to read any Thai text after having studied the first 12 lessons of the course. First of all, you will not yet be able to recognize Thai letters in a blink of the eye, as you are used to with Latin characters. And secondly, even if you were, your vocabulary is still not large enough to immediately recognize a word – or at least the beginning and the end of it – in a Thai text. The start has been made, though, and through the exercise which is offered in an increasing degree of difficulty during the next part of the course, you will quickly make progress. After having progressed to lesson 11 or 12 of the intermediate course, you will be able to read the Thai texts (still printed with spaces between words) without much difficulty. Four or five lessons further, the natural way of Thai writing (without spaces) won't be too difficult any more.

#### 5. Grammar

As every language, Thai uses a system of rules and principles that defines the structure of words, phrases and sentences. In the articles on grammar in this course, this system is clearly and concisely described, and explained with plenty of grammatical model sentences and examples.

In offering the learning material on grammar, thought has been given to what you will likely need most urgently to make yourself understood in your new language. On the other hand, attention is given to the grammatical oddities which make Thai so different from an Indo-European language as English. It is necessary to emphasize those differences at an early stage, so that you will learn to use those structures correctly from the beginning, and later reproduce them as an automatism. The earlier you will learn the differences between your mother tongue and Thai, the better you will later be able to use the language fluently and correctly.



With this set-up, you are made acquainted with the basic grammatical rules of the language at an early stage- a knowledge that will enable you to speak grammatically correct Thai at a grass-roots level in a relatively short time. In the meantime, you will not be spared any matter which might initially cause you to recoil, but in which a timely immersion will mean a great profit to you later.

Initial grammatical subjects include sentence structure, the use of nouns, adjectives and verbs (under which all possible translations of the verb ‘to be’). Also, attention is given to grammatical and idiomatical phenomena in Thai, which are almost or completely unknown in English, such as classifiers, the rich choice in (polite, neutral and familiar) personal pronouns, and the remarkable use of the words ‘ไป’ - ‘to go’ and ‘มา’ - ‘to come’ as direction markers in Thai.

From lesson 1 for intermediate students on, when you are sufficiently intimate with the script, tones and basic grammar of your new language, all other grammatical features of the Thai language will be explained.

The language in which the grammar articles are written is kept as clear and simple as possible. Linguistic vernacular outside the simplest grammatical terminology is explained. In all cases where examples can illustrate an issue more clearly, models or frames are given. Sample sentences further explain the matter.

In many cases, the grammar article in a lesson will conclude an aspect of Thai grammar, but sometimes a grammatical subject is spread over two or more lessons. Related subjects are covered in consecutive lessons. Some subjects discussed on a basic level in the first twelve lessons will be repeated and expanded in the intermediate section of the course. Some examples are:

- In lesson 1 for intermediate students, the character and use of adjectives in Thai is explained. In lesson 2, the matter is expanded in an article on composite adjectives. Finally, in lessons 3 and 4 the comparison is covered.
- In lesson 5 for beginners, you’ll be made acquainted with the existence and the use of classifiers. Subsequently, you’ll learn more classifiers ‘along the way’ by continuing reading the dialogues. Finally, in lesson 10 for intermediate students, attention is again directed towards the subject, and a list is given of the most frequently used classifiers.
- In lesson 11 for beginners, the imperative mode and its negative are discussed. In lesson 17 for intermediate students, the subject of the negative imperative is expanded. Finally, in lesson 27 for intermediate students, a list of example sentences is given with imperatives and incentives in several gradations of urgency and politeness.

Through gradual expansion of the learning matter, it is avoided that you are forced to learn everything about a subject at once. Besides, by repetition and expansion of important or difficult subjects, you will understand and remember the matter better than when you learn it in just one go.

## 6. Idioms

The idiom of a language consists of phrases of figurative meaning and figures of speech. Sayings and proverbs also belong to these categories. Often, idioms have an anomalous grammatical form. The adage goes that only if one has mastered the difficult translatable idioms of a language, one may call oneself a fluent speaker of it. As an idiom-rich language, this goes maybe even more for Thai than for other languages.

In English, sayings and proverbs are often ‘fossilized’, and sound somewhat old fashioned and banal. In Thai, there also exist such truisms, but most sayings are adaptable. In popular language, maxims are often adapted according to the circumstance in which one wants to use

them. People don't only use them in their fixed forms, but vary them, and play word games with the adages, which then often convey very subtle messages. It is in your best interest to get acquainted with the basic forms of sayings and proverbs, on which all the variants they'll hear are based. Due to the short words of the language, the idioms sound snappy and vivacious. Alliteration, reduplication, internal rhyme and metre are also often used to make an idiom sound even better.

Articles on idioms are found spread throughout the course, but the pith of the matter can be found in lessons 33 through 36 (for intermediate) and 1 through 12 for advanced students. Next to the development of reading and writing Thai on an advanced level, a lot of attention is given to the study of Thai idioms in those lessons.

## **7. Cultural information**

While a language course might not be the ideal place to educate students in culture and customs of a country or people, language is not complete without a basic knowledge of the culture of the area where the language is spoken. In the course, a few of the most conspicuous traits of the Thai people, the Thai state and Thai society are described and explained. It must be pointed out emphatically that none of the many festivals or ceremonies that make the country famous is discussed, nor are cultural expressions as visual art, music or literature. Notes are made on cultural phenomena that cannot be helped being observed on a daily basis, that might interest people or leave them in wonder. Therefore, an article on Thai nicknames can be found in this course, and another about nobility in Thailand. There is a piece about the places where young Thai people like to go on holiday, another article is about non-lingual interaction and the traditional Thai greeting, the 'ไหว้' (*wâi*). Also, cultural background information is given in the explanation of not directly translatable concepts, such as in a cultural note on the different kinds of ghosts and supernatural beings one can find in Thailand. The further you advance in the course, the better your Thai will become, and the less reason there will be to explain Thai culture in English. The explanatory function is gradually taken over by the dialogues themselves, in which phenomena are explained in plain Thai. For instance, in the dialogues of the last chapters of the course the preparations for a Thai wedding are described, while the dialogues of lessons 1 through 6 for advanced students of the course takes place against the background of the student revolution of October 1973.

## **8. Tone exercises**

After a brief introduction to basic grammar and script, in the lessons 4 through 6 for beginners you will learn the five tones of Thai by examples and exercises. Tones are sometimes unknown to – and often underestimated by – the foreign student of Thai. As phonemes though, tones are just as important for the definition of the meaning of a word as consonants, vowels and diphthongs. The tone exercises are printed in the lessons in transcription script, and are to be found in spoken form on the appropriate CD. It is of great importance to be able to pronounce and hear the tones correctly as mid (level), low, rising, falling or high. After the special tone exercises in the lessons 4 through 6, your ear will be continuously trained in the appreciation of tones by listening to and repeating the dialogues and vocabulary lists of every lesson on the CDs.

## **9. Writing exercises and tests**

Exercises in the course - which can also be used as tests - are of two kinds. In each lesson there is a section in the exercises on which the answers are given. These exercises are mainly designed for those of you who study the course independently. Answers to the second part of the exercises are not given in the course. These exercises are primarily designed for students

who study the course with a mentor or teacher. Exercises of the second kind take a little more effort to complete; they also often ask you to formulate your personal opinion. Exercises in creative writing are frequently part of the tests from lesson 1 for intermediate students on. From the beginning of the course, you will be forced to use Thai. Initially, you will still be allowed to use the transcription script in answering questions and filling in exercises (before you have learned the whole alphabet through the several stages offered in the beginner's course), but in lesson 11 for beginners, you are asked for the first time to provide a translation of a number of sentences written in Thai script, while in lesson 12 for beginners, the answers on the exercises have to be given in both Thai and transcription script. From lesson 1 for intermediate students on, the answers on all exercises must be given exclusively in Thai script. In the part of the exercises on which the answers are not given, you will be forced to translate from English into Thai, or at a later stage, to think directly in Thai. The formulation of the exercises is therefore put in English, in order to keep you from the temptation of copying Thai words from the questions into your answers. Apart from supplying the right answer to the question, you also have to think about your right use of grammar and vocabulary. An extra, excellent exercise is formed through letting you search for words you don't know in the lessons, the vocabulary lists or in your dictionary.

In the exercises and tests not only the vocabulary and grammar given in the lesson concerned are rehearsed and tested. For most exercises, you'll have to reach back for information given in earlier lessons as well. In order to be able to answer each lesson's questions in good Thai sentences, you must always be on top of all grammar and vocabulary already explained. Obviously, also in the creative writing exercises your written language skills are tested on all levels.

## 11. Vocabulary lists and appendices

Two extensive vocabulary lists have been compiled for this course. The first is a list which contains all words used in the first 24 lessons of the course: lessons 1 through 12 for beginners; and lessons 1 through 12 for intermediate students. Every Thai word in this vocabulary is provided with a transcription and a comprehensive translation into English.

The main vocabulary list follows at the end of the course for advanced students. The Thai words in this list have not been transcribed. In both vocabularies, the number of the lesson in which each respective word appears for the first time is given in square brackets behind the entry.

Appendices are on the following subjects:

- Appendix 1: The alphabet, the tone rules and the consonant classes.
- Appendix 2: The 'alphabet song'
- Appendix 3: Classifiers
- Appendix 4: List of common abbreviations

## 12. Thanks

My thanks go to Prince of Songkla University's Faculty of International Studies (FIS), and Dean Supachai Sangpunya, who supported the idea of producing and publishing a comprehensive Thai language course for use at university level. Further thanks to Ass. Prof. Chitralada Sangpunya, who gave me the opportunity to teach Thai to our foreign students. Thanks to all my students for pointing out my inconsequences, typos and mistakes while studying from earlier editions of this work. And my special thanks to Ajarn Alexandra Gonzales, Ajarn Morgan Lake and Ajarn Scott Lithgow, who edited my English. Last but not least thanks to all my Thai friends and colleagues, who were always happy to answer any question on their language I could think of.





# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 1

### Introduction to language, grammar and script

ความรู้เบื้องต้นในการใช้ภาษาไทย

- 1.1 Introduction
- 1.2 The Thai language
- 1.3 The Thai alphabet
- 1.4 The alphabet and the five tones
- 1.5 Diacritics and punctuation marks
- 1.6 Writing Thai
- 1.7 Our transcription method
- 1.8 Thai grammar and script
- 1.9 Exercises

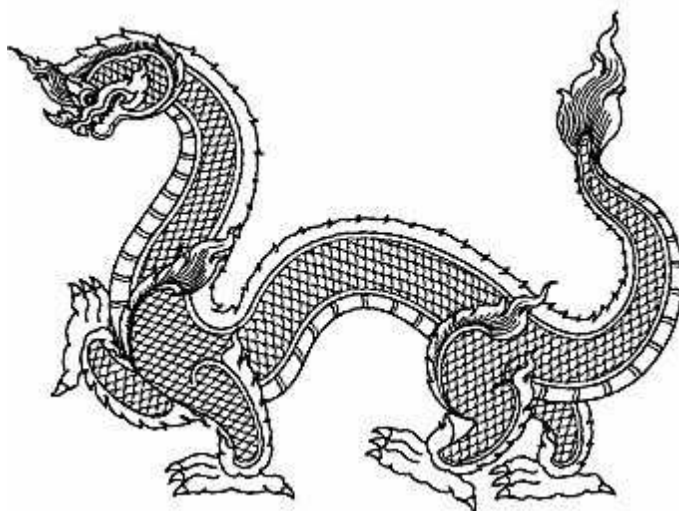




## 1.1 Introduction

If you want to learn Thai well, you will encounter some barriers which you didn't meet when you learned French or Spanish in secondary school. Thai is not an Indo-European language. It does not resemble English. Thai has taken some loan-words from Chinese, some from Malay, and another few hundred from Pali, Sanskrit, and Khmer. Even if you have made a thorough study of those languages, it won't help you with recognizing their meaning in Thai. In the course of your study of the language, you'll discover a significant number of loan-words from English, but initially, you'll be thoroughly swamped with information which you're badly going to need in learning to manage the language, but which you might not consider useful at first sight. The experience of every foreigner who has taken on this effort is: that after a short period of intensive study of a lot of theory, a stage will follow in which one will have become able to express oneself in Thai in a satisfying, adult way, without having to fall back into 'tourist-Thai' – that is: without picking up wrong habits which are difficult to get rid of later. After this second stage, during which one makes oneself familiar with the language up to a level of semi-fluency (through practical conversation and reading children's books and other simple texts), another phase of learning usually follows, in which one deepens one's knowledge of the language by reading newspapers and magazines, watching films and television programs, and having profound conversations with Thai friends. After that, a specialization in a scientific, religious or philosophical field might be something just for you.

This 12-lesson beginner's course has been written with the intention to lead you through the first stages of learning the Thai language.



The contents of this first lesson are offered for your review. The subject matter, which will probably seem rather intricate to a beginning student when browsing through this lesson, is not meant to learn by heart immediately at this stage, nor will you be expected to be able to apply everything of it actively and immediately. Gradually, the contents of the first lesson will be repeated, rehearsed and expanded over the next eleven lessons. This lesson is intended as an extensive introduction to the Thai language and the Thai writing system, and functions, next to the appendices, as fundamental back-up material that you may find convenient to use as a reminder during the course of your study.

## 1.2 The Thai Language

Thai is a member of the Tai-Kadai family of languages. Thai is spoken in Thailand, where it is the national language. Lao, the national language of the Laotian People's Republic, is closely related to Thai. In the Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region in the People's Republic of China, the northern Tai language Zhuang is spoken. Furthermore, a large ethnic group in Burma, the Shan, speaks a Tai language. Tai languages are also spoken in Northeastern India, Northern Vietnam, and Cambodia, where smaller groups use languages related to Thai as their mother tongue.

Different linguists maintain different theories about the origin of Thai and the relationship of Thai with other languages. But there is historical evidence which points to the fact that the Thai people, and with them their language, originate from southern China, from where they were driven south beginning in the ninth century C.E. (A.D.); first by the Han-Chinese, and later by the Mongols. In the area that stretches from contemporary Laos, North and Northeast Thailand, and the Shan State in Burma, Thai centers developed, which were reigned by warlords. Those sovereigns ruled over areas peopled with Thai, as well as Khmer, Mon and other ethnic groups. The first founding of a genuine Thai nation state took place in the eleventh century, culminating in the first great Thai kingdom, Sukhothai, with King Ramkhamhaeng the Great as its most influential ruler. The oldest still existing inscription in the Thai language is from that period. The Kingdom of Ayutthaya took over the function of Sukhothai as seat of a ruler who exacted tribute in exchange for protection in the late middle Ages. After feuding with the Burmese for hundreds of years, in 1767 Ayutthaya lost a decisive battle and was burnt to the ground. The Burmese didn't only demolish palaces and temples, but also all libraries in the area. From Thai as it was written before 1767, only stone inscriptions remain. The Burmese didn't stay, though. A general called Taksin pushed them back. Taksin built his capital in Thonburi, and was king for a while, but the first ruler of the Chakri Dynasty, the still ruling lineage of Kings, soon followed. The site of the capital city was moved to Bangkok on the other side of the Chao Phraya River. In 1782, Bangkok became the new capital of a new Thai state called Rattanakosin, after the ruling dynasty.

Foreigners had used the name 'Siam' for the Thai Kingdom of Ayutthaya for a long time, and it stuck during the first few decades of the Rattanakosin Dynasty as 'Sà'yām'. Thai used this name with foreigners from the 1850s onwards to identify themselves and their country. The name 'Siam' appeared on banknotes and stamps and in international correspondence. In 1939, the name of the country was officially changed to 'Thailand'.

Sources of written Thai (Siamese) are numerous since the founding of Bangkok. Although a modern, reasonably educated Thai would have great difficulties reading inscriptions from the time of King Ramkhamhaeng, he would be able to read the language after the founding of Thonburi, just as easily as we would read an original edition of a novel by Swift or Defoe. Just as in English, nothing substantial has changed in the Thai language during the last two hundred and some years.

Thai is a tonal language and can be typified as an isolating language, just like most other tonal languages, such as Mandarin and Burmese. The language shows some fusional traits through loan morphemes and loan constructions from, for instance, Pali and Khmer. Modern Thai is written in a syllabic letter script, just like Sanskrit (Devanagari script), and Khmer. The first forms of Thai writing were based on italic Khmer, or handwritten Khmer, which in its turn has been developed from Indian scripts. The Thai script is ultimately, via the just mentioned italic Khmer, and just like the Burmese and Mon scripts, most directly based on the Pali-script.

From the shape of some of the Thai letters, one can still see their distant relationship with their Devanagari cousins.

## 1.3 The Thai alphabet

The Thai alphabet consists of a set of 44 consonants (อักษรพยัญชนะ -*aksŏon phajancháná?*) and a set of 32 vowels (สระ- *sàrà?*), including diphthongs (สระคู่ - *sǎng sàrà? khûu*) and triphthongs (สระรวมสามตัว - *sǎng sàrà? rûam sǎam tua*), which are formed with 18 different characters. This number includes four of the consonant character signs (ข - *joo ják*, ฃ - *roo ruea*, ฅ - *woo wĕen* and ฉ - *oo àang*), which are used either independently, or in combination with other characters as vowel-, diphthong- or triphthong signs. Apart from this, a few characters indicate a consonant sound in combination with a vowel sound (ำ (*am*), ฤ (*ri, reu* or *rue*), ฦ (*rue*), ล (*lue*) and ฦ (*lue*)). You will see that some characters are used often in Thai written texts, others less frequently, and some hardly ever. There are even two consonants (ข - *khŏo khùat* and ค - *khoo khon*), which are never used anymore, but are still officially part of the Thai alphabet. Only in handwritten texts from before circa 1870 these two letters still occur.

cd 1a  
track 1

### 1.3.1 The 44 consonants

All 44 consonants have a name. When orally spelling a word, that name is mentioned after each consonant occurring in the relevant word. This might remind one of the corny English primary school writing primers in which A stands for Apple, et cetera, but is rather more comparable with the sign code which is used in air traffic control towers and in the military, in order to avoid misunderstandings and accidents. Some consonants are very similar in sound and usage, and can be easily confused when not pronounced together with their names.

In the first vertical column you will find the Thai consonant, then next to it by the same consonant together with the noun after which it is named. In most cases, the name of the consonant starts with the relevant consonant, but there are also consonants which are only found back somewhere in the middle of the noun after which they are named.

In the following column, you will find the transcription of the sound of the consonant as it is pronounced at the beginning of a syllable (standard pronunciation), with (in parentheses) the transcription of the name of the consonant.

In the next column you will find the pronunciation of the consonant at the end of a syllable (end pronunciation). The apostrophe (') behind a so-called 'stop' ('k', 'p' or 't' sound) indicates that the sound is 'unreleased'. This means that the consonant is formed in the mouth at the normal point of articulation, but not 'released' with a puff of air. If you want to get an idea about how these unreleased stops sound, you may keep in mind how the first 't' in the word 'otter' sounds, or the first 'p' in 'upper', or the first 'c' in 'soccer'. The apostrophe behind stops will, by the way, not be used in the rest of the course after unreleased stops at the end of syllables. The unreleased pronunciation of stops in those places is a rule on which there are no exceptions. The unwritten stop, known as 'glottal stop' at the end of a syllable sounds as the sound, sometimes transcribed by ' in phonetically written Cockney, in words such as 'it' (i'), 'traffic' (traffi') and matter (ma'er). It is transcribed as ?.

In the last vertical column, the class to which the different consonants belong is indicated with the letter L for the Low Class, The letter M for the Middle Class, and the letter H for the High Class consonants. The class of a consonant is essential to the written representation of tones in the Thai language.

### The Thai Consonants:

Letter and Name	Transcription	Meaning Name	<u>Pronunciation</u>		Class
			Begin Syllable	End Syllable	
ก ก - ไก่	k (koo - kàj)	chicken	k	k'	M
ข ข - ไข่	kh (khǎo - khàj)	egg	kh	k'	H
ช ช - ขวด	khǎo - khùat	bottle	(obsolete)		
ค ค - ควาย	khoo - khwaaj	water buffalo	kh	k'	L
ค ค - คน	khoo - khon	person	(obsolete)		
ฆ ฆ - ระฆัง	khoo - rákhang	temple-bell	kh	k'	L
ง ง - งู	ngoo - nguu	snake	ng	ng	L
จ จ - จาน	coo - caan	plate	c	t'	M
ฉ ฉ - ฉิ่ง	chǎo - ching	cymbal	ch	t'	H
ช ช - ช้าง	choo - cháang	elephant	ch	t'	L
ซ ซ - โซ่	soo - sǒu	chain	s	t'; s <sup>1</sup>	L
ฌ ฌ - เฌอ	choo - cheu	tree	ch	t'	L
ญ ญ - หญิง	joo - jing	woman	j	n	L
ฎ ฎ - ชฎา	doo - chádaa	dancer's crown	d	t'	M
ฏ ฏ - ปลูก	too - pàtàk	goat	t	t'	M
ฐ ฐ - ฐาน	thǎo - thǎan	pedestal	th	t'	H
ฑ ฑ - มณโฑ	thoo - monthou	name of a giantess	th, some-times d	t'	as th: L as d: M
ฒ ฒ - ผู้เฒ่า	thoo - phũuthâw	old man	th	t'	L
ณ ณ - เณร	noo - neen	novice	n	n	L

Letter and Name	Transcription	Meaning Name	<u>Pronunciation</u>		Class
			Begin Syllable	End Syllable	
ด ด - เด็ก	doo - dèk	child	d	t'	M
ต ต - เต่า	too - tàw	turtle	t	t'	M
ถ ถ - ถุง	thoo - thǔng	bag	th	t'	H
ท ท - ทหาร	thoo - tháhǎan	soldier	th	t'	L
ธง ธ - ธง	thoo - thong	flag	th	t'	L
น น - หนู	noo - nǔu	mouse	n	n	L
บ บ - ใบไม้	boo - bajmáaj	leaf	b	p'	M
ป ป - ปลา	poo - plaa	fish	p	p'	M
ผ ผ - ผึ้ง	phoo - phûeng	bee	ph	p'	H
ฝ ฝ - ฝา	fǒo - fǎa	lid, cover	f	—	H
พ พ - พาน	phoo - phaen	tray	ph	p'	L
ฟ ฟ - ฟัน	foo - fan	tooth	f	p', f <sup>1</sup>	L
ภ ภ - ลำเภว	phoo - sǎmphaw	junk ship	ph	p'	L
ม ม - ม้า	moo - máa	horse	m	m	L
ย ย - ยักษ์	joo - ják	giant	j	j	L
ร ร - เรือ	roo - ruea	ship	r	n	L
ล ล - ลิง	loo - ling	monkey	l	n	L
ว ว - แหวน	woo - wǎen	ring	w	w	L
ศ ศ - ศาลา	sǒo - sǎalaa	pavilion	s	t'	H
ช ช - ฤษี	sǒo - ruesǐ	hermit	s	t'	H
ส ส - เสือ	sǒo - sǔua	tiger	s	t'	H
ห ห - หีบ	hǒo - hǐip	chest, trunk	h,	— <sup>3</sup>	H
			Also: class-modifier <sup>2</sup>		
ฬ ฬ - จูฬ	loo - cùlaa	kite	l	n	L

Letter and Name	Transcription	Meaning	Pronunciation		Class
			Begin Syllable	End Syllable	
อ อ - อ่าง	oo - àang	basin, bowl, tub	oo, o, a; class-modifier <sup>2</sup> vowel-bearer <sup>4</sup>	o, oo	M
ฮ ฮ - นกฮูก	hoo - nókhûuk	owl	h	—	L

Notes on the consonants:

- <sup>1</sup> - For loanwords from English, many speakers pronounce these letters at the end of a word as in English; so as ‘s’ and ‘f’.
- <sup>2</sup> - The Consonant Class Modifiers; **ท** or **อ**, when placed before a Low Class consonant, modify the original consonant into a High Class (in the case of **ท**), or into a Middle Class (in the case of **อ**) consonant. In many cases, this is important for the notation of the tone of a syllable. The letter **อ** is a Class Modifier in only four words: **อย่า** - jàa - ‘don’t’, **อยาก** - jàak - ‘to want’, **อย่าง** - ‘thing’, and **อยู่** - ‘to stay’, ‘to live’. The letter **ท** is used considerably more often as a Class Modifier.
- <sup>3</sup> - On the end of a syllable, **ท** is only used in combination with the mark ‘*kaaran*’ (๕). A *kaaran* is a sign above a last consonant of a word, which signifies that this marked consonant is not pronounced (see 1.5.; Punctuation Marks).
- <sup>4</sup> - When seen alone, a written **อ** is pronounced as ‘oo’, ‘o’ or ‘a’. **อ** also acts as the ‘bearer’ of other vowels. It takes the vowel sound of the vowel that accompanies it. **อ** can only be the ‘bearer’ of the vowel, when the vowel is in the initial position in a syllable. In the vowel-list in 1.3.2., you will see **อ** act as a bearer of every vowel which is described in the lesson. For writing a single vowel-, diphthong- or triphthong-sound, use must be made of the vowel-bearer **อ**.

Observations:

- **ย** (*joo ják*) and **ว** (*woo wǎen*) are, just as in English ‘y’ and ‘w’, so-called semivowels. They can be found at the end of a syllable, but in such cases they usually form a diphthong or triphthong together with other vowels. Between two consonants, the pronunciation of **ว** becomes a diphthong, ‘ua’, like for instance in the word **พวก** (*phûak*). At the end of a syllable, **ว** is pronounced as ‘w’, as in the word ‘low’. For instance: **แมว** - *mǎew* - ‘cat’. At the end of a syllable, **ย** is pronounced as ‘y’, as in the English ‘boy’. For instance: **ขาย** - *khǎaj* - ‘to sell’.
- You will probably have noticed that some of the above consonants do not exist in the same way as they do in English. The notion that a sound ‘ng’ at the beginning of a syllable can exist, is for some people quite confusing and therefore a sound which they find hard to reproduce. To pronounce the sound, you could start with saying ‘banger’ (as the popular British sausage), but leave out the ‘ba’-part of the word. Replace the final ‘r’ with an ‘n’, and you’ll pronounce ‘ngen’ (เงิน), which means ‘money’ or ‘silver’ in Thai.
- In English, we know the aspirated consonants ‘ch’ (as in ‘church’), ‘k’ (as in ‘kettle’, ‘cat’), ‘p’ (as in ‘pet’) and ‘t’ (as in ‘talk’). We find the non-aspirated varieties of those consonants back in other languages: Such as in the Malay word ‘cuci’ (non-aspirated ‘ch’), the French word ‘concorde’ (non-aspirated k), the Spanish word ‘palabra’ (non-aspirated ‘p’) and the



Italian word ‘tenente’ (non-aspirated ‘t’). In Thai, the aspirated as well as the non-aspirated varieties of these sounds exist, and they are distinctive. This means that, in Thai, they are not varieties of the same sound, but distinctively different phonemes. This in its turn means that aspiration or non-aspiration in a consonant can define the meaning of a morpheme.

Compare for instance: ไก่ (*kàj* - chicken) and ไข่ (*khàj* - egg), จน (*con* - poor) and ชน (*chon* - to collide), ตาก (*tàak* - to hang to dry, to expose) and ถาก (*thàak* - to chip, to hew, to graze (of a bullet)), ป้าย (*pâaj* - label, sign, signboard, bus-stop sign) พ่าย (*phâaj* - to be defeated)

- You will have noticed that there are three (still actively used) letters for ‘kh’ in Thai, three for ‘ch’, two for ‘t’, four for ‘s’, two for ‘j’, two for ‘n’, six for ‘th’, two for ‘f’, two for ‘l’, two for ‘h’, two for ‘d’ and three for ‘ph’. A reason for this luxury is that Thai is a tonal language, and in a syllabic letter-script, there must be enough letters in an alphabet to note those tones down. To simplify notation, all consonants must be divided in three Registers or Classes; High, Middle and Low. By designing consonants of which the Non-Class characteristics are equal, but which, by their membership of those different classes, can control the tone of the syllable they lead, the Thai have developed a basic instrument with which it is possible to note down the tone of a Thai syllable very adequately. The division in classes of the consonants is therefore one of the reasons for the many consonants with the same non-Class characteristics. Another reason for the multitude of consonants is that some letters arrived with early loan words from Pali and Sanskrit, that stood for sounds which do not (longer) fit in the Thai pronunciation system. Examples are the retroflex ‘t’-s (ฏ, ฐ) and post-alveolar ‘s’-es (ศ, ษ), the aspirated ‘bh’ (ภ) and the palatal ‘n’ (ณ). These letters simply lost their distinction from others, as they were gradually completely integrated in the Thai phonemic system. ศ and ษ became equal to ส; retroflex plosives ฏ and ฐ moved in the direction of ต and ถ, aspirated, voiced ภ became unvoicedas ฟ, and palatal ณ equal to น. The Laotian script, which is from a far more recent date than the Thai, but is based on Thai and older Thai scripts, has not so many ‘superfluous’ consonants.
- Like in every language which already has had its own script for a number of centuries, many Thai words have an anomalous spelling. In this course, all anomalies in spelling will be pointed out to you. A number of words, for instance, start with clusters of initial consonants, like ทร (th + r), จร (c + r), ศร (s + r) or สร (s + r). ทร is pronounced as ‘s’, จร as ‘c’, and ศร as well as สร are pronounced as ‘s’. The combination รร is pronounced as ‘a’ (กรรม - *kam* - ‘karma’) of ‘an’ (กรรไกร - *kankraj* - ‘scissors’). These are, as you can see, not real clusters, but fixed combinations of consonants with an irregular pronunciation. Furthermore, the tones in some words are pronounced differently from how they should be pronounced according to the rules for writing tones down. This can be either due to modern developments in the living language (such as in the case of the tones for the word dichăn (ดิฉัน - ‘I’ (spoken by women)), which is actually pronounced ‘dichán’ in modern Thai), or just without any obvious reason (such as in the word ‘khàmǒǒj’ - ‘thief’, which is actually written as khàmǒǒj (ขโมย). In the vocabulary in the lessons, an anomalous spelling or pronunciation has been marked with an asterisk (\*), and the correct pronunciation is given in the transcription-script

cd 1a track 2 **1.3.2 The 32 vowels (including diphthongs and triphthongs)**

A vowel or a diphthong can be written behind, in front of, under, above or around a consonant. The sound element that makes a diphthong a triphthong always follows the last element of the diphthong, so triphthongs are not considered at this juncture. In the following list, อ always functions as the ‘bearer’ of the vowel or diphthong, and has no sound value of its own. It takes the sound qualities of the vowel- or diphthong sound it bears. Beware of the fact that อ can also be part of a diphthong. In those cases, อ as ‘bearer’ is obviously followed by อ as part of the diphthong. A word written as อา is pronounced as ‘aa’ (‘ah’). If อ were substituted by a consonant with an independent sound value, like ต (non-aspirated ‘t’), the word would be ตา; ‘taa’ (‘tah’). In the following list, the spot where อ stands can be taken by any consonant, and defines the space that must be occupied by a consonant for a script sequence to make sense. A ‘written sound’, be it vowel or diphthong, is called สระ - ‘sàrà?’ (also: ‘sarà?’; ‘sarà’ ) in Thai. In the transcription, the tone of the vowels and diphthongs in the list have been ignored, as the tone of a syllable is dependent on the class of the consonant it starts with, as well as its ending.

**The Thai vowels, diphthongs and triphthongs**

อ and vowel/diphthong	name	transcription	pronunciation
อะ (open syllable)	สระ อะ	sàrà? a?	a <sup>1</sup>
อ + consonant	ไม้ หัน อากาศ	máajhǎnaakàat	a <sup>1</sup>
อา	สระ อา	sàrà? aa	aa
อิ	สระ อิ	sàrà? i?	i; i?
อี	สระ อี	sàrà? ii	ii
ือ	สระ อือ	sàrà? ue?	ue; ue?
ือ(อ)	สระ อืออ	sàrà? <u>ue</u>	<u>ue</u>
อุ	สระ อุ	sàrà? u?	u; u?
ู	สระ ู	sàrà? uu	uu
เอะ (open syllable)	สระ เอะ	sàrà? e?	e; e? <sup>2</sup>
เ็ + consonant	สระ เ - ไม้ ไต่ ุ่	sàrà? e - máaj tàj khúu	e <sup>2</sup>
เอ	สระ เอ	sàrà? ee	ee
แอะ (open syllable)	สระ แอะ	sàrà? ɛ?	ɛ; ɛ?

๑ and vowel/diphthong	name	transcription	pronunciation
แเอ้ + consonant	สระ แอ - ไม้ไต่คู้	sàrà? ɛɛ - máaj tàj khúu	ɛ
แอ	สระ แอ	sàrà? ɛɛ	ɛɛ
โอะ	สระ โอะ	sàrà? ɔ	ɔ; ɔ?
โอ	สระ โอ	sàrà? ɔɔ	ɔɔ
เอาะ	สระ เอาะ	sàrà? o?	o?
ออ	อ อ่าง	oo àang	oo
เออะ	สระ เออะ	sàrà? eu?	eu?
เออ (open syllable)	สระ เออ	sàrà? <u>eu</u>	<u>eu</u> <sup>3</sup>
เอี + consonant	สระ เอ ... สระ อี	sàrà? ee ... sàrà? i?	eu; <u>eu</u> <sup>3</sup>
เอย	สระ เอ ... ย ยักษ์	sàrà? ee ... joo ják	eu; <u>eu</u> <sup>4</sup>
เอียะ	สระ เอียะ	sàrà? ia?	ia?
เอีย	สระ เอีย	sàrà? iia	ia; iia
เอือะ	สระ เอือะ	sàrà? uea?	uea?
เอือ	สระ เอือ	sàrà? <u>uea</u>	uea; <u>uea</u>
อัวะ	สระ อัวะ	sàrà? ua?	ua?
อัว	สระ อัว	sàrà? uua	ua; uua <sup>4</sup>
อำ	สระ อำ	sàrà? am	am
ไ (ไอ)	ไม้ ม้วน	máaj múan	aj; aaj
ไ (ไอ)	ไม้ มลาย	máaj málaaj	aj; aaj
เอา	สระ เอา	sàrà? ee ... sàrà? aa	aw
ฤ	ตัว ฤ	tua rúe?; tua rí?	rúe?; rí, <u>rue</u> <sup>5</sup>
ฤา	ตัว ฤือ	tua <u>rue</u>	<u>rue</u> <sup>5</sup>
ฦ	ตัว ลี	tua lúe?	lue?; leu? <sup>5</sup>
ฦา	ตัว ลือ	tua <u>lue</u>	<u>lue</u> <sup>5</sup>

Notes on the vowels, diphthongs and triphthongs:

- <sup>1</sup> The short a/a? - sound is written with sàrǎ? a - (อ)ะ - in open syllables (for instance จะ - ca/cà? ). In closed syllables, the short a is written with ไม้หันอากาศ (máajhǎanaakàat) it is written อี + consonant (for instance อัน - an).
- <sup>2</sup> The short e/e? - sound is written เอะ in open syllables (for instance เปะ - pè?). In closed syllables, the short e is written เอี + consonant (for instance เพ็ญ - phen).
- <sup>3</sup> The eu - sound is written เออ in open syllables (for instance เลอ - leu). In closed syllables, the eu - sound is written เอ + consonant (for instance เติน).
- <sup>4</sup> The diphthong ua is written อัว in open syllables (for instance ตัว - tua). In closed syllables, the diphthong ua is written with ว (woo wǎen) + consonant (for instance มวน - muan).
- <sup>5</sup> The combined consonant-vowel ฤ (ตัวฤ - tua rúe; tua rí; tua reu) is pronounced as ‘rúe’ when paired with the letters ค, น, พ, ม or ห, as for instance in คฤหาสร์ - khárúehàat, นฤมล - nárúemon, and พฤทธิสบัติ - phárúehàtsàboodii . It is pronounced as ‘rí’ when paired with the letters ก, ต, ท, ป, ศ or ส, as for instance in กฤษฏา - kritesàdaa, ทฤษฏี - thrítsàdii, ปฤษฏา - prítsàdaa. In only one word, the character is pronounced as ‘reu’: ฤกษ์ (rêuk). ฤ (sàra rue) is used as an independent syllable in words like ฤดี (ruedii), ฤษี (ruesii). ฤ (lúe) and ฤ (lue) are not used anymore, but, when still productive, their use was based on the same principles as that of ฤ and ฤ.

### The inherent vowels: short ‘o’, short ‘a’ and long ‘oo’

Inherent vowels are vowels, which are not represented by a character. In words that exist of two written consonants, the inherent vowel is a short ‘o’. For instance:

นก	<i>nók</i>	bird	กด	<i>kòt</i>	to press, to push
บท	<i>bòt</i>	chapter, part	มด	<i>mót</i>	ant

In polysyllabic words, an inherent, unwritten ‘a’ is pronounced between consonants which are not accepted clusters in Thai:

สมอง	<i>sàmoong</i>	brain	ชนะ	<i>cháná</i>	to win
พลัง	<i>phalǎng</i>	power	มหา	<i>máhǎa</i>	great
ขนาด	<i>khànaat</i>	size	ฝรั่ง	<i>fàràng</i>	guava

In some cases, an inherent vowel is pronounced long. This rule is valid in stressed syllables. The inherent vowel is thus pronounced ‘oo’. See for instance:

นคร	<i>nákhoon</i>	city	อมร	<i>àmoon</i>	immortal
-----	----------------	------	-----	--------------	----------

อ used as an independent, unstressed short syllable at the beginning of a word is pronounced as short ‘a’. In these cases, don’t confuse its function with that of class-modifier as mentioned in 1.3.1., in which อ sits at the same initial position in a word. See for instance:

อร่อย	<i>àrooj</i>	tasty	องุ่น	<i>àngùn</i>	grape
อเมริกา	<i>àmeerikaa</i>	America	อภิสิทธิ์	<i>àphísít</i>	privilege

Notice that in the above examples, **๑** is an unstressed syllable consisting of a single sound and a single letter. The tone of **๑** (à) is low according to the tone rules. In practice, unstressed initial syllables are often pronounced in a mid tone (a).

**๑** in initial, stressed position in front of a syllable starting with **ร** is pronounced as ‘oo’.

**อรชร**    ooráchoon    beautiful      **อรไท**    oráthaj    lady

**๑** in initial position in a closed syllable (whether final stop or nasal), is pronounced as ‘o’. See for instance:

<b>อบ</b>	òp	to bake, to roast	<b>อม</b>	om	to keep in the mouth
<b>อด</b>	òt	to refrain	<b>อก</b>	òk	breast

### Long and short vowels:

The difference between long and short vowels is, just like the difference between aspirated and non-aspirated consonants, distinctive in Thai. Compare, for instance, the following words:

khăw (เข่า)	he, she	khăaw (ขาว)	white
can (จันทร์)	moon	caan (จาน)	plate
săj (ใส)	clear	săaj (สาย)	late
dâj (ได้)	to can, to be able	dâaj (ด้าย)	thread, cord
phôm (ผม)	I (male speaking)	phoom (ผอม)	thin, skinny

## 1.4 The alphabet and the five tones

Thai is a tonal language. When King Ramkhamhaeng the Great devised the first real Thai alphabet, he designed an alphabet that was based on the sounds of the language: not on the meaning of concepts, like Chinese script, which consist of ideograms. He also developed a script that could represent the tonemes of his language clearly and correctly. For the design of his characters, he drew from examples in non-tonal languages, such as Khmer and Pali. Khmer had consonant registers for inherent vowels, which might have made the King hit upon the idea to develop consonant registers for tones. Thus, three consonant registers were created. The registers – or classes, as we call them most often – stayed as the language developed, and additional tonal signs were designed when the language changed over the centuries from a three-tone system into a five-tone communication device. A Thai from King Ramkhamhaeng’s Kingdom of Sukhothai would not be able to read the modern script (and if you haven’t studied it, it’s difficult to make out the letters in the Sukhothai script), but the principle had stayed the same. A three-register, or three-class consonant system still exists.

To reduce the tone of a written syllable from the way it is written, you’ll need to take four factors into account:

1. The end-sound of the syllable; (**stop** (unreleased ‘k’, ‘p’ or ‘t’, or glottal stop), **nasal, semivowel** or **vowel**)
2. The *length* of the *vowel* in the syllable
3. The *Class* (or register) of the first *consonant* at the beginning of the syllable
4. The presence of a Tone Mark above the first consonant of the syllable – or in a consonant-cluster, above the last consonant in that cluster – and, if so, which one.

### 1.4.1 The Tone Markers

Below are the signs for the four tone markers (วรรณยุกต์ - *wannájúk*), along with their names, with อ (*oo àang*) as their bearer. In stead of อ (*oo àang*), any consonant can be the bearer of a tone mark:

อ̌	máaj èek	ไม้ เอก	อ̏	máaj thoḥ	ไม้ โท
อ̎	máaj trii	ไม้ ตริ	อ̑	máaj càttawaa	ไม้ จัตวา

For an older generation of Thai, the tones are often called after the tone marks. This is not very convenient for foreigners as you will see later, because *máaj èek* and *máaj thoḥ* produce different tones dependant on the class of consonant over which they are written. It is easier, especially at the beginning of your study, to refer to the tones according to the second column of Thai terms which are given below:

### 1.4.2 The Names of the tones

1. mid tone:	sǎang sǎaman	(เสียง สามัญ)	or	sǎang klaang	(เสียง กลาง)
2. low tone:	sǎang èek	(เสียง เอก)	or	sǎang tàṁ	(เสียง ต่ำ)
3. falling tone:	sǎang thoḥ	(เสียง โท)	or	sǎang long	(เสียง ลง)
4. high tone:	sǎang trii	(เสียง ตริ)	or	sǎang sǔung	(เสียง สูง)
5. rising tone:	sǎang càttawaa	(เสียง จัตวา)	or	sǎang khûen	(เสียง ขึ้น)

### 1.4.3 The Three Consonant Classes (or Consonant Registers)

The following eleven consonants are **HIGH Class Consonants**:

ข - (khǎo khàj)	ช - (khǎo khùat) <sup>†</sup>	ฅ - (chǎo ching)
ฌ - (thǎo thǎan)	ถ - (thǎo thǔng)	ผ - (phǎo phūeng)
ฝ - (fǎo fǎa)	ศ - (sǎo sǎalaa)	ษ - (sǎo ruesǐi)
ส - (sǎo sǔea)	ห - (hǎo hǐip)	

The following nine consonants are **MIDDLE Class Consonants**:

ก - (koo kǎj)	จ - (coo caan)	ฎ - (doo chádaa)
ฏ - (too pàtāk)	ด - (doo dèk)	ต - (too tàw)
ป - (boo bajmǎaj)	พ - (poo plaa)	อ - (oo àang)

The following twenty-four consonants are **LOW Class Consonants**:

ค - (khoo khwaaj)	ค - (khoo khon) <sup>†</sup>	ฆ - (khoo rákhang)
ง - (ngoo ngu)	ช - (choo cháang)	ซ - (soo sǒo)
ฅ - (choo cheu)	ญ - (joo jǐng)	ฑ - (thoo monthǒo)
ฒ - (thoo phūuthāw)	ณ - (noo neen)	ท - (thoo thǎhǎan)
ธ - (thoo thong)	น - (noo nǔu)	พ - (phoo phaen)
ฟ - (foo fan)	ภ - (phoo sǎmphaw)	ม - (moo máa)
ย - (joo ják)	ร - (roo ruea)	ล - (loo ling)
ว - (woo wǎen)	ฬ - (loo cùlāa)	ฮ - (hoo nókhûuk)

<sup>†</sup>: obsolete consonants

### 1.4.4 Reference Diagram for the Tone Rules

end of syllable		class of initial consonant		
		high	middle	low
no tone mark	any ending, except k, p, t or ʔ	rising ถาม ขา หาย	mid กิน บัว ตา	mid งาน เวลา เรียน
	k, p or t after a long vowel	low สอบ ถูก หาด	low แจก ดาบ โดน	falling วาด พุด เมฆ
	short vowel; k, p or t after a short vowel	low จะ หัก ลีบ ชุด	low จะ แปลก บท อีจู้	high รี คะ ยก พัด พบ
with máaj èek	อ๋	low ลู่ ห่ม ไข่ ถือน	low ป่า ก่อน แจ่ม	falling ย่า แม่ ไร่ ม่าน
with máaj thoɔ	อ๊	falling ห้าม เลื้อ ข้าว	falling บ้าน ได้ ก้าง	high วุ่น ร้าน ทิ้ง ไว้ย
with máaj trii	อึ		high กึก โต๊ะ เปียบ จ๊ะ	
with máaj càttawaa	อึ๊		rising เป่ จำ ไร่ นุ่ม	

**Explanation of the reference diagram for the tone rules:** Suppose you want to find the tone for the word ‘มาก’. It is a monosyllabic word consisting of a ม (moo mǎa), a าก (sàrà aa), and a ก (koo kàj). First you start looking in the column headed ‘end of syllable’ what characteristics are valid for your word. It ends on a ก (koo kàj), which is a stop. Next, you are going to look what vowel your word uses; is it short or long? You’ll find out that าก (sàrà aa) is a long vowel, so you have a word with a long vowel, ending in a stop. The next, and in this case the last piece of information you need is the class of the initial consonant. Your word starts with ม (moo mǎa), which is a low class consonant. Now, under the heading ‘class of initial consonant’, you will find that a syllable starting with a low initial consonant, containing a long vowel and ending in a stop, will have a falling tone. Finding the tone for words with a tone marker is easier. Just look at the column ‘class of initial consonant’ and go directly to the tone marker in question. A tone marker overrules all other tone rules!



### 1.4.5 The consonant class modifiers ‘ห’ and ‘อ’

By placing a hǒo hùp (ห) - a high class consonant - in front of a low class consonant, this low class consonant is ‘upgraded’ to become a high class consonant, itself, and thereby endowed with all the characteristics of a high class consonant. ห itself is not pronounced in these cases, and has the sole function of modifying the low class consonant into a high class consonant. By placing an oo àang (อ) - a middle class consonant - in front of a low class consonant, this low class consonant is ‘upgraded’ to become a middle class consonant, and thereby endowed with all characteristics of a middle class consonant. อ itself is not pronounced in these cases, and has the sole function of modifying the low class consonant. Look at the following examples:

หนู                      hǒo hùp . noo nǔu . sàrà? uu.                      nǔu    -    mouse

HIGH CLASS consonant ห modifies LOW CLASS consonant น into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘หนู’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a rising tone (see the diagram for the tone rules).

หมา                      hǒo hùp . moo máa . sàrà? aa . koo kàj.                      màak    -    betel nut

HIGH CLASS consonant ห modifies LOW CLASS consonant ม into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘หมา’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone (see the diagram for the tone rules).

หน้า                      hǒo hùp . noo nǔu . máaj thoo . sàrà? aa .                      nâa    -    face

HIGH CLASS consonant ห modifies LOW CLASS consonant น into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘หน้า’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a falling tone. (see the diagram for the tone rules). Observe that the tone marker (ไม้โท - máaj thoo) is placed over the น, not over the modifier (ห).

อยาก                      oo àang . joo ják . sàrà? aa . koo kàj .                      jàak    -    to want

MIDDLE CLASS consonant อ modifies LOW CLASS consonant ย into a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. The word ‘อยาก’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a MIDDLE CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone. (see the diagram for the tone rules).

อยู่                      oo àang . joo ják . máj èek . sàrà? uu .                      jùu    -    to stay, to be busy to

MIDDLE CLASS consonant อ modifies LOW CLASS consonant ย into a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. The word ‘อยู่’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a MIDDLE CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone. Observe that the tone marker (ไม้เอก - máaj èek) is placed over the ย, not over the modifier (อ). (see the diagram for the tone rules).

**Attention:** As mentioned in 1.3.2, อ (oo àang) doesn’t *always* modify or ‘upgrade’ low class consonants when placed at the beginning of a syllable in front of a consonant. It more often

functions either as a short or long oo in front of this consonant, or as an independent vowel syllable (short à, short o or long oo). See examples there.

### 1.4.6 Spelling anomalies

Remember that a tone is a fixed phoneme (element that defines the meaning of a word) in every Thai word. If you pronounce the tone wrong, you pronounce the word wrong. The meaning of a word can change completely if you change the tone of that word. As other languages, Thai has its fair share of exceptions of pronunciation- and spelling-rules. The most striking anomaly concerning the pronunciation of tones is: the tone of unstressed initial syllables – syllables in which no vowel is written – or syllables existing only of a short ‘a’ (๑๖) or a short ‘u’ (๑๗) are often not pronounced in a low tone, like the diagram shows, but in a mid tone. There are some more discrepancies between spelling and pronunciation which cannot all be mentioned here. In the vocabularies in the lessons and in the appendices, all words with a pronunciation that differs from its spelling are marked with an asterisk (\*). The correct pronunciation is given in the transcription script.

### 1.4.7 Consonant clusters and tone marks in consonant clusters

The tone rules valid for the initial consonant of a syllable determine the tone of that syllable. In syllables, which start with more than one consonant (a consonant cluster), the tone rules which are valid for the first consonant in that cluster determine the tone of the syllable. Let us take, for example, the word ‘กลีบ’ (*klìp*); ‘petal’, ‘segment of fruit’. This monosyllabic word ends with a stop (๑ - *boo bajmáaj*, at the end of a syllable pronounced as p’ (unreleased ‘p’). The last consonant pronounced before the vowel (long ‘ii’; ๖) is the *loo ling* (๑), a LOW class consonant. A syllable starting with a LOW class consonant, with a long vowel, and ending in a STOP (in this case: p’) is pronounced in a FALLING tone. In other words; if the word would be ‘ลิบ’, it would be pronounced as ‘lìp’, in a falling tone. But the initial consonant of the cluster ‘กล’ with which the word starts, is *koo kàj* (๑), a MIDDLE class consonant, and *koo kàj* is the consonant which determines the tone of the word. The second consonant in the cluster – *loo ling*, a LOW Class Consonant – changes class, as it follows directly upon a MIDDLE Class consonant, and loses, as it were, its right to determine the tone of the syllable it is part of. Eventually, we are looking at a word that starts with a MIDDLE Class consonant, with a long vowel and a stop (p’) at the end. Following the tone rules, it is pronounced in a LOW tone. ‘กลีบ’ is thus pronounced *klìp*, in a LOW tone.

The tone mark, which further determines the tone of a word, is always written above the consonant in the closest position to the vowel; the one after which the vowel is directly pronounced. But although written above the second consonant, the tone mark APPLIES TO the FIRST CONSONANT in the cluster. Let us analyze the word ‘ตรู่’ (*trùu*); ‘very early in the morning’ to prove our point: Without its initial consonant ต (too tàw - MIDDLE class), ‘รู้’ should be pronounced in a FALLING tone (*râu*), because ๖ is a LOW class consonant, and the ‘máaj èek’ (๖) with which it is adorned would compel any word or syllable with an initial

LOW consonant to be pronounced in a falling tone. But although *máaj èek* sits above the second consonant in the cluster, the first consonant, ต, determines the tone of the syllable, and so, *máaj èek* refers to ต. A MIDDLE class consonant as ต with a *máaj èek* as an initial consonant thus determines that the word ตรู้ must be pronounced with a LOW tone (*truu*).

### 1.4.8 Stressed and non-stressed syllables

Just as English words, Thai words are built up from stressed as well as non-stressed syllables. Non-stressed syllables without vowel characters have already been briefly mentioned in 1.3.2. We have seen that in short, non-stressed, initial syllables without vowel characters (*oo àang* (อ), pronounced as short ‘o’ or ‘a’), the tone of these syllables automatically becomes MID in spoken Thai. In non-stressed syllables *with* vowel characters, the tone also automatically becomes MID. For instance, in the word ‘อะไร’ (*araj*; ‘what?’), the tone of the first syllable normally becomes MID. If ‘อะไร’ is pronounced in anger or surprise (‘what?!’), the first syllable of the word is usually stressed, and correctly pronounced in a LOW tone. Also in other, polysyllabic (loan) words we encounter mid tones in non-stressed syllables, where we would expect low or high tones if we adhere to the tone rules. The correct tones for the pronunciation of the word มหาวิทยาลัย (*máhăawíthájalaj* - ‘university’) are, for instance: high-rising-high-high-mid-mid. Most commonly though, the word is pronounced as ‘mahăawíthajalaj’: mid-rising-high-mid-mid-mid. In the transcriptions of dialogues, vocabulary lists and other texts, the tones of words are given as they should be pronounced. On the CD’s, you’ll be able to listen to the actual, daily life pronunciation of the tones.

In the vocabulary lists, words with an ‘illogical’ anomalous pronunciation are marked with an asterisk (\*).

## 1.5 Diacritics and punctuation marks

The Thai script makes use of some punctuation marks which are important for the coordination between speech and script:

- อ - The sign over the อ is a การันต์ (*kaaran*) or ไม้ ทัดหมาด (*máaj thanthákhâat*); It indicates that the consonant under it, and in some cases part of the whole consonant cluster at the end of a word is not pronounced. The *kaaran* occurs in loanwords from Pali, Sanskrit, and English, such as อาจารย์ (*aacaan* - teacher), ศิลป์ (*sín* - art), สไตล์ (*sàtaj* - style)
- อ - The sign over the อ is a ไม้ ตัด หู (*máaj tâj khûu*). It shortens the vowel in the syllable over which main consonant it is placed (for instance: เล็ก - *lék* - ‘small’).
- ๑ - The เพยยาล น้อย (*peujjaan nóoj*) shortens a long, well known word (for instance: the Chulalongkorn - University (จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย) is known as ‘Chula’ (จุฬาฯ) in short.

๖๗๖ - The เพี้ยยาล ใหญ่ (*peujjaan jàj*) is equivalent with the western etcetera - symbol (&c.)

๖๗๖ - The ไม้ยมก (*jámók*) signifies that the word on which it follows has to be pronounced twice (for instance: บ่อย๖๗๖ - *bòj bòj* - ‘often’).

Colons (:), semicolons (;), question marks (?), quotation marks (“-”) exclamation marks (!) and thought dots (...), are officially not part of the Thai alphabet, though occur quite often in novels, flyers and other modern Thai texts.

## 1.6 Writing Thai

In a Thai sentence, words are written behind each other without spaces. In places where in English a comma or a full stop would divide clauses and sentences, in Thai a space is left open. Fast word recognition is essential to the fluent reading of Thai. In elementary school, Thai children learn how to read in primers with texts in which separate words are still separated by a space. This is done to make a child recognize the appearance of separate words as fast as possible, in order to enable them, when they start reading books which are written ‘inanadulmanner’, to separate the words in its mind more easily. In this course we shall use the same principle. Until lesson 24, the words in a Thai sentence will be written separately from each other, like in English, by a space. By the time you reach that chapter, your vocabulary will be sufficiently large to recognize words you already know. You’ll also be able to determine patterns of words you don’t know, yet, in a sentence written in Thai-style, so you can easily find those words back in the vocabulary lists provided with each chapter.

## 1.7 Our transcription method

In this course, we shall use an easy method for transcribing Thai sounds. The method will take a minimum of time to get accustomed to for speakers of English. With the help of this method and with the pronunciation- and exercise CD’s you’ll learn to pronounce Thai phonemes quickly and accurately. The system is based on the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), but beware, it has been amended to be optimally serviceable for the Thai language without using IPA characters that might be too obscure for the general learner.

### Transcription of the consonants:

Thai consonant	Transcription for initial use (begin of the syllable)	Transcription for final use (end of the syllable)
ก	k (unaspirated)	k (unreleased)
ข, ค, ฅ	kh (aspirated)	k (unreleased)
ง	ng	ng

Thai consonant	Transcription for initial use (begin of the syllable)	Transcription for final use (end of the syllable)
จ	c (unaspirated)	t (unreleased)
ฉ, ช, ฌ	ch (aspirated)	t (unreleased)
ซ, ศ, ษ, ส	s	t (unreleased)
ญ	j (the English 'y'-sound)	n
ฎ, ฏ	d	t (unreleased)
ท	th (aspirated) or d	t (unreleased)
ฏ, ฐ	t (unaspirated)	t (unreleased)
ฐ, ฒ, ณ, ฑ, ฒ	th (aspirated)	t (unreleased)
ณ, น	n	n
บ	b	p (unreleased)
ป	p (unaspirated)	p (unreleased)
ผ, พ, ภ	ph (aspirated)	p (unreleased)
ฝ, ฟ	f	f
ม	m	m
ย	j (the English 'y'-sound)	j
ร	r	n
ล, ฬ	l	n
ว	w	w
ห	h, or none	none
อ	o, a, transcription of the vowel borne by อ, or none	o, oo
ฮ	h	none
glottal stop*	none	ʔ

**N.B.:** The glottal stop is a sound we know well in English, but for which no written sign is in daily use. We hear the glottal stop at the beginning of words, which begin with a vowel. If we say 'all' or

‘ever’ Just before we utter the sound written as ‘a’ and ‘e’ in these examples, we open our glottis to release air in order to say the words we want to say. If we do this the other way around, and close our glottis to stop the flush of air from our lungs, we would pronounce a glottal stop *after* a vowel; we would pronounce the ʔ. Speakers of Cockney do it all the time. For each stop at the end of a word, be it p, t or k, a genuine Cockney substitutes ʔ. The glottal stop is comparable with the pronunciation of the ‘c’ in the word ‘action’ (an unreleased ‘k’, formed against the soft palate; a so-called velar stop), but is pronounced deeper down the throat: Instead of pressing the uvula against the soft palate, which you do when you pronounce a velar stop, the air flow in pronouncing the glottal stop is stopped by closing your glottis.

In Thai, the glottal stop occurs at the end as well as at the beginning of a syllable. In this course, the sound is transcribed with ʔ where it is not automatically produced by English speakers. It will not be shown at the beginning of each syllable starting with a vowel, as both English and Thai speakers automatically pronounce a glottal stop before releasing an initial vowel. The glottal stop sign ʔ will be shown when a glottal stop always occurs at the end of or in the middle of a certain lexeme (และ - léʔ, แก้ว - kâw-îi). In a few words, the glottal stop is optional (for instance in จะ - càʔ, cà; นะ - náʔ, ná). In the transcription of dialogues, words with an optional glottal stop will be transcribed as most appropriate given the circumstances in the texts.

### Transcription of vowels, diphthongs and triphthongs

อะ	a, aʔ
อ -	a
อา	aa
อิ	i, iʔ
อี	ii
อื	ue, ueʔ
อือ	<u>ue</u>
อุ	u, uʔ
อู	uu
เอะ	eʔ
เอ	ee
แอะ	ɛʔ
แอ	ɛɛ
โอะ	o
โอ	oo

vowel / diphthong	transcription
เอาะ	oʔ
ออ	oo
เเอะ	euʔ
เออ	eu
เอื-	eu, <u>eu</u>
เอียะ	iaʔ
เอีย	ia, iia
เอือะ	ueaʔ
เอือ	uea, <u>uea</u>
อัวะ	uaʔ
อัว	ua, uua
อำ	am
ไอ	aj, aaj
ไอ	aj, aaj
เอา	aw
เเอย	euj, <u>euj</u>
ฤ	ríʔ, rúeʔ, rí, rue, <u>rue</u> , reu
ฤา	<u>rue</u>
ฦ	lúeʔ
ฦา	<u>lue</u>

### Transcription of the tones

Tone indicators are written over the vowels of each syllable, when applicable.

<b>Mid tone</b>	---	<b>O</b>
<b>Low tone</b>	---	<b>Ò</b>
<b>Falling tone</b>	---	<b>Ô</b>
<b>High tone</b>	---	<b>Ó</b>
<b>Rising tone</b>	---	<b>Ỗ</b>

## 1.8 Thai Grammar and Script

In this course, all aspects of Thai grammar will be elaborately explained. In Thai, there are no cases, no articles, no noun genders, and no verb conjugations. The order of the sentence is Subject-Verb-Object, or Subject-Verb-Adjunct. Certainly, the Thai language offers enough pitfalls and challenges, such as the script, the tones, polite particles, question particles, classifiers, an initially confusing time indication system and a very large amount of idiomatic expressions. But Thai grammar is relatively easy to master.

The Thai script doesn't have a different set of capital letters. There is no difference in form between lower case letters, capital letters, italics and handwritten letters. There is just one alphabet, although many typefaces have been designed (the Thai are enthusiastic graphic designers).

## 1.9 Exercises

To accustom yourself to the forms of the Thai script, write every letter of the alphabet (consonants and vowels) down a number of times, until you get the feeling you're writing the letter right. If you would like to learn the sound that goes with the letter immediately, as well, feel free, although nobody will expect you to master the whole alphabet after this mere introduction. The letters of the alphabet will be thoroughly repeated in the next eleven lessons, and after lesson 12 you'll be able to read and write Thai without cribbing. It must be emphasized once more that is important to get the form of the Thai letters into your subconscious. It is a simple fact that, without learning how to read and write, you'll never learn Thai well.

**Write the letters as follows:**

1. You start with the little circle, which you will find on every consonant, except two, and on many of the vowels. The circle is called 'หัว' (*hũa*) in Thai; 'head'. The following three



letters, which consist of two components, have two ‘hǔa’;

ญ - joo jǐng

ฐ - thoo thǎan

ช - sǎo ruesǎi

Two consonants don’t have any ‘hǔa’:

ก - koo kàj

ด - thoo thong

When writing the letters without ‘hua’, start with the left-most open end of the letter. When writing ก and ด, start left-below and left in the middle respectively.

2. When the ‘hua’ is complete, draw the rest of the letter without taking your pen from the paper, until finished.
3. The following vowel signs have no ‘hǔa’:

ํ, ิ, ี, and ุ

When writing these characters, most Thai start in the upper left corner of the ํ, and draw the curved line through until it reaches the lower limit of the x-height.

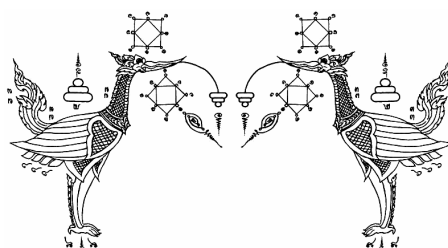
When writing the characters ิ (sàrà i), ี (sàrà ii) and ุ (sàrà ue), start at the right, and draw the lower line of the little half moon to the left; then draw the upper line of the little half moon back to the right. After that, add the little vertical strokes.

5. The character ุ (sàrà ue) has a little circle, but this doesn’t count as a ‘hǔa’, because the vowel sign is formed in the same way as the characters under 4. First the little half moon is drawn, then the little circle.

To show you how what a Thai sentence looks like, here is an example sentence with vowels in front of, behind, under, after, above and around the consonants, tone marks, high-written vowels and diphthongs; spaces between clauses and punctuation marks. Notice that the manner of the parts of letters, vowels, tone marks et cetera, stick out above and under the standard letter height:

เพื่อให้เป็นไปตาม พรบ. การประกอบธุรกิจข้อมูลเครดิต พศ. 2545 บริษัทฯ ได้นำส่งข้อมูลเครดิตของท่านตามรายละเอียดที่แสดงไว้ในใบเรียกเก็บเงินรอบบัญชีที่ผ่านมาของท่านและข้อมูลอื่นๆ (ถ้ามีการระบุไว้ทั้งนี้ไม่รวมรายละเอียดการใช้จ่ายแต่ละรายการ) ให้แก่บริษัทข้อมูลเครดิตแห่งชาติ จำกัด ดังนั้น ข้อมูลดังกล่าวอาจแตกต่างจากข้อมูลของท่านในปัจจุบัน

Good Luck!





# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 2

### Questions and answers

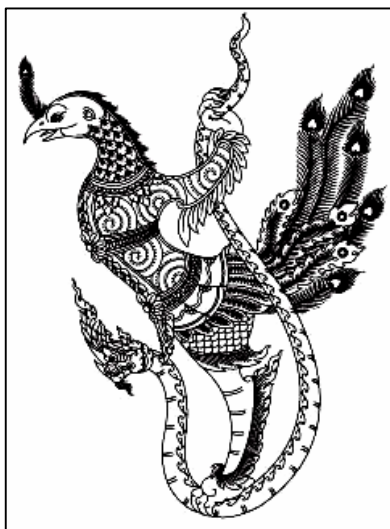
#### คำถาม และ คำ ตอบ

- 2.1 Introduction
- 2.2 The Thai sentence (1)
- 2.3 Cultural notes
- 2.4 Characteristics of the Thai language
- 2.5 The Thai sentence (2)
- 2.6 Exercises
- 2.7 Answers to exercise 1





## 2.1 Introduction



In lesson one you have been introduced to the basics of the Thai script and the fundamentals of the Thai language. In this lesson, you actually start learning Thai. Just like a linguist on the first day of his fieldwork, you will learn to ask some simple but important questions – and see some possible answers.

You will notice that the study texts, and every word in the word lists, are offered to you written in the Thai script as well as in the transcription system. This is done to offer you a written reference of every Thai word and sentence you will learn before you have actually mastered the Thai script after lesson 12. It is recommended that you repeat the sections written in Thai from time to time, as in the beginning of your study your reading and writing skills will probably lag behind your speaking and listening skills for a while. Fast word recognition is the basis of learning

to read Thai fluently. As has been made clear in section 1.6., Thai script doesn't use as much punctuation as written English, and words in a sentence are written after each other in fluent rows, without spaces between the words. In this course, Thai texts will be written in the true Thai way starting from the 25<sup>th</sup> lesson (in Intermediate Thai Part 2). Until that lesson, Thai words are written separated from each other, like in Thai primary school primers. This is done to let you gradually reach the point where you'll recognize words as separate entities of form and meaning from what at first will first seem like endless rows of curly characters. Exercises in word recognition are, from now on, an essential part of the course. Starting from lesson seven, when you'll know enough words to be able to actually follow a written text, the alphabet will be repeated step by step, and you'll learn more about the tricks and pitfalls of the Thai system of writing. In the first few lessons of the course, you will learn how to speak basic Thai, and you will start building up your fundamental knowledge of grammar and idioms.

cd 1a  
track 3

## 2.2 The Thai sentence (1)

### The affirmative sentence: word order

Thai is an SVO-language; this means that an affirmative sentence consists, in principle, of a Subject, a Verb, and an Object, and is also built up in that order (Subject-Verb-Object); just like English.

จ้อย กิน ข้าว      *côj kin khâaw*      Joy (girl's name)- to eat- rice      Joy eats (rice)

### The interrogative sentence: the question particle

The word order of a question is the same as that of an affirmative sentence. Because Thai is a tonal language, a question is not indicated by intonation as in English (in which every word can be made into a question by using a rising intonation (O.K.? Yes?)), but by means of a question particle, which is a fixed word appearing at the end of a question. There are two basic question particles:

ไหม	mǎj	used in general questions
หรือ	rŭe	used in rhetorical questions, or in questions in which the only possible answers are 'yes' or 'no'. (yes-no questions)

The question particle is, just like the rising intonation in English (in spoken language) and the question mark (in written language), always placed at the end of a sentence.

จ้อย กิน ข้าว ไหม

Joy eat rice [question particle]

*côj kin khâaw mǎj*

Is Joy eating (rice)?

พี่ กิน ข้าว แล้ว หรือ

Older-brother/sister eat already [question particle]

*phû kin khâaw léew rŭe*

Have you (has elder brother) eaten rice already?

### Demonstrative and relative pronouns

Like in every other language, including English, demonstrative pronouns in Thai are used to indicate things. Demonstrative pronouns should not be confused with relative pronouns. Where in English, the demonstrative pronoun and the relative pronoun can sometimes be easily confused ('That is a book'; 'The book that I read'), the difference between Thai demonstrative pronouns and relative pronouns is clear and lies in the tone... Look at the following questions and answers:

#### Questions and answers

#### คำถาม และ คำตอบ

What is this?

*nî àraj*

นี่ อะไร

What is this?

*nî khue àraj*

นี่ คือ อะไร

What is this?

*nî pen àraj*

นี่ เป็น อะไร

What is that?

*nân àraj*

นั่น อะไร

What is that?

*nân khue àraj*

นั่น คือ อะไร

What is that?

*nân pen àraj*

นั่น เป็น อะไร

What is that over there?

*nôon àraj*

โน่น อะไร

What is that over there?

*nôon khue àraj*

โน่น คือ อะไร

What is that over there?

*nôon pen àraj*

โน่น เป็น อะไร

This is a book.

*nî nǎngsŭe*

นี่ หนังสือ

This is a book.

*nî khue nǎngsŭe*

นี่ คือ หนังสือ

This is a book.

*nî pen nǎngsŭe*

นี่ เป็น หนังสือ

That is a pen.

*nân pàakkaa*

นั่น ปากกา

That is a pen.

*nân khue pàakkaa*

นั่น คือ ปากกา

That is a pencil.

*nân pen dīnsŏo*

นั่น เป็น ดินสอ

Questions and answers

What are these?

*nî àraj*

นี่ อะไร

What are those?

*nân àraj*

นั่น อะไร

What are those (over there)?

*nòun àraj*

โน้น อะไร

Those (over there) are houses.

*nòun bâan*

โน้น บ้าน

These are notebooks.

*nî sàmut*

นี่ สมุด

Those (over there) are tables.

*nòun pen tót*

โน้น เป็น โต๊ะ

Who is this?

*(khon) nî khraj*

(คน) นี่ ใคร

Who is that?

*(khon) nân khraj*

(คน) นั่น ใคร

Who are they?

(Who are these people?)

*(khon) nî khraj*

(คน) นี่ ใคร

What are these?

*nî khue àraj*

นี่ คือ อะไร

What are those?

*nân khue àraj*

นั่น คือ อะไร

What are those (over there)?

*nòun khue àraj*

โน้น คือ อะไร

Those (over there) are fields.

*nòun khue naa*

โน้น คือ นา

Those are erasers.

*nân khue jaang lóp*

นั่น คือ ยาง ลบ

Those are chairs.

*nân khue kâw?î*

นั่น คือ เก้าอี้

Who is this?

*(khon) nî khue khraj*

(คน) นี่ คือ ใคร

Who is that?

*(khon) nân khue khraj*

(คน) นั่น คือ ใคร

Who are they?

(Who are these people?)

*khon nî khue khraj*

คน นี่ คือ ใคร

คำถาม และ คำตอบ

What are these?

*nî pen àraj*

นี่ เป็น อะไร

What are those?

*nân pen àraj*

นั่น เป็น อะไร

What are those (over there)?

*nòun pen àraj*

โน้น เป็น อะไร

Those (over there) are people.

*nòun pen khon*

โน้น เป็น คน

Those (over there) are girls.

*nòun pen phûu jǐng*

โน้น เป็น ผู้หญิง

These are clothes

*nî sùea phâa*

นี่ เสื้อผ้า

Who is this?

*(khon) nî pen khraj*

(คน) นี่ เป็น ใคร

Who is that?

*(khon) nân pen khraj*

(คน) นั่น เป็น ใคร

Who are they?

(Who are these people?)

*khon nî pen khraj*

คน นี่ เป็น ใคร

Questions and answers

Who are they?  
(Who are those people?)  
*khon nân khraj*  
คน นั้น ใคร

Is this a person?  
*nû khue khon mǎj*  
นี่ คือ คน ไหม

This is a person, isn't it?  
*nû khue khon châj mǎj*  
นี่ คือ คน ใช่ ไหม

Yes, that is a person.  
*châj nân khue khon*  
ใช่ นั้น คือ คน

No, that is a dog.  
*mâj châj nân khue mǎa*  
ไม่ใช่ นั้น คือ หมา

This is a book, isn't it?  
*nû khue nǎngsue châj mǎj*  
นี่ คือ หนังสือ ใช่ ไหม

Who are they?  
(Who are those people?)  
*khon nân khue khraj*  
คน นั้น คือ ใคร

Is this a dog?  
*nû mǎa mǎj*  
นี่ หมา ไหม

This is a dog, isn't it?  
*nû mǎa châj mǎj*  
นี่ หมา ใช่ ไหม

Yes, that is a dog.  
*châj nân mǎa*  
ใช่ นั้น หมา

No, that is a cat.  
*mâj châj nân mɛɛw*  
ไม่ใช่ นั้น แมว

No, this is a notebook.  
*mâj châj nân sàmut*  
ไม่ใช่ นั้น สมุด

คำถาม และ คำตอบ

Who are they?  
(Who are those people?)  
*khon nân pen khraj*  
คน นั้น เป็น ใคร

Is this a girl?  
*nû pen phûu jǐng mǎj*  
นี่ เป็น ผู้หญิง ไหม

This is a girl, isn't it?  
*nû pen phûu jǐng châj mǎj*  
นี่ เป็น ผู้หญิง ใช่ ไหม

Yes, that is a girl.  
*châj nân pen phûu jǐng*  
ใช่ นั้น เป็น ผู้หญิง

No, that is a boy.  
*mâj châj nân pen phûu chaaj*  
ไม่ใช่ นั้น เป็น ผู้ชาย

No, this is a pen.  
*mâj châj nân pen pàakkaa*  
ไม่ใช่ นั้น เป็น ปากกา

Now, compare the demonstrative pronouns shown above with the relative pronouns in the next sentences, and notice that the tone of the relative pronoun is different:

This school is good.  
*roṅgrian nû dii*  
โรงเรียน นี้ ดี

This person is thin.  
*khon nû phoom*  
คน นี้ ผอม

This chair is old.  
*kâw-îi nû kàw*  
เก้าอี้ นี้ เก่า

That dog bites.  
*mǎa nán kàt*  
หมา นั้น กัด

That cat is cute.  
*mɛɛw nán nâa rak*  
แมว นั้น น่า รัก

That house is red.  
*bâan nán dɛɛng*  
บ้าน นั้น แดง

That country there is rich  
*pràthêet nōṅ ruaj*  
ประเทศ ไน้ รวย

That city there is beautiful  
*mueang nōṅ sǎj*  
เมือง ไน้ สวย

That star there is far (away)  
*daaw nōṅ klaj*  
ดาว ไน้ ไกล



## The Plural

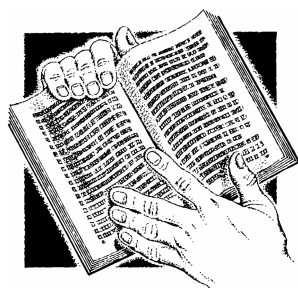
A plural is not usually indicated in Thai, but when necessary, the fact that something is plural can be indicated by 'group words', such as 'เหล่า' (*lâw* - 'group') and 'พวก' (*phûak* - 'group'), which are placed in front of the demonstrative or relative pronoun.

Who are those people?  
*khon làw nân khue khraj*  
 คน เหล่า นั้น คือ ใคร

Are those dogs?  
*phûak nân mǎa maj*  
 พวก นั้น หมา ไหม

No, those are cats.  
*mǎj chāj phûak nân mēew*  
 ไม่ใช่ พวก นั้น แมว

## cd 1a Vocabulary track 4



หนังสือ



ดินสอ

kin	กิน	to eat
khâaw	ข้าว	rice
aahǎan	อาหาร	food
léew	แล้ว	1. already; 2. and after that, next
nîi	นี้	this, these (relative pronoun)
nîi	นี่	this, these (demonstrative pronoun)
àʔraj, àraj, araj*	อะไร	1. what, which; 2. something
khue	คือ	to be (as in: 'this is a...; this is called a...)
pen	เป็น	1. to be (as a fact); 2. to exist; 3. to become; 4. to be alive
nân	นั้น	that (demonstrative pronoun)
nán	นั่น	that (relative pronoun)
nǒon	โน้น	that over there (demonstrative pronoun)
nǒon	โน้น	that over there (relative pronoun)
nǎngsǔe	หนังสือ	book
pàakkaa	ปากกา	pen
dinsǎo	ดินสอ	pencil
bāan	บ้าน	house
naa	นา	field, cultivated land, rice paddy
khon	คน	man, person
sàmut	สมุด	notebook
jaang lóp	ยาง ลบ	eraser



เก้าอี้



แมว

phûu jǐng	ผู้หญิง	girl, woman
tót?	โต๊ะ	table
kâw ?î	เก้าอี้	chair
sûea phâa	เสื้อผ้า	clothes, clothing
khraj	ใคร	1. who; 2. someone
lâw nî	เหล่านี้	these (plural, demonstrative pronoun)
lâw nû	เหล่านี้	these (plural, relative pronoun)
lâw nân	เหล่านั้น	those (plural, demonstrative pronoun)
lâw nán	เหล่านั้น	those (plural, relative pronoun)
măa	หมา	dog
măj	ไหม	question particle for an open question
châj	ใช่	yes
châj măj	ใช่ ไหม	yes?; isn't it?; isn't that true?
mâj	ไม่	no; not
mâj châj	ไม่ใช่	1. no (not yes); 2. not to be (is not)
mɛɛw	แมว	cat
phûu chaaj	ผู้ชาย	man, boy
rɔɔngrian	โรงเรียน	school
khon	คน	man, person, human
bân	บ้าน	house
pràthêet	ประเทศ	country
mueang	เมือง	country, city
daaw	ดาว	star
ruaj	รวย	rich
sǔaj	สวย	beautiful
klaj	ไกล	far

## 2.3 Cultural notes: Khunna, Decha and Bunkhun, and your place in Thai society

In almost every sentence a Thai says, he or she can make clear in which relation he stands to the person he is speaking to, and even to which social class he belongs. Immediately, or almost immediately, it becomes clear in which relationship the speakers stand to each other, and how

people should behave towards each other. The different social groups existing within society are not just relatively ‘superior’ or ‘inferior’ in comparison with each other, although social status is very important in Thai society. More abstract social aspects are called ‘khunna’ (คุณ)<sup>1</sup>, moral goodness and virtue, and ‘dèetchá’ (เดช, เดชะ), the power to change chaos into order, are just as important. One finds ‘khunna’ in the monks in the temples, but also in the simple farmer who supports his extended family, in the honest civil servant, and the just policeman. One finds ‘decha’ in one’s King, one’s boss, in the man who holds power and uses it for the good of mankind: The Abbott in the temple whom all monks and villagers revere, the head of a family, the phûu jàt bâan<sup>2</sup>, the Police Colonel at the police station.

In earlier times, relationships were simpler. A farmer worked the land of his Lord, and was thus assured of protection against enemies and intruders. Today, an employee works hard and is polite to his chief, expecting goodwill, a fair treatment and promotion. Such a relation between ‘ruler’ and ‘subject’ is called a patron-client relationship in sociology. In Thai it is better known as a ‘*bunkhun*’ (บุญคุณ) relation; a relation for which a mutual feeling of dependency and duty is the basis. One could see Thai society as a strictly hierarchical society, which on the other hand forms a community in which everyone fulfils his duty, and each is dependent on the other. One could easily think that a foreigner would only awkwardly fit into this system.

It is a fact, though, that the Thai have been touched by foreign influences since the beginning of their state-formation. The ‘Dewaraja’ or God-King principle as legitimacy of royal power had been loaned from Khmers and Indians. Buddhism arrived both from China and via Sri Langka and the Malay Peninsula. And the tendency to form city-states had been taken from the Thai homeland in Southern China. Also, instead of enslaving or destroying conquered peoples, the Thai assimilated and absorbed them. This benevolent attitude has actually done the Thai a world of good.

Apart from the strong international policy of nineteenth- and early twentieth century kings, early diplomatic ties with the important political powers of the time have been a guarantee for the fact that Thailand, as one of only a few countries in Asia, has never fallen prey to Western colonialism and expansionism.

In Thailand, you will not be called to account as a representative of Dutch or French colonialism or a scion of the British Raj. Nor will you be seen as a superior or inferior being in ethical, military, intellectual, or any other sense.

In Thailand, you shall always be recognizable as an occidental, but you shall, if you learn the language well and adhere to social rules, not stay the odd one out for long. Typical for the Thai mentality in this aspect, is the fact that popular Thai actors, social reformers and sportsmen of mixed parentage are always proudly presented as being Thai, although one of their parents (or grandparents) is a Westerner. Also Thai of a mixed Thai-Chinese, Thai-Indian, Thai-Khmer or Thai-Malay heritage will always consider themselves - and will be considered by others - as Thai.

---

<sup>1</sup> Not to be confused with the word ‘คุณ’ – *khun* – ‘you (polite)’. This word is related to ‘คุณ’ – *khunna*, but has slightly deviated from its original meaning. You might compare it with the formal, old fashioned ‘Your Grace’ in English.

<sup>2</sup> Leader of a village or a rural community.

## 2.4 Characteristics of the Thai Language

Thai is a tonal language with five distinctive tones. Tones co-define the meaning of a morpheme (a morpheme is the minimal distinctive unit of form and meaning in grammar). In principle, Thai is an ‘isolating’, or ‘analytic’ language (like Mandarin, Burmese, Vietnamese and Lao), but it has some lexical derivation by means of prefixes and infixes in Khmer loan words. Furthermore, fusional influence is visible in loan constructions (both ancient and modern) from languages such as Pali and Sanskrit. Thai has thus become a tonal language with a relatively complex morphology.

Thai can be classified as an SVO (Subject-Verb-Object)-language, just like English. Adjuncts follow the subject. There is no inflection. Tenses are indicated with auxiliary words such as ‘then’, ‘before’ and ‘in the future’, not by verbal conjugations. Thai doesn’t know articles, genders or cases...

On the other hand, Thai has dozens of personal pronouns, all in use, and scrupulously utilized in accordance with the status of the speakers. Thai has five tones, and, on the whole, very few Thai words sound in the least bit like English words with the same meaning. Thai has a beautiful writing system, but it differs greatly from the Latin alphabet and cannot be learned in a day or two. Thai has four or five different language levels; from a special vocabulary that is only used when speaking to, or referring to the King, via levels of polite, social and familiar language to a coarse and impolite, intimate language which is only used among close friends, and which can hurt when it is used towards strangers.

But most of all, Thai is a melodious and intriguing language, spoken by many nice people in a beautiful country.

cd 1a  
track 5

## 2.5 The Thai sentence (2)

**Considering its construction, an affirmative sentence** in Thai looks in principle exactly like one in English: After the Subject follows a Verb, and after the Verb follows an Object. Note, though, that adjuncts and adjectives follow the noun, like in French.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. “This is a dog.”<br>nî khue mǎa                              | นี่ คือ หมา<br>this - to be - dog                             |
| 2. “This is a lovable dog.”<br>nî khue mǎa nâa rák              | นี่ คือ หมา น่ารัก<br>this - to be - dog - loveable           |
| 3. “I hit the dog.”<br>phǎm tii mǎa                             | ผม ตี หมา<br>I - to hit – dog                                 |
| 4. “I hit the dog that bites me.”<br>phǎm tii mǎa thîi kàt phǎm | ผม ตี หมา ที่ กัด ผม<br>I - to hit - dog - that - to bite - I |

**In informal speech**, the words ‘คือ’ and ‘เป็น’ (see 2.2.) are often omitted.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. “That is a beautiful girl.”<br>nân sǎaw sǎaj  | นั้น สาว สวย<br>that - girl - beautiful |
| 2. “This is a good bicycle.”<br>nî cākṛàjaan dīi | นี่ จักรยาน ดี<br>this - bicycle - good |

**An interrogative sentence** is formed exactly as an affirmative sentence, but a question particle is placed after the last relevant word of the sentence. The question particle (also called question marker) is generally the last word before the polite particle (see lesson 3).

In general questions, the question particle **ไหม** (mǎj) is added. Fortuitously, this question particle has a rising tone in standard Thai, so a question with **ไหม** (mǎj) does indeed sound as a question in western ears. This is indeed accidental: In other Thai dialects, as for instance Isan or Lao, the question particle has no rising tone. But the fact that a standard Thai question with the question particle mǎj sounds like a question can help you to recognize questions during the first weeks of your study.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. “Is this a Chinese?”<br>nî khue/pen khon ciin mǎj | นี่ คือ / เป็น คน จีน ไหม<br>this - to be - man - China - question particle |
| 2. “Is this gold?”<br>nî khue / pen thoong mǎj       | นี่ คือ / เป็น ทอง ไหม<br>this - to be - gold - question particle           |

**An interrogative sentence**, of which the answer should be ‘yes’, or in which the speaker would take a positive answer for granted, is formed with the question particle **หรือ** (rǔe). In English, this type of question would usually be formed by adding ‘isn’t it?’, ‘aren’t you?’, ‘wouldn’t he?’, etc. to a statement, or ‘or what?’ behind a question.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. “Are you crazy or what?”<br>kee bâa rǔe        | แก บ้า หรือ<br>you (familiar) - crazy - question particle |
| 2. “Are you calling that a dog?”<br>nân mǎa rǔe   | นั่น หมา หรือ<br>that - dog - question particle           |
| 3. “That is difficult, isn’t it?”<br>man jâak rǔe | มัน ยาก หรือ<br>that - difficult - question particle      |

**A rhetorical question** is a question, of which the positive answer is supposed to be well-known to everyone. It is formed with the question particle **ไหม** (mǎj), preceded by the word **ใช่** (châj); ‘yes’; ‘it is’.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. “This is a dog, isn’t it?”<br>nî khue/pen mǎa châj mǎj | นี่ คือ / เป็น หมา ใช่ ไหม<br>this - to be - dog - yes - question particle |
|---|--|

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 2. “This is a girl, yes?”<br>nô khue/pen phinưĩng chậi mắ | นี่ คือ / เป็น ผู้ หญิง ใช่ไหม<br>this - to be - girl – yes - question particle |
|---|---|

**The negation of ใช่ ไหม - chây mǎj is ไม่ใช่ - mǎj chây.** This word is also used for the general negation ‘no’. Linguists like to describe the word ‘ใช่’ as one of the possible translations of the verb ‘to be’. ‘ใช่’ could then also be translated as ‘is’ or ‘it is’. ‘ไม่ใช่’, in any case, has very much the same meaning as ‘it isn’t’. It is the negation of any question asked with the question particle ‘ใช่ ไหม’, a particle for a question on which an affirmative answer is more or less expected.

**The auxiliary verbs ได้ - dâj and เป็น - pen ('to can', 'to be able to')** are placed just after the negation 'ไม่': mostly at the end of a sentence. At the end of a sentence they are placed just in front of the question particle and the polite particle.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. “He can speak Thai.” (He can make himself understood) | เขาพูดไทยได้  |
| khǎw phûut thaj dâj                                      | he - to speak - Thai - to can                       |
| 2. “He can speak Thai.” (He has a good command of it)    | เขาพูดไทยเป็น                                       |
| khǎw phûut thaj pen                                      | he - to speak – Thai - to can                       |
| 3. “He can speak a little Thai.”                         | เขาพูดไทยได้ นิด น้อย                               |
| khǎw phûut thaj dâj nítndòj                              | he - to speak - Thai - to can –<br>a bit - a little |

**Note that:** ได้ - dâj and เป็น - pen both mean ‘to can’, ‘to be able to’. For a natural skill, like speaking one’s mother language, or swimming like a fish can swim, one would rather use the word ‘pen’ than the word ‘dâj’. For a skill that had been achieved through study or practice, like swimming, playing chess or speaking a language that has been learned after childhood, the word ‘dâj’ should be used. Example 1 is ambiguous. In speaking about a Thai, it would mean ‘Of course he can speak Thai; he is Thai’. Directed towards a foreigner, it could mean that he manages reasonably, but has not arrived at the level of ‘pen’; he doesn’t control the language completely, yet.

Both **ได้** - dâj and **เป็น** - pen, by the way, have a number of other meanings. For **เป็น** - pen, you already know the meaning ‘to be’. **ได้** - dâj means, except ‘to can’, also ‘to get’, and is a particle to indicate ‘opportunity in the past’.

The verb **ເປັນ** - pen in its meaning ‘to be’ cannot be negated by just putting **ໄປ** - **māj** (‘no’, ‘not’) in front of it. The negation of **ເປັນ** - pen in its meaning ‘to be’ is **ໄປໄຂ** - **māj chāj**. The verb **ຄື** - khue (‘to be’) is negated in the same manner. (see the examples hereafter).

There are no plural forms of the noun in Thai. To indicate plural and variety, one may repeat the noun, or one adds a noun to the singular, which indicates a plural form (in 2.2. you find some examples with the group-noun **เหล่า** - làw). During this course you will learn more about these group-nouns and other classifiers.

In written language, the reduplication of a word is indicated with the sign ๑ (ไม้ยมก - máaj jámók).

**In a negative sentence, the negation-particle ไม่ - māj** ('no', 'not') is always in front of the part of the sentence that is negated:

1. "This is not a dog."                      นี่ไม่ใช่หมา  
          nû māj chāj mǎa                      this - no/not - to be - dog  
          (noun phrase is negated; เป็น - pen or คือ - khue is negated as ไม่ใช่ - māj chāj.)
2. "He can not speak Thai."              เขาพูดภาษาไทยไม่ได้  
          khǎw phûut phaasǎa thaj māj dǎj    he - to speak - language - Thai - no/not - to can  
          (verb phrase is negated)
3. "This house is not beautiful."          บ้านนี้ไม่สวย  
          bâan nû māj sǔaj                      house - this - no/not - beautiful  
          (adjective<sup>3</sup> is negated)
4. "What he says is not true."              อย่างที่เขาพูดไม่จริง  
          jàang thû khǎw phûut māj cing        thing – that – he – to say – no/not - true  
          (adverb<sup>4</sup> is negated)
5. "I am not going to Bangkok."          ผมจะไม่ไปกรุงเทพฯ  
          phǒm cà māj paj krungthêep        I – shall – no/not – to go – Bangkok  
          (verb is negated)

Please note: ไม่ (māj) is always placed in front of the auxiliary verb ได้ (dǎj), with which it forms a fixed combination in certain negations. It doesn't matter in which of her meanings the word ได้ is used. Note: ไม่ (māj) does not appear in front of every auxiliary verb!

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| "He can not speak." (ได้ is 'to can', 'to be able') | เขาพูดไม่ได้                        |
| khǎw phûut māj dǎj                                  | he - to speak - no/not - to be able |
| "He gets no money." (ได้ is 'to get')               | เขาไม่ได้เงิน                       |
| khǎw māj dǎj ngeun                                  | he - no/not - to get - money        |

**The use of demonstrative pronouns นั้น (nân) and นี้ (nî),** and relative pronouns นั้น (nán) and นี้ (nín) is sometimes ambiguous. Although the words are still used as described in 2.2, their meanings sometimes overlap. The demonstrative pronouns are often pronounced in a high tone, especially in informal language – just as the relative pronouns.

<sup>3</sup> Thai adjectives and adverbs are often, more correctly, called 'static' or 'stative' verbs (see lesson 3).

**Pronunciation; a short remark about ‘r’ and ‘l’**

Many Thais do not pronounce the ‘r’ as a trill, or even at all. If an ‘r’ occurs in a word, people often say ‘l’ instead. People who, due to their profession, have to talk beautifully can pronounce the ‘r’ perfectly well (listen to the television anchormen and -women’s rolling ‘r’-sounds), and they are not the only ones who effortlessly produce a perfect trill if they want. The informal Bangkok dialect, one of the most prestigious dialects in the country, does not recognize the ‘r’-sound, so many people make do without it. In the North, the standard Thai ‘r’ becomes ‘h’, in the dialect of the Northeast (Isan) and in Laotian, the ‘r’ does not exist either. If you want to pronounce a good ‘r’, make it rolling or ‘flapped’. An English ‘r’ won’t do. If you can’t say ‘r’, please use ‘l’.

**cd 1a  
track 6**

**Vocabulary**

phǒm	ผม	1. I (man speaks); 2. hair (on the head)
tii	ดี	hit
kàt	กัด	bite
khǎw	เขา	he, she
dâj	ได้	1. to can; 2. to get; 3. particle for perfect past tense
pen	เป็น	1. to be; 2. to be able to; to can
phûut	พูด	to speak
phaasǎa	ภาษา	language
thaj	ไทย	Thailand (Thai)
neetheulɛɛn	เนเธอร์แลนด์	The Netherlands (Dutch)
nítndòj	นิดหน่อย	a little
angkɹít	อังกฤษ	England (English)
fàràngsèet	ฝรั่งเศส	France (French)
sàpeen	สเปน	Spain (Spanish)
rátisia	รัสเซีย	Russia (Russian)
ciin	จีน	China (Chinese)
jípùn	ญี่ปุ่น	Japan (Japanese)
indoŋniisia	อินโดนีเซีย	Indonesia (Indonesian)

N.B. The language of a country or the name of a language is normally preceded by the word ‘ภาษา’ (phaasǎa: language). English is ‘ภาษาอังกฤษ’ (phaasǎa angkɹít). Chinese is ‘ภาษาจีน’ (phaasǎa ciin). The name of a country is mostly preceded by the word ‘ประเทศ’ (pràthêet: country). China is ‘ประเทศจีน’ (pràthêet ciin), Russia is ‘ประเทศรัสเซีย’ (pràthêet rátisia); Indonesia is ‘ประเทศอินโดนีเซีย’ (pràthêet indoŋniisia). In spoken conversation you will often hear the name of language as well as country without ‘phaasǎa’ or ‘pràthêet’ in front.



เขาพูดไทยได้ไหม	khǎw phûut thaj dâj mǎj	Can he speak Thai?
ผมพูดอังกฤษไม่ได้	phôm phûut angkrît mâj dâj	I cannot speak English.
เขาจะไปอังกฤษ	khǎw cà paj angkrît	He'll go to England

For ‘pràthêet’, also the word ‘เมือง’ (‘mueang’) is used, especially in ‘เมืองไทย’ (‘mueang thaj’: ‘Thailand’). The word ‘mueang’ can mean ‘country’ as well as ‘city’.

## 2.6 Exercises

### 1

a.. Translate the following sentences into English:

1. khǎw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj mǎj
2. mɛɛw làw nán sǔaj mǎj
3. mǎa nộ๑n kàt
4. nû pen bǎan chǎj mǎj
5. nû mâj chǎj phûu chaaj

b. Translate into Thai. Use the transcription script.

1. Is this a dog?
2. That is a boy.
3. Those people, are they girls?
4. Who is that?
5. That cat over there.

### 2

a. Learn all words from lesson 2 by heart. Repeat the alphabet in Lesson 1.

b. Translate into English:

1. nû sàmut chǎj mǎj
2. khon nû pen khon jûpùn
3. khon nû pen phûjǐng mǎj
4. nân khue mǎa chǎj mǎj
5. khǎw phûut phaasǎa ciin pen mǎj

c. Translate into Thai. Use the transcription script:

1. This dog is beautiful.
2. Yes, that is a man.
3. Who are those girls over there?
4. These are pens, aren't they? No, these are pencils.
5. Are these tables?

d. Make sentences.

Make ten good Thai sentences with the words in the wordlist. Note with every word you use why it should be in the position within the sentence where you have put it. You may take the sentences from 2.2. as examples, but please try to build your sentences as originally as possible.

## 2.7      **Answers to exercise 1**

- a. 1. Can he speak Thai?  
2. Are those cats beautiful?  
3. That dog over there bites.  
4. This is a house, isn't it?  
5. This is not a man.
- b. 1. nî khue mǎa mǎj (nî pen mǎa mǎj, nî mǎa mǎj)  
2. nân phûu chaaj (nân pen phûu chaaj , nân khue phûu chaaj)  
3. khon làw nán pen phûu jǐng mǎj (khon làw nán khue phûu jǐng mǎj, khon làw nán phûu jǐng mǎj)  
4. nân khraj  
5. mɛɛw nɔ̀ɔn

# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 3

### Introducing yourself

#### การ แนะนำ ตัว

- 3.1 Introduction
- 3.2 Introducing yourself
- 3.3 Idioms, polite gestures, greetings
- 3.4 The verb “to be”
- 3.5 Exercises
- 3.6 Answers to the exercises





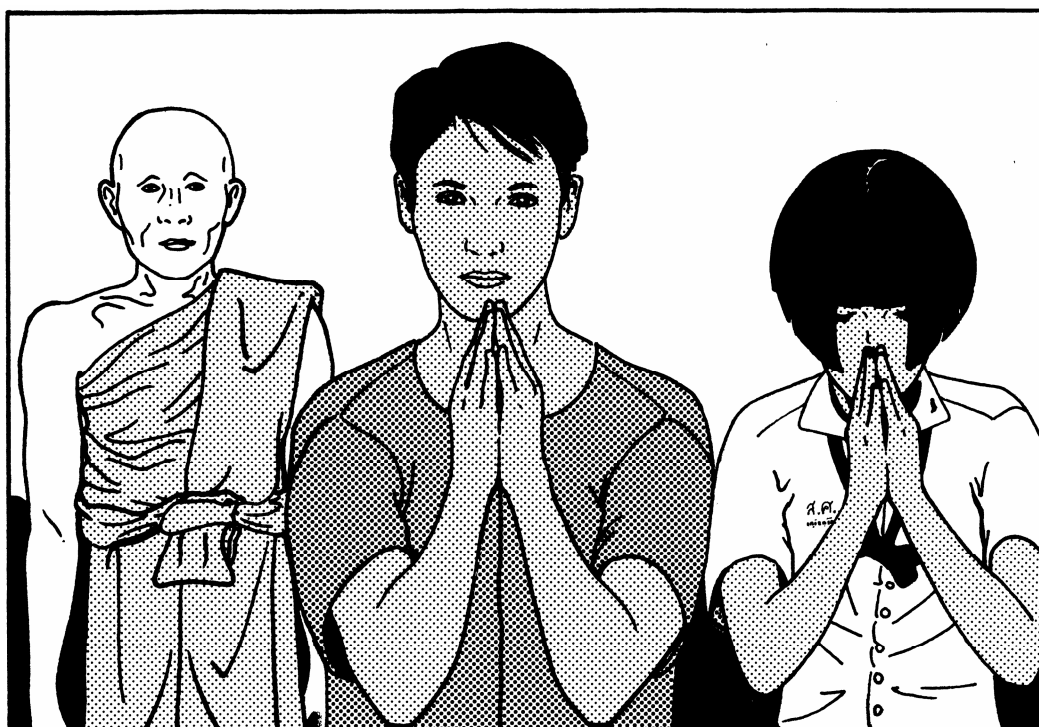
### 3.1 Introduction

In this lesson you will learn how to introduce yourself. You will learn how you get acquainted with other people, and how other people introduce themselves to you. The first ice between you and the Thai will be broken.

cd 1a  
track 7

### 3.2 Introducing yourself

การ แนะนำ ตัว



#### Introducing yourself

This is Jintana Chakraphet.

(Her) nickname is “Joy”.

She is 21 years old.

She studies English and French.

She is a student.

#### การ แนะนำ ตัว

นี่ คือ จินตนา จักรเพชร

ชื่อเล่น “จอย”

เขา อายุ ยี่สิบเอ็ด ปี

เขา ศึกษา ภาษา อังกฤษ

และ ภาษา ฝรั่งเศส

เขา เป็น นัก ศึกษา

#### kaan nénam tua

nî khue cintànaa càkphét<sup>4</sup>

chûe lén cōj

khăw aajú jî sîp èt pii

khăw sùeksăa phaasăa

angkrit lé? phaasăa fàràngsèet

khăw pen nák sùeksăa

<sup>4</sup> NB. Jintana’s surname can be pronounced ‘càkphét’ as well as ‘càkràphét’. In Thai, there exist more words which can be pronounced in slightly different manners. Especially in complex loan words and surnames, pronunciation is sometimes not fixed, and more than one pronunciation is often accepted.

This is Surasak Chakraphet.  
(His) nickname is “Sua”.  
He is 24 years old.  
He has just graduated.

He is an engineer.

This is Kanya.  
Her nickname is “Noi”.  
She is 19 years old.  
She is a servant.

He is Mr. Peter Wolf.  
Everyone calls him:  
“Mr. Peter”.  
He is 40 years old.  
He is a Dutchman.  
He works in Thailand.

Good day. (woman speaking)  
My name is Jintana.  
Good day. (man speaking)  
I am Peter Wolf.

นี่ คือ สุรศักดิ์ จักรเพชร  
ชื่อ เล่น “เสือ”  
เขา อายุ ยี่ สิบ สี่ ปี  
เขา เพิ่ง จบ มหาวิทยาลัย

เขา เป็น วิศวกร

นี่ คือ กัญญา  
ชื่อ เล่น “น้อย”  
เขา อายุ สิบ เก้า ปี  
เขา เป็น คน รับ ใช้

ท่าน คือ คุณ เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ  
ทุกคน เรียก ท่าน ว่า:  
“ท่าน เปเตอร์”  
ท่าน อายุ สี่ สิบ ห้า ปี  
ท่าน เป็น คน เนเธอร์แลนด์  
ท่าน ทำงาน ที่ เมือง ไทย

สวัสดี ค่ะ  
ดิฉัน ชื่อ จินตนา ค่ะ  
สวัสดี ครับ  
ผม เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ ครับ

nû khue sùrāsàk chàkphét  
chûe lèn sŭea  
khăw aajù jî sîp sî pii  
khăw phûeng còp  
máhăawítthájaalaj  
khăw pen wísàwákoon

nû khue kanjaa  
chûe lèn nóoj  
khăw aajù sîp kâw pii  
khăw pen khon ráp cháj

thân khue khun peeteu woof  
thúk khon riak thân wâa  
thân peeteu  
thân aajù sî sîp hâa pii  
thân pen khon neetheuleen  
thân tham- ngaan thî  
mueang thaj

sàwàtdii khâ  
dichăn chûe cintànaa khâ  
sàwàtdii khráp  
phôm peeteu woof khráp

cd 1a Vocabulary  
track 8



นัก ศึกษา

nénam  
kaan nénam  
tua  
kan  
kòon  
nâ? ; nâ

แนะนำ  
การ แนะนำ  
ตัว  
กัน  
ก่อน  
นะ

to introduce  
introduction; the act of  
introducing'  
1. body; 2. oneself  
1. each other; 2. particle of  
reciprocity  
first  
particle for mild emphasis,  
or confirmation of the



ศึกษา

ná? ; ná

sì

ní

ní

นะ

ลี

นี่

นี้

preceding statement

particle for mild emphasis  
in questions

particle for affirmative  
emphasis

this (demonstrative  
pronoun)

this (relative pronoun;  
shortened form of demon-  
strative pronoun)

khăw

chûe

lên

chûe lên

jî sìp

jî sìp èt

sùeksăa

nák sùeksăa

jî sìp sî

phûeng

còp

เขา

ชื่อ

เล่น

ชื่อ เล่น

ยี่สิบ

ยี่สิบเอ็ด

ศึกษา

นัก ศึกษา

ยี่สิบสี่

เพิ่ง

จบ

he, she (3<sup>rd</sup> person  
singular)

1. name; 2. to be named

to play

nickname

twenty

twenty-one

to study

student

twenty-four

just; a moment ago

to end, to finish, to  
complete



คนรับใช้

máhăawitthájaaalaj

wítsàwákoon

khon ráp cháj (khon cháj)

thân

khun

thúk khon

rîak

มหาวิทยาลัย

วิศวกร

คนรับใช้

(คนใช้)

ท่าน \*

คุณ

ทุกคน

เรียก

university

engineer

servant, resident domestic

servant

1. you (2<sup>nd</sup> person  
singular); 2. he, she  
(polite, towards elders and  
superiors)

1. you (polite); 2. honor-  
ific used in front of the  
first name of people  
(compare to Mr., Mrs.,  
Miss)

every person; everyone

1. to call; 2. to call out;



เนเธอร์แลนด์



เมืองไทย

sìi sìp  
neetheuleen  
tham  
ngaan  
thamngaan  
thîi  
  
mueang  
thaj  
mueang thaj  
sàwàtdii

khâ  
  
dichăn  
khráp  
phôm

สี่สิบ  
เนเธอร์แลนด์  
ทำ  
งาน  
ทำงาน  
ที่  
  
เมือง  
ไทย<sup>5</sup>  
เมืองไทย  
สวัสดี

ค่ะ  
  
ดิฉัน  
ครับ  
ผม

3. to address; 4. to demand  
forty  
The Netherlands  
1. to do; 2. to make  
1. work (n); 2. party (n)  
to work  
in, at, on (adjunct of place)  
1. city, town; 2. country  
Thai  
Thailand  
hello; good morning; good afternoon; good evening  
polite particle for women in affirmative sentences  
I (woman speaking)  
polite particle for men  
I (man speaking)

\* Irregular pronunciation: Written with a long ‘aa’; pronounced with a short ‘a’.

### Thai names and nicknames

Apart from his official given name, almost every Thai has a nickname, which is used far more often than his official name. The official first name - hardly ever more than one – is printed in front of his family name on his national identity card and in his passport, and is only used for official occasions. The nickname is intended for daily use. The official given name is often a name based on beautiful Sanskrit and Pali terms, and always indicates quality: ‘piety’, beauty’, ‘strength’, ‘intelligence’, ‘wisdom’... The nickname is generally monosyllabic and not always flattering. Many Thai go by names as ‘Fat’, ‘Dented’, ‘Silent’, ‘Little’, ‘Tiny’ and ‘Very Tiny’. Other nicknames are animal names. People can be called after any animal, from mighty beasts like the tiger and the elephant, to the bear and the cat and the rat, to animals like the grasshopper, the chicken, and the mosquito larva. Furthermore, names of expensive and beautiful things are used as nicknames (Diamond, Crystal, Gold), names of flowers (Lotus, Blossom, Rose), and names of fruits (Apple, Rambutan, Rose Apple). Sometimes one’s features as a newborn baby cause one to be nicknamed ‘Red’ or ‘Black’, Or ‘Flabby’. A baby with widely opened eyes will be called ‘Eyes’, a child with a flat face ‘Flat’. Often, the characteristics, which someone is named after, don’t fit in with reality when one grows up, but a nickname often stays.

<sup>5</sup> The word “ไทย” is one of the very few words in the Thai language that is written with the letter-combination ไ-ย for the sound ‘aj’.



In the seventies and eighties English words and names of Western status symbols were popular as nicknames. There are people who are called ‘Cartoon’ and ‘Benz’. In the last decades of the 20<sup>th</sup> century people also started to give their children real English names as given names. There are Thai men who are called ‘Joe’ and Thai girls who are called ‘Jane’. Famous actors and actresses of mixed blood became well known by their foreign given name, like Willy MacIntosh and Marsha Wattanaphanit. There are now plenty of Thai children who are called after their parent’s idols, and who carry the name ‘Willy’ or ‘Marsha’ as a nickname or a given name. Another foreign name that was already popular in the eighties is Linda. Linda Kathancharoen was a very popular actress in those days. There are now many people named Marisa, James (after James Wattana, the snooker-player), Tiger (after Tiger Woods) and even a fair number of people named Jackie (Jackie Chan, though not Thai, is a popular actor here).

Thais who carry an official given name consisting of only one or two syllables, such as ‘Krit’, ‘Buppha’ or ‘Mali’, sometimes don’t feel the need to use a nickname. Most Thai names, though, consist of three or four syllables, and because given names are often used as personal pronouns (1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular), the constant repetition of your own name and that of your discussion partner during a dialogue would make a conversation needlessly long. Polysyllabic nicknames, which also exist, are often shortened to one syllable in their turn. ‘Grasshopper’ (tákàteen) will be shortened to ‘teen’. ‘Cartoon’ (kaatuun) will become ‘tuun’ under friends.

The official number of names from which one could choose when naming one’s child, has always been more or less finite, but today no official registrar will be amazed when a Thai couple decides to give their child an English, French, or Japanese official first name. Where until after the Second World War (when a last large group of Chinese arrived in Thailand’s harbors) it was good form for immigrants to adopt a Thai name even before naturalization, today parents can give their child any name they wish.

There is still a small group of aged Thai citizens that goes through life with only a single, monosyllabic name. This group has been born before 1925 – when the King ordered all his subjects to take a surname – in desolate areas in some of the least inhabited provinces of the Kingdom.

Most Chinese-Thai now carry Thai names. In the 1950s most Chinese families exchanged their Chinese name for a Thai one. Their surnames are often poetic and flowery; their first names are often classically Thai – a bit old-fashioned. The Sino-Thai who have not taken a Thai surname can be recognized by their monosyllabic surname, which is preceded by the word ‘แซ่’, sâe - ‘clan’.

### Forms of address

The polite way to address a Thai is คุณ (khun) + first name. In Britain, Mr. Peter Wolf would be called “Mr. Wolf” by strangers, vague acquaintances and his personnel. In Thailand he would be called “Khun Peter”. Strangers with a higher or equal status as the speaker are also addressed with คุณ, but without the surname. To attract someone’s attention, one says: “คุณ ครับ/คุณค่ะ” (khun khráp/khun khâ). People with an obviously higher status, such as (high) police officers, professors, ministers, etc., one addresses with ท่าน (thân) in front of the first name of the person in question. Young children (and girls up to an age of about 17) can be addressed as หมู - nūu - ‘mouse’, or, if one is about the same age as their parents, as ลูก - lûuk - ‘child’. A general and neutral way to address people is by using the words พี่ - phî - ‘older brother or sis-

ter’ and น้อง - nóong - ‘younger brother or sister’. Relatively elder people are addressed as อา - aa - ‘younger brother or sister of father’, น้า - náa - ‘younger brother or sister of mother’, ลุง - lung - ‘older brother of father or mother’ of ป้า - pãa - ‘older sister of father or mother’.

The ways in which Jintana Chakraphet (Joy) could be addressed, (if one knew her first name) would be as follows:

in the birth register	by vague acquaintances (younger than she)	by acquaintances (older than she)	by acquaintances	by friends and family
น.ส. จินตนา จักรเพชร	คุณ จินตนา (คุณ จ้อย)	คุณ จ้อย (คุณ จินตนา)	จินตนา, จ้อย	จ้อย

น.ส. stands for: นางสาว - naangsăaw - ‘miss’. The forms of address in parentheses would be less frequently used alternatives.

One’s surname is used a lot less in Thailand than in Western countries. In all kinds of directories, people are alphabetically arranged according to their first name. Even close friends are sometimes not even sure of each other’s surname. Some families, though, regard their surname in high esteem. A family name can be old or famous, and sometimes indicates that one has royal blood running through one’s veins. Sometimes, a new surname is chosen as a sign of the fact that one has broken with his past or family. A surname can also be changed to change one’s luck in life. Given names are changed even more often.

A nickname can be changed in accordance with one’s profession. Many guides and other people working in the tourism industry are no longer called Narong, Saowalak, Preecha or Siriporn, but David, Suzy, Ken and Charlie.

There are countless manners to transcribe Thai names in Latin script. In Thailand most people transcribe their language, and also their name, according to their own insights and tastes. Although the Royal Council for Language (ราชบัณฑิตยสถาน - râatchábandittàjásàthăan) advises in matters of transcription, the average Thai doesn’t care about that. In this course every name will be transcribed according to our transcription system. In the translations, names are Latinized in recognizable ways. The girl’s nickname ‘จ้อย’ (côj), for instance, will be transcribed in the way most girls who bear that nickname, or as ‘Joy’ would transcribe it. The same is valid for the boy’s name ‘สุรศักดิ์’ (sùrásàk), which would be transcribed as ‘Surasak’.

## Vocabulary

chûe	ชื่อ	name
chûe lèn	ชื่อเล่น	nickname
chûe cing	ชื่อจริง	real (given) name
naam sàkun	นามสกุล	surname
naangsăaw	นางสาว	miss (abbreviated: น.ส.)

cd 1a  
track 9

## Some examples of nicknames and their literal meaning:

suěa	เสือ	tiger
côj *	จ้อย	1. talkative; 2. small, tiny
nóoj	น้อย	small, little; few
dɛɛng	แดง	red
bŭm	บุ๋ม	dimpled, dented
kêɛw	แก้ว	glass, crystal, gemlike
kòp	กบ	frog
mǐ	หมี	bear

Some nicknames are typically given to boys, like เสือ (sŭea), some are typical for women, like จ้อย (côj). Names such as น้อย (nóoj) and แดง (dɛɛng) can be used by both men and women.

Some examples of nicknames which are not originally Thai are:

ceenii	เจนี่	Janie, Jane
ben	เบนซ์	Benz (from Mercedes)
níkkŭ	นิกกี้	Nikki, Nicky
beut	เบิร์ด	Bird

### 3.3 Idioms, polite gestures, greetings

There are several ways in which you can greet, or introduce yourself to a person in Thailand. Your choice of words and your body language during the greeting are important in order to establish your status with regard to the other person. First of all, there is the (ไหว้ - wâj). A person who makes a wâj brings the palms of his hands together and rises them above his head, his forehead, his nose-bridge, under his chin or in front of his chest. The higher he raises both his hands, the more respectful is the greeting. If one brings a 'wâj' with the hands above the head or at forehead-level, one sometimes goes down on one's knees, inclines the upper body deeply forward and reaches the hands amply above the head. The gesture of the 'wâj' is not only a greeting, but also a gesture of respect. The aforementioned deep 'wâj'-s you'll often see on Thai television, used during visits by politicians, high military personnel, and common people towards members of the Royal Family. Probably, you'll never meet a member of the Royal Family as most Thais never will. But there is a likely chance that you'll meet a politician or a general. These people are treated with not nearly as much awe as the King or the Crown Prince, but it will do no harm to practice the 'high wâj' for a bit. You keep your body up straight, your elbows against the sides of your chest, and you bring your hands, with palms and fingers pressed together, up to your face, the ends of your thumbs touching your brow, so that your fingers reach a point a little higher than the top of your head. Then, you bring your upper

body slowly forward, and bow your head. You've just made a 'high wâj'. Lower 'wâj'-s are made in a similar manner, but with the hands lower and less bowing of the head and less lowering of the upper body. The fingertips can reach the level of the eyebrows, the nose bridge, the nose point, the lips, the chin, and the neck. The lowest 'wâj' is made with the hands at chest level. The higher the status of the person you 'wâj', the higher your hands reach and the deeper you bow.

You don't 'wâj' everybody. 'Wâj'-ing to high or to often, or 'wâj'-ing the wrong people can be seen as an insult. The people you 'wâj' may think you're playing a game with them or that you're being sarcastic. You don't 'wâj' servants, cashiers or children; and certainly not beggars; Those people have already a difficult life as it is. 'Wâj'-ing someone who is younger than you can shorten that person's life, they say. It is something completely different when you answer a 'wâj' of a younger person with your own. Someone who 'wâj's you first, 'wâj's you high. Your return 'wâj' will be lower (there are of course exceptions; when you didn't see a person of high status coming towards you, and he 'wâj's you suddenly, your 'wâj' should be a 'wâj' of the appropriate level). Some people, such as the King, never 'wâj', and neither do monks. If a child 'wâj's you, you don't 'wâj' back. A smile will do as an answer. Might it ever come so far that you're being arrested, please feel free to 'wâj' every police officer you meet in the process, even the lowest cop. Your 'wâj' hardly has any influence on your punishment, but a policeman softened with a polite 'wâj' might be more easily inclined to buy a few soft drinks or snacks for you while you're in custody.

The 'wâj' can, but doesn't necessarily have to, be accompanied by a spoken greeting. When a greeting is exchanged, this will mostly be 'สวัสดีค่ะ / ครับ' (sàwàtdii khâ / khráp; 'good day/morning/afternoon; respectively female and male speech'), in some situations followed by คุณ/ท่าน (khun / thân), and the name of the person spoken to.

The polite particles ค่ะ, (khâ - female speech, affirmative) ครับ (khá - female speech, interrogative) and ครับ (male speech) always come at the end of a sentence, and indicate that one considers the status of the person spoken to is equal to or higher than one's own. The polite particles mentioned above are the three basic varieties of the particle. In colloquial and very polite language there are more. Note that women may use two standard polite particles, which only differ from each other in tone; an affirmative one with a (short) falling tone, and an interrogative one with a high tone. The male polite particle always has a high tone. Also note that the use of the polite particle is not dependent on the fact whether you speak to a man or to a woman; it is dependent on your own sex. If you're a man, you use ครับ (khráp). If you're a woman, you use ค่ะ (khâ) in affirmative sentences, and ครับ (khá) in interrogative sentences. In the early stages of your study, you might find it easy to use these particles to everybody you meet – except children, beggars, and servants. In the end, your experience will teach you to whom to be polite and to whom politeness is an unnecessarily extended favor.

Attention: The particles ค่ะ (khâ) and ครับ (khráp) can also be used as an affirmative answer on a question: They can be used for the word 'Yes'.

### 3.4 The verb ‘to be’

The Thai language has more than just one word for the verb ‘to be’. In most dictionaries, you’ll find four translations for the Thai verb ‘to be’. These are **เป็น** (pen), **อยู่** (jùu), **คือ** (khue) and **ใช่** (châj). These words are used as translations for the English verb ‘to be’ in different circumstances.

The verb **‘เป็น’** (pen) is the translation for ‘to be’ if talking about static, or certain facts. The verb **‘เป็น’** (pen) used in the description of objects, persons, situations and the like. **‘เป็น’** (pen) can also mean ‘to exist’, ‘to be alive’ or ‘to become’. Moreover, **เป็น** (pen) can be used to describe functions or professions (**‘เขา เป็น ทหาร’** - khăw pen tháháan - ‘he is a soldier’), types of people, or things (**‘เป็น คน จน’** - pen khon con - ‘to be a poor person’, ‘to be poor’), and situations (**‘เป็น ปัญหา’** - pen panháa - ‘(it) is a problem’).

The verb **‘เป็น’** (pen) also means: ‘to suffer from an illness’. The sentence **‘เขา เป็น หวัด’** – khăw pen wát means: ‘he suffers from a cold’; ‘he has a cold’.

**เขา เป็น คน เนเธอร์แลนด์**

khăw pen khon neetheulæen

He is a Dutchman.

**เจนี่ เป็น น้อง ของ ผม**

ceenii pen nóong khöong phôm

(ของ - khöong - ‘of’ (preposition))

Janie is a younger sister of mine.

**เขา เป็น โรค เรื้อน**

khăw pen rûok rúean

(โรค - rûok - ‘disease’; เรื้อน - rúean - ‘leprosy’)

He suffers from leprosy.

The verb **‘อยู่’** (jùu) means ‘to be’ in the sense of: ‘to be present’, ‘to stay’. **อยู่** (jùu) can also indicate a static situation, which can be translated as ‘still’, or ‘to be busy doing...’:

**เขา อยู่ ที่ ประเทศ อังกฤษ**

khăw jùu thîi pràthêet<sup>6</sup> anngkrit

He is in England; He’s staying in England

**เขา ทำงาน อยู่**

khăw thamngaan jùu

He is (busy) working.

The verb **‘คือ’** (khue) means ‘to be’ in the sense of ‘namely’; ‘the fact is that’. The verb **คือ** (khue) indicates a certainty; a definition:

**นี่ คือ บ้าน**

nîi khue bâan

This is a house.

<sup>6</sup> ประเทศ - pràthêet- ‘country’, ‘state’. Is usually placed before the name of the country, but is often omitted in speech. Another word for ‘country’ is **‘เมือง’** - mueang, which can also mean ‘city’.

The meaning of the verb **คือ** (khue) overlaps **เป็น** (pen) in several situations. **คือ** (khue) is usually used in definitions and declarations. **คือ** often determines a fact over which no discussion is possible, and classifies stricter than **เป็น**. The sentence **‘นี่ คือ อาชญากรรม’** (nî hue àatcháaakam) - ‘This is (a) crime’ is somewhat stronger than **‘นี่ เป็น อาชญากรรม’** (nî pen àatcháaakam), and more determined as a statement than **‘นี่ อาชญากรรม’** (nî àatcháaakam). In many cases, the difference between **คือ** (khue) and **เป็น** (pen) is a matter of sense or feeling. Furthermore, the verb **‘คือ’** is often used as a stopgap in case of uncertainty: (**‘คือ...’** - ‘I don’t know’; ‘Er...’; ‘Eh...’). In many cases, the difference between the verbs **‘คือ’** (khue) and **‘เป็น’** (pen) are erasable.

Remember: The verbs **‘คือ’** (khue) and **‘เป็น’** (pen) don’t occur in negative sentences. Both these verbs are both negated with **‘ไม่ใช่’** (mâj châj); and not with: **\*ไม่ใช่ คือ** (\*mâj hue) or **\*ไม่เป็น** (\*mâj pen).

But there are a few exceptions in the negation of the verb **‘เป็น’** (pen), **‘ไม่ใช่’** (mâj châj) may be used, but **‘ไม่เป็น’** (mâj pen) is a correct negation in some idiomatic phrases (**ไม่เป็น ปัญหา** - mâj pen panháa - ‘it’s no problem’; **ไม่เป็นไร** - mâj pen raj - ‘it doesn’t matter’.)

Normally, the verbs **เป็น** (pen), **คือ** (khue) and **ใช่** (châj) are negated with the phrase **ไม่ใช่** (mâj châj):

‘นั่น เป็น แมว ไหม’	nân pen mɛɛw mǎj	ไม่ใช่ (นั่น ไม่ใช่ แมว)	mâj châj (nân mâj châj mɛɛw)
‘นั่น คือ แมว ไหม’	nân hue mɛɛw mǎj	ไม่ใช่ (นั่น ไม่ใช่ แมว)	mâj châj (nân mâj châj mɛɛw)
‘นั่น แมว ใช่ ไหม’	nân mɛɛw châj mǎj	ไม่ใช่ (นั่น ไม่ใช่ แมว)	mâj châj (nân mâj châj mɛɛw)

The first two question sentences mean: ‘Is that a cat?’, the third one means: ‘That is a cat, isn’t it?’ The answers are all: ‘no (that is not a cat)’.

The verb **ใช่** (châj) means ‘to be’ in the sense of: ‘it is so’, ‘it is’. In many cases this word can be translated with ‘yes’:

<b>นี่ คือ แมว ใช่ ไหม</b>	
nî hue mɛɛw châj mǎj	This is a cat, isn’t it?
<b>ใช่</b>	
châj	It is (yes)

In many situations, it is the Thai equivalent for ‘yes’ as a confirmative answer to questions. Situations in which **ใช่** is used as our verb ‘to be’ are rather scarce, and often idiomatic.

**นี่ ใช่ หรือ** (nî châj rûe) - ‘this is it, isn’t it?’ is an example of the use of the verb **ใช่** (châj) which is coherent with the use of such a verb in English. There is still another ‘translation’ of the verb ‘to be’, and that is: to not translate it.

Especially in common oral language and simple statements, the verb ‘to be’ is omitted:

นี่ แมว	nî mɛɛw	‘This is a cat’
มัน แดง	man dɛɛng	‘It is red’

This phenomenon is also common in other languages of Southeast Asia. Linguists who study these languages consider all Thai nouns and adjectives as verbs: ‘Stative’ or ‘static’ verbs. In linguistics, a static verb is a verb of which no imperative can be formed. According to this theory the noun ‘แมว’ (mɛɛw) means either ‘cat’ or ‘to be a cat’. The adjective ‘แดง’ (dɛɛng) would mean either ‘red’ or ‘to be red’.

In the following sentence:

‘นั่น แมว’	nân mɛɛw	‘that (is a) cat’
------------	----------	-------------------

The noun ‘แมว’ (mɛɛw - ‘cat’; ‘to be a cat’) thus carries the verb ‘to be’ with it.

In the following sentence:

แมว นั่น แดง	mɛɛw nân dɛɛng	‘That cat is red’
--------------	----------------	-------------------

The adjective ‘แดง’ (dɛɛng - red; to be red) thus carries the verb ‘to be’ with it.

### 3.5 Exercises

a. Translate into English:

1. nî khue cintànaa
2. khǎw pen khon thaj
3. sàwàtdii khráp
4. phǒm chûe peeteu
5. khǎw aajú jû sîp èt pii
6. nî khue sùrásàk chákráphét
7. khǎw pen wítsàwákoon
8. kanjaa pen khon ráp cháj

b. Translate into Thai. Use the transcription script.

1. Jintana is a student.
2. Surasak is 24 years old.
3. Mr. Wolf works in Thailand.
4. Kanya is 19 years old.
5. Surasak just graduated.
6. Good afternoon, my name is Peter Wolf.
7. Everyone calls me Peter.
8. I am an Australian.

c. Learn all new words in this lesson by heart. Repeat the words from the previous lessons.

d. Arrange the following sentences into the right order :

1. woof phǒm khráp peeteu chûe sàwàtdii
2. còp phǒm máhăawítthájaalaj phûeng
3. pen ðichăn khon neetheuleen
4. pen ráp phǒm cháj khon
5. ðichăn sùeksăa nák pen
6. mǎj chûe cintànaa khun
7. phûut dâj thaj khăw
8. côi khue lên chûe khăw

e. Translate into Thai. Use the transcription script:

1. Mr. Wolf is a Dutchman.
2. He works in Thailand.
3. Jintana is a student.
4. Surasak is an engineer.
5. That is a crime!
6. He speaks a little Thai.

f. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative:

1. khăw pen wát
2. nân phûu jǐng sǔaj
3. phǒm paj thamngaan
4. nî khue mæew
5. khun pen khon thaj

### 3.6 Answers to the exercises

a. Translation into English:

1. This is Jintana.
2. He/She is a Thai.
3. Good day. (man speaking)
4. My name is Peter.
5. He/She is twenty-one years old.
6. This is Surasak Chakraphet
7. He is an engineer.
8. Kanya is a servant.

b. Translation into Thai (in transcription script):

1. cintànaa pen nák sùeksăa
2. sùrásàk aajú jî sîp sîi pii
3. khun woof (a Thai would say: 'khun peeteu') thamngaan thîi mueang thaj
4. kanjaa aajú sîp kâw pii
5. sùrásàk phûeng còp máhăawítthájaalaj



6. sàwàtdii khráp phǒm chûe peeteu woof
  7. thúk khon ríak phǒm wâa peeteu
  8. phǒm pen khon òtsàtreelia
- d. 1. sàwàtdii khráp phǒm chûe peeteu woof
2. phǒm phûeng còp máhăawítthájaalaj
  3. dìchăn pen khon neetheuleen
  4. phǒm pen khon ráp cháj
  5. dìchăn pen nák sùeksăa
  6. khun chûe cintànaa mǎj
  7. khăw phûut thaj dǎj
  8. chûe lèn khăw khue còj
- e. 1. khun woof pen khon neetheuleen  
(คุณ วอล์ฟ เป็น คน เนเธอร์แลนด์)
2. khăw tham-ngaan thîi pràtêet thaj  
(เขาทำงานที่ประเทศไทย)
  3. cintànaa pen nâksùeksăa  
(จินตนาเป็นนักศึกษา)
  4. sùrásàk pen wítsàwákoon  
สุรศักดิ์ เป็น วิศวกร
  5. nân khue àatchájaakam  
นั่น คือ อาชญากรรม
  6. khăw phûut thaj dǎj nítnòoj  
เขา พูด ไทย ได้ นิด หน่อย

f. Interrogative:

1. khăw pen wàt mǎj
2. nân phûu jǐng sǎaj mǎj
3. phǒm paj thamngaan mǎj
4. nî khue mǎew mǎj
5. khun pen khon thaj mǎj

Negative:

1. khăw mǎj pen wàt
2. nân phûu jǐng mǎj sǎaj
3. phǒm mǎj paj thamngaan
4. nî mǎj chǎj mǎew
5. khun mǎj chǎj khon thaj



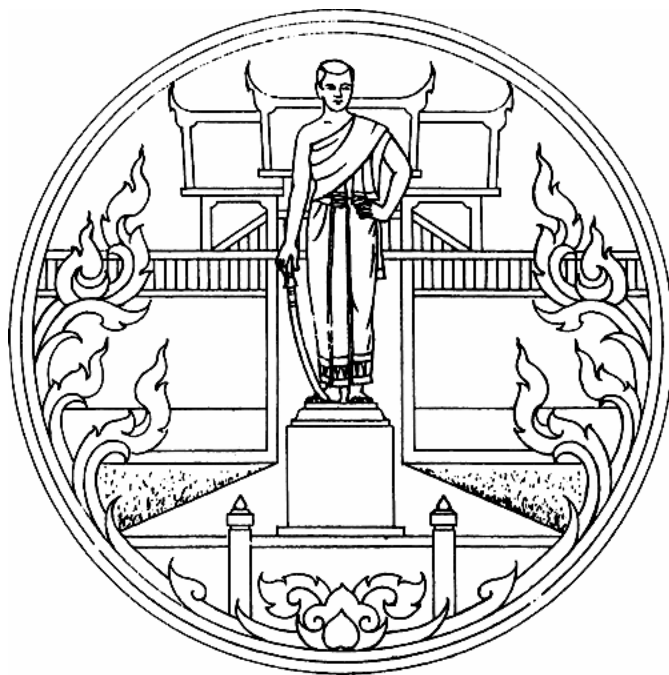
# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 4

### Two friends

เพื่อน ผู้หญิง สอง คน

- 4.1 Introduction
- 4.2 Dialogue
- 4.3 The tones 1: the mid tone and the low tone
- 4.4 Grammar and idioms
- 4.5 Exercises
- 4.6 Answers to exercise 1





## 4.1 Introduction

In order to teach you how to speak – and later how to read – Thai in a natural manner, every lesson will from now on start with a text in the form of a dialogue, accompanied by a description of setting and situation. The dialogues are written in the language that the average Thai uses every day: spoken language. The spoken language, which you will learn in this course, is the language as spoken in Bangkok, which is understood all over the country. Here and there you will be made acquainted with a word originating from another dialect, but which will be recognized and understood by every Thai.

The dialogue will first be given in Thai script. During the start of your study, this will be of little use to you, but you will learn how to read very rapidly, and rereading the first dialogues of the course in Thai script will be an excellent exercise for when you have become more advanced. Please try to direct your attention not only to the transcribed texts, but also to the original Thai. Although it is possible to learn a little Thai without learning to read and write, it is of the greatest importance to be able to write the script well and read it fluently if you really want to learn the language well. Try to recognize letters and words by using the lists of consonants and vowels, and the reference diagram for the tone rules given in lesson 1. From lesson 7 on, when you'll have built up a basic vocabulary and know the basic principles of Thai grammar, you'll begin to learn to read and write Thai properly. When you've studied lesson 12, you'll be able to read not too difficult Thai texts (with the help of vocabulary lists, of course) rather fluently.

Men and women in Thailand have a slightly different vocabulary and they use their language differently from each other; not only through their use of different personal pronouns and polite particles, but also in their general manner of speech. Timbre and intonation, the rhythm of speech and the use of vocabulary are distinctly different between the sexes. You will see that, in the first lessons, women will play the lion's share of the roles in the dialogues. This method has been chosen because women are often more meticulous in their speech, and generally pronounce the tone of a word more clearly. For the gentlemen among you, it is therefore better to initially adjust your hearing to women's voices and a female pronunciation, before you start practicing your male Thai language usage. Later in the course, there will be enough male roles in the dialogues to help you perfect your male pronunciation.

If you have a Thai partner, you'll undoubtedly take over figures of speech, turns of phrase and expressions from him or her. Remember though, that boys and girls speak rather differently in almost all matters and situations. Keep this in mind, if you don't want people to inadvertently hold you for a 'kàtheuj'<sup>7</sup>.

Furthermore, in Thailand there exist - like everywhere else in the world - differences between the speech of the highly educated and the less highly educated. There is political, military and scientific jargon, teenage language, argot and slang. There is true language, false language and the language of Buddhism. Elderly people sometimes still speak the Thai of the forties or fifties, which is, among other features, characterized by a series of archaic personal pronouns.

Generally, Thai people use more sayings and idiomatic expressions in their language than Westerners. You will thus be duly introduced to all kinds of idioms and proverbs. Also of importance is a vocabulary of special words which are only used in reference to the King and the Royal House: 'râatchásàp'. You shall have to learn this vocabulary well enough to be able to understand news items about the Royal Family on radio and television, and to take part in conversation when you have an audience with the King.

<sup>7</sup> *kàtheuj* (กะเทย): transvestite or transsexual. In Thailand, transsexuality is not frowned upon like in the West. Sex change surgery stands on a very high level in Thailand, and *kàtheuj* are actually found in all professions and all social strata. In speech, *kàtheuj* always use the language characteristics of their new sex.

cd 1a

## 4.2 Dialogue

track 10

Two friends.

๔.๒.บท สนทนา

เพื่อน ผู้หญิง สอง คน



[“เพื่อน ผู้หญิง สอง คน”]

สอง สาว จ้อย กับ นิกกี้ มี อายุ ยี่สิบเอ็ด ปี เขา ทั้ง สอง เป็น นิสิต ที่ จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย จ้อย เรียน ภาษา อังกฤษ และ ภาษา ฝรั่งเศส อยู่ ที่ คณะ มนุษยศาสตร์ ส่วน นิกกี้ เป็น นิสิต คณะ เศรษฐศาสตร์ หลังจาก เขา พัง บรรยาย วิชา ที่ เรียน จบ แล้ว จ้อย กับ นิกกี้ ก็ พบ กัน ที่ ร้าน กาแฟ ข้าง หน้า มหาวิทยาลัย ...

(นิกกี้ เข้า มา ใน ร้าน ใน ขณะที่ จ้อย กำลัง นั่ง ตีม ไอเลียง อยู่)

จ้อย: (โบก มือ) เฮ้ย นิกกี้ ฉัน อยู่ ที่ นี้

นิกกี้: เอ้า จ้อย มา นาน แล้ว หรือ

จ้อย: ฉัน มา เมื่อ ก็ นี้ เอง นิกกี้ อยาก ตีม อะไร มั้ย

นิกกี้: (พูด กับ เด็ก เสิร์ฟ) เอา แพนด้า แดง ขวด หนึ่ง นะ น้อง

จ้อย: นิกกี้ เธอ ไม่ สบาย หรือ เปล่า ทำไม หน้า แดง แดง

นิกกี้: หน้า แดง หรือ คง เป็น เพราะ อากาศ ร้อน มั้ หิว น้ำ จัง

จ้อย: ใช่ วัน นี้ อากาศ ร้อน มาก คิน นี้ ว่าง มั้ มี นิด กับ ใคร หรือ เปล่า

นิกกี้: ฉัน ว่าง จะ ไป เทียว กัน ไหม

จ้อย: ฉัน ก็ ว่าง เหมือน กัน จัง ไป เทียว กัน ดี กว่า

## Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 4.2.

[phûean phûuǰing sǝong \*khon .]

[Friend woman/girl two \*person (classifier)]

sǝong sǎaw cǝj kǎp níkkû mii aajú jû sǝp èt pii . khǎw thǎng sǝong pen >

Joy with/and Nikki two girl (young woman) have age 21 year . He/she all two (both) to-be >

nísit thû cùlaalongkoon máhǎawíthájaalaj . cǝj rian phaasǎa angkrít lé? phaasǎa fàràngsèet >  
student at Chulalongkorn University. Joy learn language English and language French >

jùu thû kháná? mánútsàat . sùan níkkû pen nísit kháná? sèetthàsàat . lǎng càak >

To-stay/busy-to-do at/in faculty humanities. Part/as-to Nikki to-be student faculty economy. After from (after) >

khǎw fang banjaaj wíchaa thû rian cǝp léew . cǝj kǎp níkkû kô phóp kan thû >

he/she to-hear lecture subject which/that to-learn to-finish already, Joy and/with Nikki also/rather to-meet each-other at/in >

rǎan kaafée khâang nǎa máhǎawíthájaalaj ...

Shop coffee (café) side front university ...

(níkkû khǎw maa naj rǎan . naj kháná thû cǝj \*kamlang nǎng dùem ọọliang jùu.)

(Nikki to-enter to-come in shop, in moment that/which Joy \*situation-particle to-drink sweet-ice-coffee to-stay/busy-to-do. )

cǝj: (bòok mue) héuj níkkû . chǎn jùu thû nû .

Joy: (to-wave hand) hey Nikki. I to-stay here.

níkkû: ǎw . cǝj maa naan léew \*rǎe .

Nikki: Aha! Joy to-come long (time) already \*question particle.

cǝj: chǎn maa mûea kû ní eeng . níkkû jàak dùem àraj \*mǎj .

Joy: I to-come just-now only/self. Nikki to-want to-drink something \*question particle.

níkkû: (phûut kǎp dèk seuf ) aw fǝntǎa dǝeng khùat nùeng \*ná nóong .

Nikki: (towards (to) child to-serve) to-take Fanta red bottle one \*emphasis particle. younger brother/sister.

cǝj: níkkû . theu mǎj sǎbaaj rǎe plǎaw . thammaj nǎa dǝeng dǝeng .

Joy: Nikki, you not/no comfortable or no. Why face red red.

níkkû: nǎa dǝeng rǎe . khong pen phró? aakàat rón \*máng . hǎw náam cang .

Nikki: Face red [question particle]. Probably to-be because weather warm \*anticipation part. Hungry/thirsty water really.

cǝj: chǎj . wan ní aakàat rón mǎak . khuen ní wǎang mǎj . mii nát kǎp kraj rǎe plǎaw .

Joy: Yes. Day this weather warm much. Night/evening this to-shall free (not busy)[question part.]. Have appointment with someone/who or no/not.

níkkû: chǎn wāang . cà paj thîaw kan \*mǎj .

Nikki: *I free (not busy). To-shall to-go to-go-out each-other/together \*question part..*

côj: chǎn kô wāang mǎean kan . ngán paj thîaw kan dii \*kwaa .

Joy: *I also/rather free (not busy) same each-other/together. So/Thus to-go to-go-out together/each-other good [\*comparative part.].*

cd 1a Vocabulary  
track 11



สาว

บท สนทนา

bòt sǒnthanaa

dialogue (in a lesson, in a play)

กับ

kàp

1. with; 2. and

สอง

sǒong

two

สาว

sǎaw

girl, young woman

มี

mii

1. to have; 2. to be present

อายุ

aajú

age

ยี่สิบเอ็ด

jû sîp èt

twenty-one

ปี

pîi

year

เขา

khǎw

1. he; 2. she (3<sup>rd</sup> person singular)

ทั้ง

tháng

1. all; 2. complete(ly), the whole

ทั้งสอง

tháng sǒong

both; 'all two'

เป็น

pen

1. to be; 2. to can, to be able to

นิสิต

nísit

student (at Chulalongkorn University)

ที่

thîi

1. in, at; 2. place

จุฬาลงกรณ์

cùlaalongkoon

Chulalongkorn

มหาวิทยาลัย

máhǎawitthájalaj

university

เรียน

rian

learn, study

ภาษา

phaasǎa

language

อังกฤษ

angkrít

English

และ

lé?

and

ฝรั่งเศส

fàràngsèet

French

อยู่

jùu

1. to dwell, to be (at), to stay; 2. to exist, to remain; 3. to be alive; 4. particle to indicate continuous action



เรียน

คณะ

kháná?

1. faculty; 2. faction, group

มนุษยศาสตร์

mánútsàjàsàat

humanities (also: mánútsàat - see





ฟัง



กาแฟ



ดื่ม



โบกมือ

ส่วน	suan
เศรษฐศาสตร์	sèetthàsàat
หลังจาก	lǎng càak
ฟัง	fang
บรรยาย	banjaaj
วิชา	wíchaa
จบ	còp
แล้ว	léew
ก็	kô, kôo
พบ	phóp
กัน	kan
ร้าน	ráan
กาแฟ	kaafee
ข้าง	khâang
ข้างหน้า	khâang nâa
เข้า	khâw
มา	maa
ใน	naj
ขณะ	khàná, khàná?
ในขณะที่	naj khàná thîi
กำลัง	kamlang
ดื่ม	dùem
โอเลี้ยง	oólíang
โบกมือ	bòok mue
เฮ้ย	héuj
ฉัน	chǎn
ที่นี่	thîi nîi
เอ้า	âw
นาน	naan
หรือ	rûe
เมื่อ กี่ นี้	mûea kîi nîi

dialogue)

1. as for, as to...; 2. part

economy

after

to listen, to hear

1. speech; lecture

(school) subject

to finish, finished

1. already; 2. further, next

also, likewise, as well

to meet

reciprocal particle: each other, together

store, shop

coffee

1. side; 2. faction; 3. one of a pair

1. front side; 2. in front

to enter

to come

in, inside, within

moment

while

situation particle; 'busy to do ...'

to drink

iced coffee with sugar, no milk

to wave (wave hand)

hey

I (informal)

here

aha!; ah!; hey! (expresses surprise)

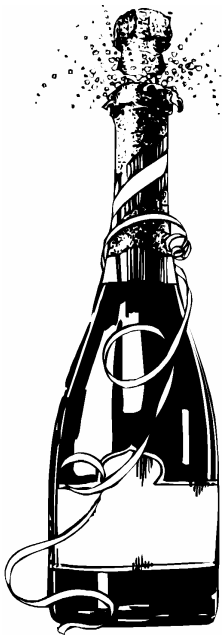
long (in time expressions)

1. or; 2. question particle for yes/no questions

just now



เด็ก



ขวด



หน้า

เอง	eeng	1. only, just; 2. self
อยาก	jàak	to want
อะไร	àraj	1. something; 2. what?
มัย	máj	informal question particle for general questions (compare: ไหม)
พูด	phûut	to speak, to talk, to say
เด็ก	dèk	child
เด็ก เสิร์ฟ	dèk seuf	teenager who serves in a restaurant
เอา	aw	1. to take; 2. to want
แฟนต้า	fɛɛntâa	Fanta
แดง	dɛɛng	red
ขวด	khùat	bottle
หนึ่ง	nùeng	one
นะ	ná, ná?	emphasis particle: 'yes?', 'all right?', 'O.K.'
น้อง	nóong	1. younger brother or sister; 2. form of address to people younger than the speaker
เธอ	theu	1. you (informal); 2. she (3 <sup>rd</sup> pers. singular, mainly for women)
ไม่	mâj	no, not
สบาย	sàbaaj	1. comfortable, cozy; 2. happy, relaxed; 3. healthy
หรือ เปล่า	rûe plàaw*	or not (question particle for yes/no questions)
ทำไม	thammaj	why
หน้า	nâa	1. face; 2. front side
คง	khong	1. probably; 2. possibly; 3. may; 4. maybe, perhaps
อากาศ	aakàat	weather
ร้อน	róon	warm, hot
มั้ง (กระมัง)	máng (kràmang)	probably; seemingly
หิว	hîw	to be hungry; to crave (for)
หิว น้ำ	hîw náam (nám)	to be thirsty (to crave for water)
จริง	cang	really, truly; indeed
ใช่	châj	yes



หิว



ไปเที่ยว

วัน	wan	day
นี้	níi	this
วันนี้	wan níi	today
มาก	mâak	1. a lot; 2. many; 3. very
คืน	khuen	evening; night
คืนนี้	khuen níi	this evening; tonight
จะ	cà, cà?	1. shall, will; 2. particle for future tense
ว่าง	wâang	1. free; not busy; 2. vacant, unoccupied; 3.; idle, free; 5. empty appointment
นัด	nát	
ใคร	khraj	1. who (interrogative pronoun); 2. someone
ไป	paj	1. to go; 2. to
ไปเที่ยว	paj thíaw	1. to go out; 2. to travel; 3. to make a trip
ไหม (comp. มั้ย)	mǎj	question particle for a general question
เหมือนกัน	mŭean kan	1. the same; 2. also, too
งั้น	ngán	then, in that case (abbreviation of อย่างนั้น - jàang nán, ชั่งงั้น-jang-ngán)
กัน	kan	1. together, each other; 2. particle of reciprocity
ดีกว่า	dii kwàa	better (good + particle for comparative degree)

## Translation dialogue 4.2.

[Two friends]

Joy and Nikki are two twenty-one year old girls. Both of them are students at the Chulalongkorn University. Joy studies English and French at the faculty of Humanities. As for Nikki, she is a student at the Faculty of Economics. After they have followed the lectures of their subjects, Joy and Nikki meet each other in a coffee bar. [literally: coffee shop] in front of the University.

(Nikki enters the coffee bar, while Joy is drinking ice coffee)

Joy: (waves her hand) Hey, Nikki! I am here!

Nikki: Ah! Have you been here long already?

Joy: I just came in. Do you want to drink something, Nikki?

Nikki: (speaks to the waitress) I'll have a bottle of red Fanta, please.  
 Joy: Nikki, are you not feeling well or what? Why is your face so red!  
 Nikki: Is my face red? That'll be because the weather is so hot. I'm really thirsty!  
 Joy: Yes, today it is really hot. Are you free tonight? Do you have an appointment with someone or not?  
 Nikki: I am free. Shall we go out together?  
 Joy: I'm free, too. In that case we'd better go out together.

### 4.3 The tones 1: The mid tone and the low tone

Thai is a tonal language. For a native speaker of a non-tonal language it might take you a little while to get used to the notion that tones are morphemes in your new language. But with the help of the CDs, which accompany this course, you will learn the tones quite fast. Furthermore, you should take the effort to listen to your Thai friends and acquaintances when they speak, and try to imitate them as often as possible. Listen to the lessons on the CDs, try to get used to the sound and the tones of the language, and imitate them aloud. In the following exercise you don't have to pay attention to the meaning of the words. Some have no meaning.

#### cd 1a track 12 Tone exercise 1: The mid tone and the low tone

maa - maa	taa - taa	kii - kii
kaa - kaa	cing - cing	pii - pii
ngaa - ngaa	ling - ling	mii - mii
caan - caan	mee - mee	nguu - nguu
klaang - klaang	dii - dii	duu - duu
kuu - kuu	keɛ - keɛ	thɛng - thɛng
ruu - ruu	phɛɛ - phɛɛ	cueng - cueng
fuu - fuu	mɛɛw - mɛɛw	mueng - mueng
puu - puu	mɛɛng - mɛɛng	dueng - dueng
ree - ree	phrɛɛ - phrɛɛ	khuen - khuen
tuen - tuen	cheu - cheu	moo - moo
muen - muen	leuj - leuj	boo - boo
deun - deun	dooj - dooj	oom - oom
keun - keun	to - to	ploom - plom
eu - eu	moo - moo	roong - roong

## 4.4 Grammar and idioms

### Words for ‘and’

The words กับ (kàp) and และ (lé?) can both mean ‘and’. The word กับ (kàp), though, also means ‘with’. กับ (kàp) is used in situations in which two objects or persons are obviously closely linked. และ (lé?) means ‘and’, ‘next’, ‘then’, ‘and after that’, ‘and apart from that’, and is used in situations or persons which do not obviously belong together. In English, a more or less comparable rule is valid in the use of ‘and’ as a conjunction in common phrases connecting things or people that are closely and obviously linked (like: ‘a knife and fork’), whereas in phrases where the link is less obvious, the determiner ‘a’ would be used after ‘and’ (like: ‘a knife and a spoon’). Examples:

จ้อย กับ นิกกี	côj kàp níkkû	Joy and Nikki (two good friends)
ข้าว กับ แกง	khâaw kàp kɛng	Rice and curry (always belongs together)
กาแฟ และ แฟนต้า	kaafɛɛ lé? fɛntâa	Coffee and Fanta (two different drinks)
ไป บ้าน และ ไป หาด	paj bâan lé? paj hàat	To go home and to the beach (first ... and also ...)
ผู้หญิง และ ผู้ชาย	phûujǐng lé? phûuchaaj	Women and Men (apart from each other)
ผู้หญิง กับ ผู้ชาย	phûujǐng kàp phûuchaaj	Women and men (together)

**The word แล้ว (léew)** means, among other things, ‘and’, ‘next’, ‘then’, and ‘eventually’. It is used, just like และ (lé?) to indicate an order of action, often in combination with ก็ (kô, kôo) - ‘rather’, ‘also’, ‘too’, ‘as well as’, ‘then’, ‘next’. The words แล้ว (léew) and และ (lé?) overlap each other in meaning and use.

เขาไป กรุงเทพฯ มา แล้ว กลับ บ้าน khăw paj krungthêep maa <u>léew</u> klàp bâan	<i>she to-go Bangkok to-come next return house</i> She came back from Bangkok <u>and</u> went home.
ขึ้น รถ และ ขึ้น รถไฟ แล้ว ก็ ลง เรือ khûen rót lé? khûen rótfaj <u>léew</u> kô long rûea	<i>to-get-in car and to-get-in train and too to-descend ship</i> By car and by train <u>and also</u> by ship.
ต้อง ใส่ เกลือ น้ำตาล และ พริกไทย tông sàj kluea námtaan <u>lé?</u> phríkthaj	<i>must to-put-in salt sugar and pepper</i> (You) have to put salt, sugar <u>and</u> pepper in it.
เขาใส่ เกลือ น้ำตาล แล้ว ก็ พริกไทย khăw sàj kluea námtaan <u>léew</u> kôo phríkthaj	<i>he to-put salt sugar and then (also) pepper</i> He put in salt and sugar <u>and also</u> pepper.

**The word กัน (kan)** is a particle that indicates reciprocity. You could translate it as ‘together’, ‘each other’ or ‘with each other’. It can also be used to indicate a certain measure of diversity.

เขาไปซื้อของกัน  
khǎw paj sùe khǒong kan

*he/she to-go to-buy thing ‘kan’*  
They are going to buy things together.

เขาพูดกัน  
khǎw phûut kan

*he/she to-speak ‘kan’*  
They talk to each other.

คนมาขอเงินกันมาก  
khon maa khǒo ngeun kan mâak

*people to-come to-ask money ‘kan’ much*  
Many different persons came to ask money.

**Long loan words from foreign languages:** It might have struck you that Thai, for a language that is essentially monosyllabic, has a fair number of long, polysyllabic words. These words, which are mainly loans from the classical languages Pali and Sanskrit, are often academic words and are used in connection with subjects as education, science, religion and politics. Modern loan words are mainly from English. Loan words that might even be considered older than the Pali- and Sanskrit influences, are from Khmer, Mon, Chinese and Malay. As in the short, Thai words, every syllable of the long loan words has its own fixed tone; but in a polysyllabic word, tones around the fixed tone of the syllable have a certain influence on the preceding and following syllable. In Thai words, an unstressed syllable is often pronounced in a mid tone, as we have seen in the example อะไร (‘àraj’ becomes ‘araj’), in which the first syllable, ‘a’, is practically always pronounced in a mid tone, although it should get a low tone according to the tone rules. Examples of polysyllabic loan words from Pali and Sanskrit in this lesson are, for instance:

มหาวิทยาลัย                      mǎhǎawítthàjaalaj                      university  
commonly pronounced as: *mahǎawítthajaalaj*

เศรษฐศาสตร์                      sètthàsàat                      economy  
commonly pronounced as: *sètthasàat*

มนุษยศาสตร์                      mánútsàjàsàat                      humanities  
commonly pronounced as: *manútsajasàat*

Notice the mid tone of the syllable ‘ma’ in the word ‘mahǎawítthajalaj’, which should get a high tone according to the tone rules; the mid tone ‘tha’ in the word ‘sètthàsàat’, which should be a low tone according to the tone rules; the mid tone ‘ma’ in ‘mánútsàjàsàat’, which should get a high tone; and the mid tone syllables ‘saja’ in ‘manútsajasàat’, which should, strictly according to the tone rules, be low tones.

## 4.5 Exercises

1.

Translate into English:

1. níkkî rian thî chùlaalongkoon máhăawítthájaalaj
2. côj mii aajú jî sîp èt pii
3. níkkî mâj sàbaaj mǎj khráp
4. sàwàtdii khâ côj jàak dùem àraj mǎj
5. khuen níu theu wâang mǎj
6. cà paj thîaw kan mǎj
7. theu jàak dùem àraj rǔe plàaw

2.

Seek at least ten words from the Thai version of lesson 4.2. that you can read with the assistance of the explanation of the Thai alphabet in lesson 1. Identify all letters of the words, and transcribe them in the transcription script. Give reasons why the words are pronounced as you think they are.

## 4.6 Answers to exercise 1

1. Nikki studies (learns) at Chulalongkorn University.
2. Joy is 21 years old.
3. a. Are you not feeling well? (man speaking to Nikki).  
b. Is Nikki not feeling well? (man speaking about Nikki).
4. a. Good morning, afternoon etc. (woman speaking). Would you like something to drink? (speaker to Joy).  
b. Good morning, afternoon etc. (woman speaking). Would Joy like something to drink? (speaker about Joy).
5. Are you free tonight?
6. Shall we go out together?
7. Do you want to drink anything or not??





# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 5

**In the morning at the university**

**ตอนเช้าที่มหาวิทยาลัย**

- 5.1 Introduction
- 5.2 Dialogue1
- 5.3 Dialogue 2
- 5.4 Idioms
- 5.5 The tones 2: The mid tone and the high tone
- 5.6 Grammar
- 5.7 Exercises
- 5.8 Answers to exercise 1





## 5.1 Introduction

In this lesson you'll be further acquainted to Thai life and language through two simple dialogues, introduced with short outlines of their setting in uncomplicated Thai. You'll start to make yourself more and more familiar with the pattern of a Thai sentence. Furthermore, a number of typical idiomatic expressions and descriptions of grammatical features in the Thai language will be offered in this lesson.

The Thai language doesn't hold any basic 'large' grammatical features, such as cases like in Russian or German, or verb conjugations as in French. The 'difficulties' within the Thai language lie for the greater part in quite unsuspected corners, such as in the use of adverbs of time, which are supposed to be placed in a fixed position within a sentence. Without the starting student of Thai knowing, a change of position of a single adverb can change the whole meaning of an expression.

You will also carry on with your tone exercises in this lesson. You'll probably have heard or read somewhere that the correct tone of a word doesn't really matter very much in Thai, as its meaning will always become clear from its context within the sentence, but this is not always the truth<sup>8</sup>. In any case, it is necessary to be able to pronounce your tones correctly if you wish to learn to speak Thai fluently or even understandably. So pay attention to the tone exercises and listen to the dialogues while you read them.

It is also of the utmost importance to learn all words in the vocabulary lists thoroughly. The larger your vocabulary in the first stadium of your study, the more you'll be able to say when you really start communicating with Thai people.

## 5.2 Dialogue 1

### ๕.๒. บทสนทนา ที่ ๑

#### ตอนเช้า ที่ มหาวิทยาลัย

cd 1a  
track 13

In the morning at the University

[ตอนเช้า ที่ มหาวิทยาลัย]

แมว เป็น นัก ศึกษา เขา ไม่ ได้ เรียน มหาวิทยาลัย เดียว กัน กับ จ้อย และ นิกกี แมว เป็น นัก ศึกษา ที่ มหาวิทยาลัย รามคำแหง รามคำแหง เป็น มหาวิทยาลัย เปิด ที่ ใหญ่ มาก และ ทุก คน เข้า มา เรียน ได้ โดย ไม่ ต้อง ผ่าน การ สอบ แค่ มี วุฒิบัตร โรงเรียน มัธยม ก็ พอ แต่ ... ถ้า อยาก จบ ปริญญา มัน ยาก เหมือน กัน ... ดั่ง นั้น คน ไทย มัก พูด ว่า: “รามคำแหง เข้า ง่าย แต่ ออก ยาก”

แมว เป็น “เด็ก ราม ฯ” ได้ สอง ปี กว่า แล้ว และ เขา แน่ใจ ว่า เขา จะ จบ การ ศึกษา ได้

<sup>8</sup> The word ไกล (klâj), for instance, means ‘closeby’, and the word ไกล (klaj) means ‘far away’; The difference in pronunciation lies only in the falling tone of the word klâj and the mid tone of the word klaj.

ตอนเช้า แมวคุยอยู่กับเพื่อน ๆ ที่ศาลา “ร้อยเอ็ด” ในมหาวิทยาลัย (“ร้อยเอ็ด” เป็นชื่อศาลาพักผ่อนสำหรับเด็ก ราม ๆ ที่มาจากจังหวัดร้อยเอ็ดเหมือนแมว)



ผู้ย: เอ้ย แมวอยากกิน ปาท่องโก๋ ไหม ผู้ยมี น้ำชาด้วย เอามั้ย

แมว: ขอบคุณมาก แมวมีน้ำส้มแล้ว

เย็น: แมวยังคบกับสาวตื้อคนนั้นอยู่หรือเปล่า คนที่หน้าตาเหมือนดารานะ

ผู้ย: แล้วสาวลูกครึ่งคนนั้นล่ะ เป็นเพื่อนแมวด้วยใช่ไหม

แมว: อ้อ ใช่ เขาเป็นเพื่อนฉันตั้งแต่สมัยเด็ก ๆ

ผู้ย: พวกเขาเป็นเด็ก ราม ๆ ด้วยหรือเปล่า

แมว: ไม่ใช่ พวกเขาเป็นเด็ก จุฬา ๆ

เย็น: ฮ่าฮ่า รู้มั๊ย เมื่ออาทิตย์ที่แล้ว ทีมฟุตบอลของเราชนะ จุฬา ๆ ทำต่อศูนย์

แมว ผู้ย และเย็น หัวเราะเสียงดัง

### Transcription and word for word translation of 5.2.; dialogue 1

toon cháaw thû máhăawítthájaalaj .

Part (time) morning at/in university.

meew pen nák-sùeksăa . khăw mâj dâj rian máhăawítthájaalaj diaw kan kàp còj lé? níkkû . >

Maew to-be student. She/he no/not<sup>1</sup> can<sup>2</sup> (<sup>1</sup> & <sup>2</sup> here: emphatic negative) learn university same together/each-other with Joy and Nikki. >

meew pen nák sùeksăa thû máhăawítthájaalaj raamkhamhěeng . raamkhamhěeng pen máhăawítthájaalaj >

Maew to-be student at/in university Ramkhamhaeng. Ramkhamhaeng to-be university >

peut thî jàj m̄ak . l̄? thúk khon kh̄aw maa rian d̄aj d̄oj m̄aj t̄ong ph̄aan >  
*open that/which large much/many. And all/every people/person to-enter to-come to-learn to-can by no/not to-must to-pass >*

kaan s̄oop . kh̄e mii wútthib̄at r̄ong-rian >  
*[noun particle] examine apply-for-entry. Only to-have/to-be-present diploma school >*

mátth̄ajom k̄o phoo . t̄e ... th̄a j̄ak c̄op prinj̄aa >  
*secondary-school also/rather enough. But ... if to-want to-finish academic-degree >*

man j̄ak m̄ean-kan . dang-n̄an khon thaj m̄ak ph̄ut w̄a: >  
*It/that difficult also/as-well. Therefore people/person Thai often/like-to speak/say that: >*

‘raamkhamh̄eng kh̄aw nḡaaj . t̄e òk j̄ak’ . m̄ew pen ‘d̄ek raam’ >  
*“Ramkhamhaeng to-enter easy. but to-exit difficult”. Maew to-be “Child Ram(khamhaeng)” >*

d̄aj s̄ong pii kw̄a l̄ew . l̄? kh̄aw n̄e-caj w̄a kh̄aw cà c̄op >  
*[tense indicator] two year more-than already. And she/he to-be-certain (certain-heart) that she/he shall to-finish >*

kaan s̄eks̄a d̄aj .  
*[noun particle] to-study to-can.*

toon cháaw m̄ew khuj j̄u k̄ap ph̄ean-ph̄ean >  
*Part (time) morning Maew to-chat to-be-busy/to-stay with friend [reduplication mark] >*

th̄i s̄aalaa ‘róoj èt’ (‘róoj èt’ pen ch̄ue s̄aalaa phákph̄on s̄amr̄ap d̄ek raam th̄i maa >  
*In/at pavilion ‘Roi Et’ (‘Roi Et’ to-be name pavilion to-rest for child Ram(khamhaeng) which/that to-come >*

c̄aak cangw̄at róoj èt m̄ean m̄ew) .  
*From province Roi Et same/like Maew).*

j̄uj: êuj m̄ew . j̄ak kin paath̄ongk̄o m̄aj . j̄uj mii náam chaa d̄uaj . >  
*Yui: Hey Maew . To-want to-eat ‘patongko’ [question particle]. Yui (I) to-have water tea also. >*

aw m̄aj .  
*To-take/to-want [question particle (shortened)].*

m̄ew: kh̄oap khun m̄ak . m̄ew mii náam s̄om l̄ew .  
*Maew: Thank you (idiom). Maew (I) to-have/to-be-present water orange already.*

jen: m̄ew jang kh̄op k̄ap s̄aw d̄ue khon n̄an j̄u r̄ue pl̄aaw . >  
*Yen: Maew (you) still/yet to-associate with girl self-willed [classifier for persons] that to-stay/still or no/not. >*

khon th̄i n̄a-taa m̄ean daaraa n̄a? .  
*Person (classifier\*) that/which face-eyes (appearance) same/like movie-star [emphatic particle].*

j̄uj: l̄ew s̄aw l̄uuk kh̄r̄ueng khon n̄an l̄a? . pen ph̄ean m̄ew >  
*Yui: And (further) girl child half [classifier for persons] that [emphatic particle]. To-be friend Maew >*

dūaj chāj mǎj .  
also yes [question particle].

mɛɛw: ้อุ chāj . khǎw pen phūean chǎn tǎng-tɛɛ sàmmǎj dèk dèk .  
Maew: Oh, yes. She/he to-be friend I since time/era child [reduplication mark].

júj: phūak khǎw pen dèk raam dūaj rŭe plàaw .  
Yui: Group she/he to-be child Ram(khamhaeng) also or no.

mɛɛw: māj chāj . phūak khǎw pen dèk cùlaa .  
Maew: Not yes (no). Group she/he to-be child Chula(longkorn University).

jen: hāahāa . rúu mǎj . mŭea aathít thŭ lɛɛw thiim fútboon khǒong raw cháná >  
Yen: Haha! To-know [question particle]. When week that/which finished/already team soccer [possessive particle] we/us to-win >

cùlaa hāa tòò sŭun .  
Chula(longkorn) five against zero.

mɛɛw júj lɛ? jen hŭaró? sǎang dang .  
Maew Yui and Yen to-laugh together noise loud.

cd 1a Vocabulary  
track 14

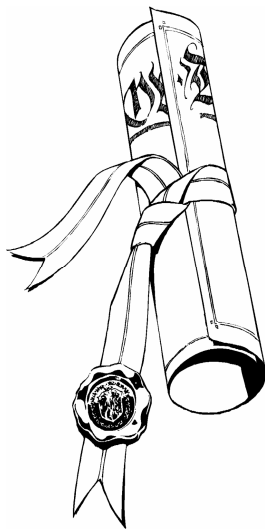


นัก ศึกษา

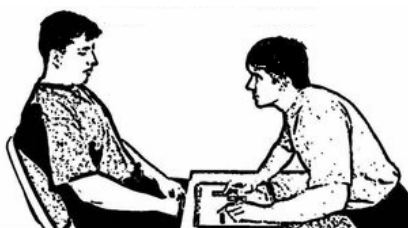
แมว	mɛɛw	cat; here: nickname for a girl: 'Maew'.
เป็น	pen	1. to be; 2. to can
นัก ศึกษา	nák sùeksǎa	student
ไม่ได้	māj dāj	1. cannot; 2. here: 'hasn't'
เดียว กัน	diaw kan	the same, identical, similar
กับ	kàp	with
ของ	khǒong	1. object, good, thing; 2. to belong to, of
รามคำแหง	raamkhamhǎeng	Ramkhamhaeng (University)
เปิด	pèut	1. to open; 2. open
มหาวิทยาลัย เปิด	máhǎawitthájaalaj pèut	open university
ใหญ่	jàj	large, big, great
มาก	māak	1. many, much; 2. very (adverb)
และ	lɛ?	and
ทุก	thúk	every, each
คน	khon	person, man, people



คน



วุฒิบัตร



การ สอบ สมัคร

เข้า	khâw	to enter, to come in, to get into
เรียน	rian	to learn
มา	maa	1. to come; 2. direction-marker for action/movement towards speaker or subject
ได้	dâj	1. to can; 2. particle to indicate an action in the past, or a taken opportunity
โดย	duuj	by, through, by means of
ไม่	mâj	no; not
ต้อง	tông	(to) must
ผ่าน	phàan	pass; <i>here</i> : to pass an exam
การ สอบ	kaan sòop	(entrance) examination
แค่	khêe	1. only; 2. to the extend of; 3. up to
มี	mii	1. to have; 2. to be present; there is..., there are...
วุฒิบัตร	wútthibàt	diploma, certificate
โรงเรียน	roong rian	school
พอ	phoo	1. enough; 2. as soon as
ถ้า	thâa	if, in case
อยาก	jàak	to want; to wish
จบ	còp	to end, to finish; to conclude; to graduate
ปริญญา	pàrinjaa	university degree
มัน	man	it; that
ยาก	jâak	difficult, hard
เหมือน (กัน)	mŭean (kan)	1. the same ( - as: - กับ); 2. also; 3. (เหมือน - to resemble, to be alike)
ดัง	dang	1. like, as; 2. loud; 3. celebrated, famous; 4. to sound (to ring, to break out (of a sound)
ดังนั้น	dang nán	therefore, thence, hence; accordingly, so
มัก	mák	1. often, frequently; 2. likely



ปริญญา



เพื่อน ๆ



การศึกษา

พูด

phûut

1. to speak; 2. to say

ว่า

wâa

1. to say; 2. to scold; 3. conjunction: verbs of speech ('to say', 'to judge' etc.), and verbs like 'to think', 'to suspect' etc. are mostly followed by ว่า.

ง่าย

ngâaj

easy

ออก

òok

1. to exit, to go out; 2. out; 3. to give (out), to issue; 4. to set off, to leave, to start going; 5. to put forth, to vent; 6. to draw, to make out

ช่วง นี้

chûang ní

now, in this time

“เด็ก ราม ๆ”

dèk raam

'Child of Ram(khamhaeng)', student at Ramkhamhaeng Univ.

สอง

sǒong

two

ปี

pîi

year

กว่า

kwàa

1. more (than); 2. particle for the comparative degree

แล้ว

léew

1. already; 2. to come to an end, to be finished, to be over; 3. particle for registration of a certain fact; 4. '(and) afterwards'

เขา

khǎw

he, she (3<sup>rd</sup> person singular; short 3<sup>rd</sup> person plural (for พวกเขา - phûak khǎw)

แน่ใจ

nêe caj

to be certain ('certain heart', 'sure heart')

จบ

còp

to end, to finish; to conclude; to graduate

การศึกษา

kaan sùeksǎa

study; the 'act of studying'

ตอนเช้า

toon cháaw\*

in the morning ('unit of time' + 'morning')

ที่

thîi

1. place; 2. land, soil; 3. space, site; 4. preposition of place: in, on, at

คุย

khuj

to chat

อยู่

jùu

1. to stay, to remain; 2. to be (at, in, on); 3. to live, to dwell, to reside; 4. to exist; 5. to be living; 6. particle to indicate a continuous action

เพื่อน ๆ

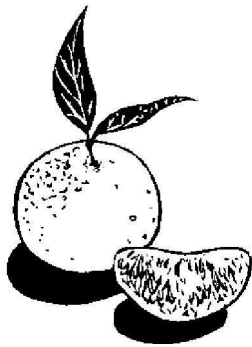
phûean phûean

friends (several different)





พักผ่อน



ส้ม



สาว

ศาลา	sǎalaa	pavilion, kiosk, public (covered) resting place
ร้อย เอ็ด	róoj èt	Roi Et, a city and province in Northeastern Thailand
ใน	naj	1. in, inside; 2. amidst
พักผ่อน	phákphòon	to rest (pronunciation also: <i>phákphòn</i> )
สำหรับ	sǎmràp	for (the benefit of), to
จังหวัด	cangwàt	province
เอ๋ย	êuj; êuj	hey!; here! (exclamation)
อ้วน	júj	round, chubby; <i>Here</i> : nickname of a girl
ปาท่องโก๋	paathôngkǒo	deep-fried dough sticks, eaten as a fast breakfast
ชา	chaa	tea (leaf)
น้ำ	náam* (nám)	water
น้ำ ชา	náam chaa	'tea water'; brewed tea
ด้วย	dûaj	also
เอา	aw	to take
เอา มั้ย	aw máj	do you want ...? (informal; short form of the question particle)
ขอบ คุณ	khòp khun	thank you/thanks
ส้ม	sôm	orange; tangerine
น้ำ ส้ม	náam sôm	orange or tangerine juice
เย็น	jen	cool; <i>Here</i> : nickname of a girl
ยัง	jang	1. still, yet
คบ	khóp	to associate (คบ กับ - khóp kàp: to associate with)
สาว	sǎaw	girl, young woman
ดื้อ	dûe	naughty, self-willed, opinionated
คน	khon	1. person, people; 2. <i>Here</i> : classifier for people
นั้น	nán	that



ดารา



ฟุตบอลล์

เปล่า	plàaw*	1. no; 2. not, nothing; 3. for nothing, in vain; 4. plain, empty, without additions
หน้าตา	nâa taa	appearance, complexion
ดารา	daaraa	movie star, also pop star
นะ	nâ (nâ?)	particle to emphasize the message in a sentence
ลูกครึ่ง	lûuk khrueng	person of mixed blood
ละ	lâ (lâ?)	variation on ละ (lá, lá?); ‘concerning’ ‘(and) as for’
ใช่	châj	yes
ใช่ไหม	châj mǎj	isn’t it?; question particle for a question on which an affirmative answer is expected
อ้อ	öö	Oh...
ฉัน	chǎn	I (informal. Currently mostly used by women, but until the recent past also by men; Still not exclusively a female personal pronoun)
ตั้งแต่	tâng tèe	since
สมัย	sàmmǎj	era, time, period
เด็ก ๆ (เด็ก เด็ก)	dèk dèk	1. children (several); 2. young (of a child)
สมัย เด็ก ๆ	sàmmǎj dèk dèk	childhood, early adolescence
พวกเขา	phûak khǎw	they (plural)
“เด็ก จุฬา ๆ”	dèk cùlaa	‘Child of Chula(longkorn University), student at Chulalongkorn University
ฮาฮา	hâahâa	Haha!
รู้	rúu	to know
รู้ มั้ย	rúu máj	do you know?; have you heard? (informal)
เมื่อ	mûea	1. once, when; 2. at (a certain time)
อาทิตย์	aathít	week
ที่แล้ว	thîi léew	last
ทีม	thiim	team
ฟุตบอลล์	fútboon	soccer
เรา	raw	we, us



ชนะ	cháná?	to win
ห้า	hâa	five
ต่อ	tòo	1. against; 2. per
ศูนย์	sŭun	zero
หัวเราะ	hŭaró?	to laugh
เสียง	sŭang	sound
ชนะ	ดัง	1. loud; 2. to sound; to make sound

## Translation 5.2; dialogue 1

### In the morning at the university

Maew is a student. She doesn't study together with Joy and Nikki at the same university. Maew is a student at Ramkhamhaeng University. Ramkhamhaeng is an open university, which is very large. And everyone can come and study here without having to pass an entrance examination. You need a diploma from secondary school, that's enough. But ... if you want to get an academic degree there, it's just as difficult (as at another university). Thai people often say: 'to enter Ramkhamhaeng is easy, but to get out (graduate) is difficult.' Maew has been a 'Child of Ram' for two years, now. And she is certain that she will finish her study, too. In the morning at the university, Maew chats with her friends in the "Roi-Et"-pavillion ("Roi Et" is a rest-pavillion for 'Children of Ram' who come from Roi Et province, like Maew.

Yui: Here, do you want to eat *Patongkoo*? I've got tea, as well, do you want some?

Maew: Thanks, I've got orange juice already.

Yen: Do you still associate with that naughty girl, or not? The one who looks like a movie star?

Yui: And that mixed blooded girl. She's a friend of yours, too, isn't she?

Maew: Oh, yes. They have been my friends since childhood.

Yui: Are they also 'Children of Ram', or not?

Maew: No, they are 'Children of Chula (they study at Chulalongkorn university).

Yen: Haha. Do you know what? Last week, our soccer team beat Chula 5 to 0.

Maew, Yui and Yen laugh heartily.

cd 1a      **5.3      Dialogue 2**

track 15

“Do you want to buy anything else?”

๕.๓. บทสนทนา ที่ ๒

“อยาก ซื้อ อะไร อีก ไหม”



[“อยาก ซื้อ อะไร อีก ไหม”]

บ่ายวันหนึ่ง แมว กับ จ้อย เจอกัน ที่ หน้า ราม ฯ สาว ทั้ง สอง อยาก ซื้อ เสื้อผ้า ที่ ตลาด หน้า ราม ฯ เพราะ เสื้อผ้า ที่ นั้น ถูก และ ดี นอกจาก สิ่ง ทอ และ เสื้อผ้า ยัง มี หนังสือ สมุด บันทึกร และ อื่น ๆ ขาย ด้วย

แมว: จ้อย อยาก ซื้อ อะไร อีก ไหม

จ้อย: ที่ นี้ มี ร้าน ขาย ยา ไหม

แมว: มี สิ จ้อย เป็น อะไร ไหม

จ้อย: ไม่ เป็นไร ปวด หัว เจ็บ ๆ อยาก ซื้อ ยา แก้ ปวด

แมว: แมว มี แอสไพริน ใน กระเป๋า อยาก กิน ไหม

จ้อย: ไป ซื้อ น้ำ กัน ก่อน ที่ นั้น มี น้ำ อ้อย ขาย

แมว: จ้อย ไม่ เอา น้ำ เปลา หรือ ที่ นี้ มี ขาย

จ้อย: เอา กิน ยา ก่อน ดี กว่า

**Transcription and word-for-word translation of 5.3; dialogue 2**

jàak sùe àraj ìk mǎj

*To-want to-buy what/something more/else [question particle].*

bàaj wan nuèng mǎew kàp còj cêu? kan thî nǎa raam . sǎaw thǎng sǒong jàak >

*Afternoon day one Maew and/with Joy to-meet each-other at/in in-front-of Ram. Girl entire two to-want »*

súe sùea-phâa thî tàlàat nâa raam , phró? sùea-phâa thî nân thùuk lé? dii . nôok-càak >  
*To-buy clothes in/at market opposite Ram, because clothes there cheap and good. Apart-from >*

sǐng thoó lé? sùea-phâa . jang mii nǎngsúe . sàmut banthúek lé? ùen-ùen khǎaj dūaj .  
*textiles and clothes, still/yet to-have/to-be-present book, notebook to-record and other-other to-sell also.*

mɛɛw: cōj . jàak súe àraj ìk mǎj .

*Maew: Joy. To-want to-buy what/something more/again [question particle].*

cōj: thî nî mii ráan khǎaj jaa mǎj .

*Joy: Place this to-have/to-be-present shop to-sell medicine [question particle].*

mɛɛw: mii sî . cōj pen àraj mǎj .

*Maew: To-have/to-be-present [emphatic particle]. Joy (you) to-suffer-from something [question particle].*

cōj: mǎj pen raj . pùat hǔa chǔuj chǔuj . jàak súe jaa kêe pùat .

*Joy: Not to-be something. To-ache head without-any-reason. To-want to-buy medicine to-alleviate pain.*

mɛɛw: mɛɛw mii ɛɛsphajrin naj krǎpǎw . jàak kin mǎj .

*Maew: Maew (I) to-have/to-be-present aspirin in bag. To-want to-eat [question particle].*

cōj: paj súe náam kan kòon . thî nân mii náam ôj khǎaj .

*Joy: To-go/to to-buy water together first. Place that to-have/to-be-present water sugarcane to-sell.*

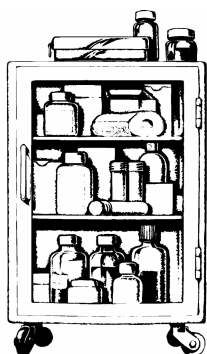
mɛɛw: cōj mǎj aw náam plàaw rǔe . thî nî mii khǎaj .

*Maew: Joy (you) no/not to-take water plain [question particle yes/no questions]. Place this to-have/to-be present to-sell.*

cōj: chǎj . kin jaa kòon dii kwàa .

*Joy: Yes. To-eat medicine first good [particle comparative degree].*

cd 1a Vocabulary  
 track 16

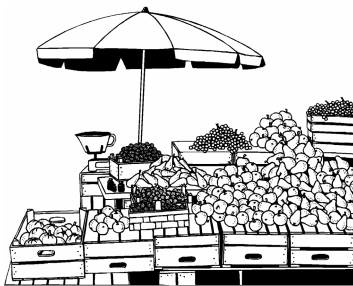


ยา

อยาก	jàak	to want, to desire, to wish
ซื้อ	súe	to buy
อะไร	àraj	1. what; 2. anything (in questions)
อีก	ìk	1. more; 2. again; 3. yet
ร้าน	ráan	shop
เพราะ	phró?	because
บ่าย	bàaj	afternoon
เจอ (เจอ)	cèu? (c <u>eu</u> )	to meet, to encounter
หน้า	nâa	1. face; 2. in front of



เสื้อผ้า



ตลาด



ปวดหัว

หน้า ราม ๆ	nâa raam	the part of Ramkhamhaeng Road in front of the university
ทั้ง สอง	tháng sǒong	both, both of them
เสื้อผ้า	sûea phâa	clothing
ตลาด	tàlàat	market
ถูก	thùuk	1. cheap; 2. correct; 3. particle for the passive voice
ดี	dii	good
ถูก และ ดี	thùuk lé? dii	inexpensive and good
นอกจาก	nôok càak	except; besides; apart from
สิ่ง	sìng	thing (compare with ของ (khǒong) and อย่าง (jàang))
สิ่ง ทอ	sìng thoo	textile
สมุด บันทึกร	sàmut banthúek	notebook
และ อื่น ๆ (อื่นอื่น)	lé? ùen ùen	1. and other things; 2. et cetera
อยาก	jàak	to want
อะไร	àraj	1. what ? (interrogative pronoun) 2. something
อีก	ìik	1. once more; 2. still more; 3. yet; 4. besides
ที่ นี้	thîi nîi	here (literally: place-this)
ขาย	khǎaj	to sell
ยา	jaa	medicine
ร้าน ขาย ยา	ráan khǎaj jaa	pharmacy (shop to-sell medicine)
สิ	sì?, sì	particle to emphasize the previous
เป็น อะไร	pen àraj	to suffer from something (illness)
ไม่เป็นไร	mâj pen raj	it is nothing, it doesn't matter
ปวด	pùat	to be in pain
หัว	hǔa	head
เฉย ๆ (เฉยเฉย)	chěuj chěuj	1. without any reason; 2. just like that; 3. for free; 4. indifferent; 5. idle
ยา แก้ว ปวด	jaa kêe pùat	painkiller, analgesic
แอสไพริน	èesphajrin	aspirin (from English)
กระเป๋า	kràpǎw	bag



กิน	kin	to eat, to consume, to use, to drink
น้ำ	náam (nám)	1. water; 2. juice
กัน	kan	1. together; 2. each other
ก่อน	kòon	1. first; 2. before; 3. earlier
น้ำ อ้อย	náam ôj*	sugarcane juice
ขาย	khăaj	to sell
มี ขาย	mii khăaj	to have for sale; to be available (for sale)
ยา แก้ว	náam plàaw	plain (drinking) water
น้ำเปล่า	châj	yes
ใช่	dii kwàa	better ('good' plus particle comparative degree)
ดีกว่า		

### Translation of dialogue 5.3.

#### Do you want to buy anything else?

One afternoon, Maew and Joy meet each other 'in front of Ram' (the part of thànn [ถนน - 'street'] Ramkhamhaeng that stretches out in front of the university). The two girls want to buy clothes at the market in front of Ramkhamhaeng University, because the clothes there are inexpensive and good. Besides textiles and clothes, there are also books, notebooks and other things for sale.

- Maew: Do you want to buy something else?  
 Joy: Is there a pharmacy around here?  
 Maew: Of course. Is something the matter? (Are you ill?)  
 Joy: It's nothing. I just have a headache. I want to buy a painkiller.  
 Maew: I've got aspirin in my bag. Do you want some?  
 Joy: Let's buy some water (something to drink) first. Over there, there's sugarcane juice for sale.  
 Maew: Don't you want plain water? They have it for sale right here.  
 Joy: I'll take that, I'd better have an aspirin first.

cd 1a  
track 17

## 5.4 Idioms

ซื้อ	súe	to buy, to purchase for money
เอา	aw	to take, for example an order in a restaurant, goods at a market, a drink at a stand
ขอ	khǎo	1. to ask (for); 2. to order (polite)
ขโมย	khamooy*	to steal (ขโมย - khamooy* also means 'thief')

ขาย	khǎaj	to sell (also one's country, one's body)
มี ขาย	mii khǎaj	to be for sale, to have for sale

## cd 1a track 18 5.5 The tones 2: The mid tone and the high tone

(The 'mid' tone is also called the 'level' tone. Don't confuse the 'mid' tone with 'middle class consonants')

In this tone exercise you can listen to the 'mid' or 'level' tone, and to the 'high' tone. Listen carefully to the words and repeat them one by one. The meaning of these words is not important; some have no meaning.

baan	báan	chaang	cháang	phraaw	phráaw
laan	láan	maan	máan	khron	khróon
maa	máa	dooon	dóoon	traa	tráa
lloo	lloo	luem	lúem	daam	dáam
toon	tóon	kin	kín	thiim	thíim
mii	míi	dii	díi	daaj	dáaj
pii	píi	duem	dúem	khraang	khráang

## 5.6 Grammar

### 1. Head nouns

A head noun is used in compounding. Compounding is the joining of two or more words together to form a new word. The first word of the compound is a 'head noun', which may be followed by either one of two 'attributes'; a noun ('noun attribute') or a verb ('verb attribute'). The 'noun attribute' and 'verb attribute' either restricts or qualifies the meaning of the head noun.

Examples of common head nouns and their attributes are:

รถไฟ	rót faj	vehicle + fire	(noun + noun)	train
ห้อง น้ำ	hông náam	room + water	(noun + noun)	bathroom
ทหาร เรือ	tháhǎan ruea	soldier + ship	(noun + noun)	sailor (in the navy)
ที่ดิน	thíi din	place + earth	(noun + noun)	lot, piece of land
เครื่องบิน	khrrûeang bin	machine + to fly	(noun + verb)	airplane
น้ำ ดื่ม	náam dùem	water + to drink	(noun + verb)	drinking water
ร้าน ซัก รีด	ráan sak rít	shop + to wash + to iron (noun + verb + verb)		laundry shop



Some head nouns have a verb *and* an object as attributes. Examples are:

ช่าง ถ่าย รูป	châng thàaj rûup	expert + to photograph + picture	photographer
ยา แก้ ปวด	jaa kêe pùat	medicine + to alleviate + pain	painkiller (medicine)
ร้าน ขาย ของ	râan khăaj khǒong	shop + to sell + thing	shop

Two other important head nouns in Thai are: การ (*kaan*) and ความ (*khwaam*):

- a. การ (*kaan*) means in fact ‘work’, ‘duty’, ‘task’, and is used as a head noun for the formation of nouns with dynamic verbs and with other nouns. As a rough translation of the word ‘การ’ (*kaan*), we can use ‘work of...’, or ‘task of...’ when it is used in combination with a noun, and ‘act of...’ when the head noun is used in combination with a verb:

บ้าน	bâan	house	การ บ้าน	kaan bâan	homework
เมือง	mueang	country	การ เมือง	kaan mueang	politics
ฝีมือ	fii mue	craft	การ ฝีมือ	kaan fii mue	craftsmanship
ทำงาน	thamngaan	to work	การ ทำงาน	kaan thamngaan	the act of working; the work
ตรวจ	truat	to control	การ ตรวจ	kaan truat	the act of controlling; the control
รักษา	râksăa	to keep, to maintain	การ รักษา	kaan râksăa	the keeping; the maintenance
โจมตี	coomtii	to attack	การ โจมตี	kaan coomtii	the act of attacking; the attack

- b. ความ (*khwaam*) means ‘case’, ‘matter’, ‘substance’, and is used as a head noun in combination with abstract static verbs:

รู้	rúu	to know	ความ รู้	khwaam rúu	knowledge
เห็น	hěn	to see	ความ เห็น	khwaam hěn	opinion
กล้าหาญ	klâahăan	(to be) brave	ความ กล้าหาญ	khwaam klâahăan	courage
ดี	dii	(to be) good	ความ ดี	khwaam dii	goodness, virtue
สวย	sŭaj	(to be) beautiful	ความ สวย	khwaam sŭaj	beauty
ยินดี	jindii	(to be) glad	ความ ยินดี	khwaam jindii	gladness, joy

Note: Some verbs can be preceded by การ (kaan) as well as ความ (khwaam). These are verbs, which in some cases can be earmarked as dynamic, and in other cases as static:

ฝัน	fǎn	to dream	การ ฝัน	kaan fǎn	dreaming as an ‘action’
			ความ ฝัน	khwaam fǎn	the dream, the illusion
เห็น	hěn	to see	การ เห็น	kaan hěn	the action of seeing, looking
			ความ เห็น	khwaam hěn	the opinion

## 2. Classifiers: A first introduction

There is a certain group of words - called ‘classifiers’ - which are used frequently in Thai. A classifier is a linguistic ‘pointer’, which indicates the semantic class to which a group of nouns belongs. Classifiers are thus in fact ‘*sort name-words*’; indicators of people, animals or things as part of a collection of comparable items or beings. A classifier can be used for the following:

- To specify a noun within a semantic group;
- To specify a noun in a list or summing up;
- To replace nouns in certain constructions;

Classifiers are roughly comparable in use and function with English words as ‘slice’ (a slice of bread), ‘head’ (20 heads of cattle) or ‘pack’ (a pack of cigarettes). Also, in the expressions ‘a (or per) piece’, and ‘please give me five slices’, a Thai would use a classifier for the words ‘piece’ and ‘slices’. Where English only knows a limited number of this kind of words, the Thai language uses a whole range of classifiers.

A classifier can be either a repetition of the noun it specifies, or a specific word, which is not used in any other context but as a classifier. Furthermore, some classifiers have - apart from their semantic use as a classifier - their own meaning as a noun, which has little or nothing to do with the noun for which they are used as a classifier (such as ‘piece’ in English). Sometimes, a classifier may specify the character, shape or status of a noun. There are, for instance, classifiers that specify the contents of a book, classifiers that identify round or flat objects, and classifiers that are only used for kings and monks. There are about eighty or ninety classifiers which are still in use. About fifty of them are frequently met with in daily speech.

Classifiers are thus used in the following manner:

### ***a. As a sort- or class-indicator for a noun which is used in combination with a demonstrative pronoun in one sentence***

In these constructions, the classifier appears behind the noun:

รถ คัน นี้ ดี -	car [classifier for cars] this good
rót khan nî dīi -	This is a good car.
รถ คัน นี้ แดง -	car [classifier for cars] this red
rót khan nî dæeng -	This car is red.

**b. In summing up persons, animals or things**

Here, classifiers are used to emphasize the difference and variety between things, animals or persons of one kind. After it has become clear about what or whom one is talking or writing, the original noun to which the classifier is referring can be left out:

มี รถ คัน สี แดง มี คัน สี เขียว และ มี คัน สี ขาว อีก คัน หนึ่ง -

mii rót khan sǐ deeng . mii khan sǐ khiaw . lé? mii khan sǐ khǎaw ìk khan nùeng -

to-have/to-be-present car [classifier for cars] color red . to-have/to-be-present [classifier for cars] color green . and to-have/to-be-present [classifier for cars] color white also [classifier for cars] one

There is a red car, a green one, and also a white one.

**c. In combination with numerals**

Classifiers are placed after the cardinal numeral:

ผม เห็น ผู้ชาย สี คน -

phǒm hǎn phǔu chaaj sǐ khon -

I to-see man four [classifier for people]

I see four men.

เขา มี รถ สอง คัน -

khǎw mii rót sǒong khan -

he to-have car two [classifier for cars]

He has two cars.

The cardinal numeral หนึ่ง - nùeng - ‘one’ may also be placed behind the classifier:

ผม เห็น รถ คัน หนึ่ง -

phǒm hǎn rót khan nùeng -

I to-see car [classifier for cars] one

I see one car; I see a car

หนึ่ง - nùeng (one) is here often translated with the English indefinite article ‘a’.

The classifier is always placed before the definite ordinal:

รถ คัน แรก -

rót khan rêek -

car [classifier for cars] first

The first car.

The classifier is placed in front of adjectives such as เดียว - diaw - a single, หน้า - nâa - next, in front, and สุดท้าย - sùththáaj - last:

ผม มี รถ คัน เดียว -

phǒm mii rót khan diaw -

I (man speaking) to-have car [classifier] a single

I’ve got (only) one car.

เรา จะ ขึ้น รถ เมล์ คัน หน้า -

raw cà khûen rót mee khan nâa -

We shall to-get-on bus [classifier] in-front

We shall get on the bus in front (the first bus).

หนังสือ เล่ม นี้ เป็น เล่ม สุดท้าย -

nǎngsǔe lêm ní pen lêm sùththáaj -

book [classifier] this to-be [classifier] last

This is the last book.

- c. *If, within a given situation, it is perfectly clear about which subject one is talking, a classifier can replace a noun completely.*

Classifiers, which replace nouns, are placed in stead of the noun (see also the example in 2.b):

คัน นั้น ไม่ สวย - khan nán māj sǔaj -	[classifier for cars] that no/not beautiful That one is not beautiful (speaking about cars).
ตัว นั้น ไม่ น่ารัก - tua nán māj nâarák -	[classifier for animals] that no/not loveable That one is not loveable (speaking about, for instance, a cat or a dog).
เล่ม นั้น สนุก - lêm nán sànùk -	[classifier for books] that amusing That one is amusing (speaking about a book)

### 3. The degrees of comparison

The comparative degree is formed with the particle **กว่า** (*kwàa*), a word that, in itself, can be translated with ‘more’ or ‘more than’, but when placed in another position within the sentence, means ‘till’, ‘until’, ‘by the time’. The superlative degree is formed with the word **สุด** (*sùt*), which means ‘last’, ‘to end’, ‘beyond’: or, more correct and in written language: **ที่สุด** (*thî sùt*). In spoken language the expression: **กว่าเพื่อน** (*kwàa phûean*) is used for the superlative degree:

ดี	dii	good
ดี กว่า	dii kwàa	better
ดี กว่าเพื่อน	dii kwàa phûean	better (spoken language)
ดี ที่ สุด	dii thî sùt	best
ดี สุด	dii sùt	best (spoken language)

### 4. Manners of speech.

You already know the word **เป็น** in the meaning of ‘to be’. Another meaning of **เป็น** is: ‘to have a disease’, ‘to suffer from something’.

ผม เป็น หวัด	- phǒm pen wàt	- I’m having a cold
หวัด	- wàt	- a cold
เขา เป็น โรค บิด	- khǎw pen rṑok bìt	- he/she is suffering from dysentery
โรค	- rṑok	- illness, disease
โรค บิด	- rṑok bìt	- dysentery

ไม่ได้ (mâj dâj) is used in dialogue 5.2. in the sense of ‘on the contrary’, ‘certainly not’:

แมว ไม่ได้ เรียน มหาวิทยาลัย เดียว กัน กับ จ้อย และ นิกกี้ -

mæw mâj-dâj rian máhăawítthájaalaj diaw kan kàp cōj lé? níkkí

Maew [on the contrary not] learn university same each-other with Joy and Nikki -

On the contrary, Maew doesn’t study at the same university as Joy and Nikki.

N.B.: The word ได้ (dâj) can also be used as a particle to indicate a past event, which still has a certain influence on the present, or to indicate an opportunity, which has been taken. The word doesn’t mean ‘to be able’ in these contexts.

ผม ไม่ได้ ไป - phǒm mâj dâj paj - I [hasn’t happened] to-go - I haven’t gone

ไม่เป็นไร (mâj pen raj) means: ‘it doesn’t matter’, ‘it doesn’t bother me’, ‘it is o.k.’. This expression is one of the most famous in Thailand, and can be used in many different situations. To prevent another person to loose face, a small offense is forgiven with a mild ‘ไม่เป็นไร’ - ‘mâj pen raj’. Are you feeling a bit down hill? ‘ไม่เป็นไร’ - ‘mâj pen raj’. Have you forgotten something? ‘ไม่เป็นไร’ - ‘mâj pen raj’. But don’t say ‘ไม่เป็นไร’ - ‘mâj pen raj’ on a funeral (although there are many Thai who would gladly play down the futility of life with the expression), but: เสียใจ (sǎa caj); ‘broken heart’, ‘my heart is broken’, ‘I’m desolate’, ‘I’m sorry’.

## 5.7 Exercises

### Exercise 1

Answer the following questions in Thai. Write your answers in the transcription script.

1. mæw rian năngsǔe thū nǎj . (เรียน หนังสือ - rian năngsǔe - to learn, to study)
2. mæw jàak kin náam chaa mǎj .
3. mæw jàak kin paathôngkǒo mǎj .
4. phūean phūean mæw chūe àraj .
5. thiim fútboon khǒong máhăawítthájaalaj nǎj cháná? thiim cùlaa hāa tòò sūun .
6. cōj pen rǒok àraj rǔe plāaw .
7. mæw kàp cōj jàak sǔe àraj thū nāa raam .
8. mæw kàp cōj pen sǎaw dūe rǔe sǎaw sǎaj .

### Exercise 2

Listen to tone exercise 5.5., and repeat each word.

### Exercise 3

Learn all new words in lesson 5 by heart.

### Exercise 4

Write – in the transcription-script – a story of about a hundred words. Use the words and the grammar you have learned thus far. Give a translation in English.

## 5.8 Answers to exercise 1

*(In this stadium, you don't have to be able yet to read the Thai script. The answers are also given in Thai script for later reference.)*

1. mɛɛw rian nǎngsǔe thîi máhǎawítthájaalaj raamkhamhǎeng .  
๑. แมว เรียน หนังสือ ที่ มหาวิทยาลัย รามคำแหง
2. mɛɛw mâj jàak kin . mɛɛw mii náam sôm jùu léew .  
๒. แมว ไม่ ยาก กิน แมว มี น้ำ ล้ม อยู่ แล้ว
3. mɛɛw mâj jàak kin paathôngkǒo .  
๓. แมว ไม่ ยาก กิน ปาท่องโก๋
4. phûean phûean mɛɛw chûe júj lé? jen .  
๔. เพื่อน ๆ แมว ชื่อ ชุ่ย และ เย็น
5. thiim fútboon khǒong máhǎawítthájaalaj raamkhamhǎeng cháná? thiim cùlaa hǎa tòo sǔun .  
๕. ทีม ฟุตบอลล์ ของ มหาวิทยาลัย รามคำแหง ชนะ ทีม จูฬา ๆ ห้า ต่อ ศูนย์
6. cōj pùat hǔa . tɛɛ mâj pen àraj ráaj rɛɛng .  
๖. จ้อย ปวด หัว แต่ เธอ ไม่ เป็น อะไร ร้าย แรง (ร้าย แรง - ráaj rɛɛng - serious, severe)
7. mɛɛw kàp cōj jàak sùe sùea phâa thîi tàlàat nǎa raam .  
๗. แมว กับ จ้อย ยาก ชื้อ เสื้อผ้า ที่ ตลาด หน้า รามฯ
8. mɛɛw kàp cōj duu pen sǎaw dūe mâak kwàa . tɛɛ theu nǎa taa sǎaj thǎng khûu .  
๘. แมว กับ จ้อย ดู เป็น สาว ดื้อ มาก กว่า แต่ เธอ หน้า ตา สวย ทั้ง คู่

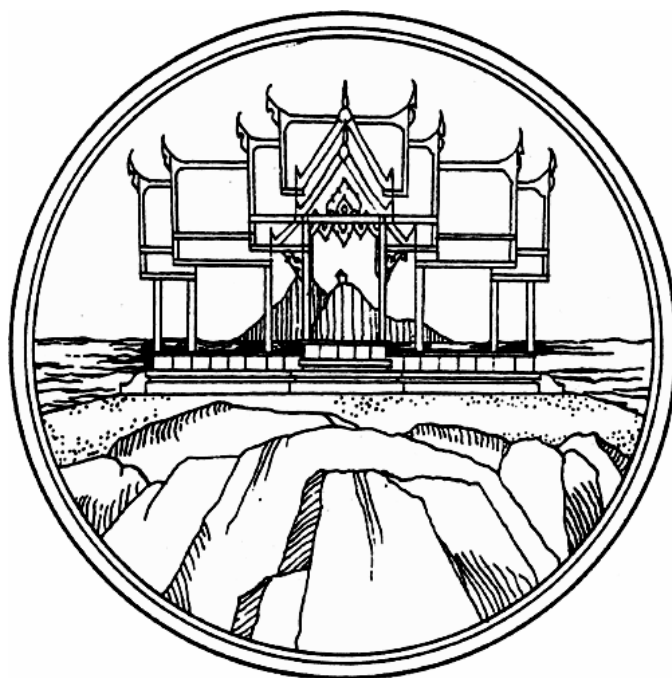
# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 6

### A relaxing weekend in Hua Hin

### พักผ่อนที่หัวหินในวันสุดสัปดาห์

- 6.1 Introduction
- 6.2 Dialogue
- 6.3 The tones 3: The mid tone, the rising tone and the falling tone
- 6.4 Idioms
- 6.5 Grammar
- 6.6 Exercises
- 6.7 Answers to exercise 1







## 6.1 Introduction

Thai people love to go sight-seeing during their vacations and holidays: a day at the beach, a weekend in the mountains, a trip to the parental village in the countryside; a trek through the jungle, or a visit to a town or area with a certain culinary specialty. Thai people don't like to travel alone. On bus stations and train terminals you can recognize the holiday-goers and day-trippers by the happy demeanor they display while waiting for their transport in small, colorfully dressed groups: teenagers and students in shorts, T-shirts and caps; groups of friends in leisure clothing; families with children and bags full of presents for the family... ไปเที่ยวสนุก (paj thīaw sànùk) - 'to go on a trip is fun'!

cd 1a

track 19

## 6.2 Dialogue

A relaxing weekend in Hua Hin

### ๖.๒.บท สนทนา

พักผ่อน ที่ หัว หิน ใน วัน สุด สัปดาห์



[พักผ่อน ที่ หัว หิน ใน วัน สุด สัปดาห์]

จ้อย และ พี่เสือ พี่ชายของจ้อย ไปเที่ยวหัวหินกัน เขาพานิกกี้ แมว และเพื่อน พี่เสือ ชื่อ พี่คิง ไปด้วย หนู่มสาว ทั้งห้าคน ขึ้นรถโดยสารที่สถานีขนส่งสายใต้ที่กรุงเทพฯ เมื่อถึงหัวหิน พวกเขาลงรถที่ตลาด และเดินไปที่ชายหาด พี่คิง รู้จัก โรงแรม ที่ ถูก และ ดี อยู่หลัง สวน ต้น มะพร้าว ที่ริม ชายหาด

คิง:           นั่นไง โรงแรม “เจ็ด พี่น้อง” โรงแรม ดู ดี จัง เลย เห็น มั้ย

แมว:         แพงไหม คะ

จ้อย:         ไม่แพงหรอก แต่ ถ้าเงินแมวไม่พอ จ้อยจะออกให้ก่อน

เพื่อน ทั้ง กลุ่ม เข้า ไป ใน โรงแรม และ สอบถาม พนักงาน ด่วน รับ ว่า ราคา ห้อง ละ  
เท่าไร

จ้อย: มี ห้อง สาม ที่ นอน กับ ห้อง สอง ที่ นอน ใหม ค่ะ

พนักงาน: มี ค่ะ ห้อง สาม คน กับ ห้อง สอง คน ราคา เดียว กัน ค่ะ

แมว: ราคา เท่าไร ค่ะ

พนักงาน: วัน ละ เจ็ด ร้อย บาท ค่ะ

แมว: (พูด เบา ๆ กับ จ้อย) แพง จัง แมว เอา เงิน มา แค่ แปร ร้อย บาท เท่า นั้น

จ้อย: ไม่ เป็น ไร หรอก แมว จ้อย จะ ออก ให้ เอง เพื่อน ฝูง กัน

เลือ: เอา สอง ห้อง ครับ ห้อง ผู้ หญิง หนึ่ง ห้อง ผู้ ชาย หนึ่ง ตก ลง ใหม

พนักงาน: เชิญ ลง ทะเบียน ก่อน ค่ะ คุณ จะ จ่าย ตอน นี้ หรือ ตอน ออก จาก  
โรงแรม ค่ะ

เลือ: ผม จะ จ่าย ค่า ห้อง เดียว นี้ เลย ที่ นี้ รับ บัตร เครดิต ใหม ครับ

พนักงาน: รับ ค่ะ... เที้ยว ให้ สนุก นะ ครับ

เลือ: แน่ นอน ครับ

## Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 6.2.

phákphòn thîi hǔa hǐn naj wan sùt sàpdaa.

*To-relax in/at Hua Hin in/on day end week.*

côj lé? phîi sǔa . phîi chaaj khǒong côj . paj thǎaw hǔa hǐn kan . >

*Joy and older-sibling Sua. Older-sibling man belonging-to Joy. Go to-make-pleasure-tour  
Hua Hin together. >*

khǎw phaa níkkîi . mǎew . lé? phûean phîi sǔa chûe phîi khing paj dûaj . >

*He/she to-lead Nikki. Maew. and friend older-sibling Sua older-sibling Khing go/to also. >*

nùm sǎaw thǎng hǎa khon khûen rót dǒojsǎan thîi sàthǎanii khǒn >

*Young-man young-woman all five [classifier f. people] to-get-in car to-travel in/at station to-  
transport >*

sòng sǎaj tâj thîi krungthêep . mûea thǔeng hǔa hǐn . phûak khǎw long rót thîi >

*to-send line south in/at Bangkok. When to-arrive Hua Hin. Group he/she to-descend car in/at >*

tàlàat lé? deun paj thîi chaaj-hàat . phîi khing rúucàk rǒong-rēm thîi >

*market and to-walk to-go in/at beach. Older-sibling Khing to-know hotel that/which >*

thùuk lé? dii jùu lǎng sǎan tôn mǎphráaw thîi rim chaaj-hàat .

*Cheap and good to-stay behind garden tree coconut at/in edge beach.*

khing: nǎn ngaj . rǒong-rēm ‘cèt phîi nóong’ . rǒong rēm duu dii cang leui . hǎn mǎj .

*Khing: That how. Hotel ‘Jet Pee Nong’. Hotel to-appear good really indeed. To-see [short-  
ened question particle].*

- mɛɛw: phɛɛng mǎj khá .  
 Maew: *Expensive [question particle][polite particle (f.)].*
- côj: mǎj phɛɛng ròok . tɛɛ thâa ngeun mɛɛw mǎj phoo . côj >  
 Joy: *No/not expensive [modifying sentence particle]. But if money Maew (you) not enough. Joy (I) >*
- cà òok hâj kòon .  
*shall to-offer/to-issue to-give/to first.*
- phûean thǎng klùm khǎw paj naj rɔ̃ng-rɛem lé? sòop-thǎam phánák-ngaan tòn-ráp >  
*Friend entire group to-enter to-go in hotel and to-inform-about person-in-charge to-welcome (receptionist) >*
- wâa raakhaa hông lá thǎwraj .  
*that price room per how much.*
- côj: mii hông sǎam thîi-noon kàp hông sǒong >  
 Joy: *To-have/to-be-present room three place-sleep (bed) with/and room two >*
- thîi-noon mǎj khá .  
*place-sleep (bed) [question particle] [polite particle f.].*
- Recept.: mii khâ . hông sǎam khon kàp hông sǒong >  
 Recept.: *To-have/to-be-present [polite particle f.]. Room three person and/with room two >*
- khon raakhaa diaw kan khâ .  
*person price the-same together [polite particle f.].*
- mɛɛw: raakhaa thǎwraj khá .  
 Maew: *Price how-much [polite particle f.].*
- Recept.: wan lá cèt rój bàat khâ .  
 Recept.: *Day per seven hundred Baht [polite particle f.].*
- mɛɛw: (phûut baw-baw kàp côj) phɛɛng cang . mɛɛw aw ngeun maa khê pèet >  
 Maew: *(to-talk softly with Joy) Expensive quite. Maew to-take money to-come only eight >*
- rój bàat thǎwnán .  
*hundred Baht merely.*
- côj: mǎj pen raj ròok mɛɛw . côj cà òok hâj eeng . phûean fũung kan .  
 Joy: *'It doesn't matter' (idiom) [modifying sentence particle] Maew. Joy (I) to-shall to-offer/to-issue to-give/to (my)self. Friend group together.*
- sũea: aw sǒong hông kháp . hông phûu jǐng nùeng . hông phûu chaaj nùeng . >  
 Sua: *To-take two room [polite particle m.]. Room girl one. Room boy one. >*
- tòk-long mǎj .  
*'All right' (idiom) [question particle].*

Recept.: cheun long-thábian kòon khâ . khun cà càaj toon-nú >

Recept.: *to-invite/please to-register first [polite part. f.]. You to-shall to-pay time-this (now) >*

rũe toon òok càak rọng rɛɛm khá . >

*Or time exit from hotel [polite particle f.]. >*

sũa: phỏm cà càaj khâa hông đấw-nú leuj khráp . thũn nũ ráp bàt khreedit mǎj khráp.

Sua: *I (man speaking) to-shall to-pay price room moment-this (now) indeed [polite particle m.].Place this to-accept card credit [question particle][polite particle m.].*

Recept.: ráp khâ... thĩaw hâj sànnùk ná khá

Recept.: *To-accept [polite particle f.]... To-make-pleasure-tour to-let/to-give pleasant [emphatic particle] [polite particle f.].*

sũa: nênoon khráp

Sua: *Sure [polite particle m.].*

cd 1a Vocabulary  
track 20



พี่ชาย

วัน สุด สัปดาห์

wan sùt sàpdaa

weekend

พักผ่อน

phákphòn

to rest, to relax (also: phákphòn)

หัว หิน

hũa hĩn

Hua Hin; a seaside resort on the coast of the Gulf of Thailand

พี่

phũ

elder sibling (elder brother; elder Sister)

พี่ชาย

phũn chaaj

elder brother

ของ

khõong

1. thing, object; 2. to belong to (possessive pronoun. E.g. หมาของ เขา - mǎa khõong khǎw - dog belonging-to he - 'his dog')

ไป

paj

1. to go (in a direction away from the speaker or the subject of a sentence); 2. to (direction)

เที่ยว

thĩaw

to go out; to go on holiday or vacation for pleasure; to make a pleasure tour

กัน

kan  
other

1. together, collectively; 2. each

พา

phaa

to lead; to guide; to bring along (said only of persons)

รถ

คิง

khing

Khing (nickname - from English)

ด้วย

dũaj

1. also; too; as well; likewise; 2. by, with, by means of





รถโดยสาร

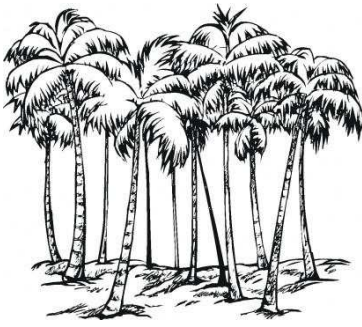


ชายหาด

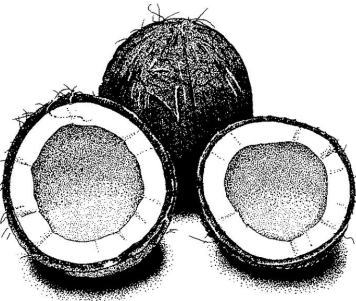


สวน

หนุ่ม	nùm	young man
สาว	săaw	young woman
ทั้ง	tháng	1. completely, wholly, entirely; 2. all, whole, entire; 3. every(thing) of something; 4. also, as well; 5. both,
ห้า	hâa	five
ทั้ง ห้า	tháng hâa	all five (of them)
ออกไป	òok paj	1. to go out; 2. to leave; 3. from, away from; 4. 'Go away!'
ขึ้น	khûen	1. to ascent; 2. to get in, to board (car, bus, plane)
รถ	rót	1. car; 2. vehicle; 3. cart, van, wagon, carriage
รถโดยสาร	rót dọọjsăan	bus which serves routes between cities
สถานี	sàthăanii	station
ขนส่ง	khôn sòng	1. to transport, to deliver; 2. transportation
สาย	săaj	1. line, route, road; 2. late, delayed
ใต้	tâj	1. south, southern; 2. under, beneath
เมื่อ	mûea	1. when, while, at, in (time); at the time; as soon as; 2. time, moment
ถึง	thûeng	1. reach; 2. until; 3. about, concerning
พวกเขา	phûak khăw	they (plural)
ลง	long	1. to descend; 2. to get out, to get of (car, bus, plane, train)
ตลาด	tàlàat	1. market; 2. center of a village or small town
เดิน	deun	to walk
ชายหาด	chaaj hàat	beach
รู้จัก	rúucàk	to know, to be acquainted with
โรงแรม	rọųng reem	hotel
ถูก	thùuk	1. cheap; 2. correct, right; 4. to hit, To touch; 5. grammatical element in passive constructions



ต้น มะพร้าว



มะพร้าว

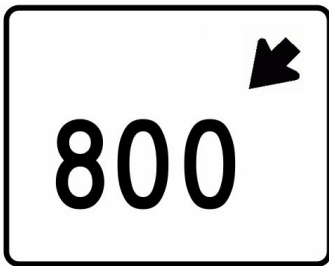


พนักงาน

ดี	dii	good, fine, well, nice, satisfactory, virtuous, favorable
หลัง	lǎng	1. behind; 2. classifier for houses, tents, mosquito-nets; 3. back (body-part); 4. afterwards, after, later
สวน	sǔan	garden
ต้น	tôn	tree
มะพร้าว	máphráaw	coconut
ริม	rim	edge, rim, border; margin; shore-line
นั่น ไง	nân ngaj	'Look!', 'There!', 'There it is!'
“เจ็ด พี่ น้อง”	‘cèt phîi nóong’	‘Jet Pee Nong’, hotel in Hua Hin
ดู	duu	1. to look, to look at; 2. to watch; to stare, to observe; 3. to appear, to seem; 4. to consider, to judge
ดู ดี	duu dii	to look well, to look good
จัง	cang	greatly, quite, extremely, fully
จัง เลย	cang leuaj	1. extraordinarily; 2. quite, extremely
เห็น มั้ย	hěn mǎj	you see?
แพง	phæeng	expensive
ไม่	mâj	no, not
หรอก	ròok	‘modifying sentence particle’; ‘หรอก’ is a particle used to: 1. soften a statement or to mellow an order; 2. to reassure someone; 3. to express mild surprise or amazement; 4. to express mild annoyance
ไม่ หรือ	mâj ròok	not at all
ถ้า	thâa	if, in case
เงิน	ngeun	1. money; 2. silver
พอ	phoo	1. enough; 2. as soon as
ออก	òok	1. to come out, to go out; 2. out, outwards; 3. to pay, to spend; 4. to leave; 5. to issue; 6. to sprout, to flower; 7. to set going; 8. to result; 9. to follow from, come from
ออก ให้	òok hâj	1. to pay, to spend (for someone); 2. to lend, to advance
ทั้ง	tháng	1. completely, wholly, entirely;



เงิน



แปด ร้อย



ห้อง



ที่ นอน

กลุ่ม

klùm

2. all, whole, entire; 3. every(thing) of something; 4. also, as well; 5. both, group

สอบถาม

sòop thǎam

to inquire, to ask (for information), to question

พนักงาน

phánák-ngaan

receptionist, officer, clerk; person in charge

ต้อนรับ

tôon ráp

to welcome, to receive. (comp.: รับรอง - *ráp roong* - 1. to confirm; 2. to guarantee)

ว่า

wâa

1. to say, to speak; 2. to criticize, to scold, to admonish; 3. that (conj.)

ราคา

raakhaa

price

ห้อง

hông

room

ละ

lá

each; every; per

เท่าไร

thâwraj

how much; how many

มี

mii

1. to have; to possess; to own 2. to be present; there is; there are; 3. to exist; 4. to happen; to occur; 6. to enjoy (rights, prestige)

ที่ นอน

thîi noon

bed, place to sleep

กับ

kàp

1. (together) with; 2. and

เดียวกัน

diaw kan

the same

วัน

wan

day

วัน ละ

wan lá

per day; each day

เจ็ด

cèt

seven

ร้อย

róoj

hundred

บาท

bàat

Baht (Thai monetary unit)

เบา ๆ (เบา เบา)

baw baw

softly, lightly, quietly

เอา...มา

aw ... maa

to take (something) into the direction of the subject or speaker

แค่

khêe

as much as ..., to the extent of ...

แปด

pèet

eight

แปด ร้อย

pèet róoj

eight hundred

เท่านั้น

thâwnán

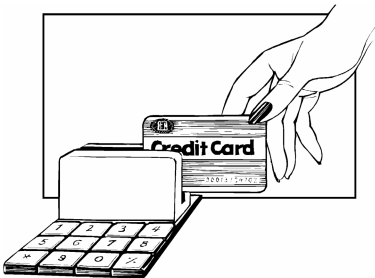
merely, only



ผู้ชาย



เงินสด



บัตรเครดิต

ไม่เป็นไร	mâi pen raj	it doesn't matter (idiom)
เอง	eeng	1. self; 2. own; 2. alone
ฝูง	fũung	1. group, mass, crowd; 2. flock
เพื่อน ฝูง กัน	phũean fũung kan	friends together in a group
เอา	aw	1. to take; 2. to bring; 3. to want
ผู้หญิง	phũu jĩng	1. woman, girl; 2. female
หนึ่ง	nũeng	one (numeral)
ผู้ชาย	phũu chaaj	1. man, boy; 2. male
ตกลง	tòk long	O.K., all right (idiom)
เชิญ	cheun	1. to invite; 2. to bid welcome; 3. "please"
ทะเบียน	thábian	register
ลง ทะเบียน	long thábian	to register
ก่อน	kòon	first, before
คุณ	khun	you (neutral polite form of address)
จะ	cà	will, shall, should, would
จ่าย	càaj	to pay
ตอน	toon	1. period, time, point in time; 2. group; installment; paragraph; 3. portion, group
ตอนนี้	toon níi	now
ออกจาก	òok càak	1. to go out from... ; 2. to depart; to check out
เงินสด	ngeun sòt	cash (money)
จ่าย เป็น เงิน สด	càaj pen ngeun sòt	to pay in cash
บัตร	bàt	card
บัตรเครดิต	bàt khredit	credit card
สนุก	sànùk	1. enjoyable, cheerful, nice; enter- taining, amusing; 2. to have fun, to enjoy oneself
เที่ยว ให้ สนุก	thĩaw hâj sànùk	have a nice stay; have a nice trip
แน่นอน	nĩenoon	1. sure; 2. certainly



**Translation of dialogue 6.2.****A relaxing weekend in Hua Hin.**

Joy and Sua, Joy's elder brother, are making a trip to Hua Hin together. They take Nikki, Maew and a friend of Sua's, whose name is Khing, with them. The five young men and women take the bus from the Southern Bus Station in Bangkok. When they arrive in Hua Hin, they get out at the market and walk to the beach. Khing knows a good and inexpensive hotel which is situated behind the coconut gardens at the edge of the beach.

Khing: There, you see? Hotel 'Jet Pee Nong'. The hotel looks very good indeed, you see?  
 Maew: Is it expensive?  
 Joy: It's surely not that expensive. But if you don't have enough money, I'll pay for you first.

The group of friends enter the hotel, and they inquire at the receptionist desk how much a room costs.

Joy: Do you have a room with three beds and a room with two beds?  
 recept.: Yes, we have. A room for three persons costs the same as a room for two persons.  
 Maew: How much is that?  
 recept.: Seven hundred Baht a day.  
 Maew: (speaks softly to Joy) That is really expensive. I have only taken eight hundred Baht with me.  
 Joy: That really doesn't matter, Maew. I'll pay that for you. We are friends, aren't we?  
 Sua: We'll take two rooms; one for the girls and one for the boys. Is that all right?  
 recept.: Would you please register first? Would you like to pay now or when you check out?  
 Sua: I'll pay for the rooms now. Do you accept credit cards here?  
 Recept.: Yes, we do... Have a nice stay.  
 Sua: We certainly will.

cd 1a

track 21

**6.3 The 5 tones:****The mid tone, the rising tone and the falling tone**

In tone-exercise 6.3. you'll be able to compare the mid tone with the rising and the falling tone. Listen carefully to the tones and repeat the words. The meaning of the words doesn't matter here. Some have no meaning.

naa	nǎa	nâa	roo	rǒo	rôo
paa	pǎa	pâa	bọo	bỗo	bộo
daa	dǎa	dâa	chọo	chỗo	chộo
kaa	kǎa	kâa	lọo	lỗo	lộo
saa	sǎa	sâa	buea	bủea	bộea
koo	kỏo	kôo	kia	kỉa	kîa
boo	bỏo	bôo	mia	mỉa	mîa

Now listen carefully to the following words on the CD, and notice the difference between the high, low and falling tones in short syllables. The use of a glottal stop (the closing of the glottis or vocal cord region after the pronunciation of a short vowel is optional):

ná?	nà?	nâ?	mí?	mì?	mî?
sí?	sà?	sâ?	lá?	là?	lâ?

cd 1a **6.4 Idioms**  
track 22

**1. Personal pronouns and other terms of address.**

The Thai language knows dozens of personal pronouns. You already know a couple of them, but following here is a list with some additions. By choosing the correct personal pronoun (the word for ‘I’ as well as the words for ‘you’, ‘he’ or ‘she’) one indicates one’s own status towards one’s conversation partner. If you are not sure of the status of the person you are talking to, you should use the polite neutral combination ผม-phǒm (‘I’ man speaking); ดิฉัน-dichǎn (‘I’ woman speaking) for the first person; คุณ - khun (‘you’) for the second person and เขา - khǎw (‘he’/‘she’) for the third person. For these and other personal pronouns and their use, please look at the following diagram:

<i>1<sup>st</sup> person</i>	<i>2<sup>nd</sup> person</i>	<i>3<sup>rd</sup> person</i>	
กู - kuu	มึง - mueng	มัน - man	Intimate/rude <sup>1</sup>
Nickname (e.g. จ้อย - cōj)	Nickname (e.g. นิกกี้ - níkkî)	Nickname (e.g. แมว - mɛɛw)	Intimate/friendly; used with friends, intimate colleagues etc.
ฉัน - chǎn <sup>2</sup>	เธอ - theu	เธอ - theu	Intimate/old fashioned
เขา(เอง) - khǎw (eeng) เค้า(เอง) - kháw <sup>3</sup> (eeng)	ตัว เอง - tua eeng เอ็ง - eng	เขา - khǎw (เค้า - kháw) <sup>3</sup>	Intimate/modern
เรา - raw <sup>4</sup>	เธอ - theu	เขา - khǎw (เค้า - kháw) <sup>3</sup>	Intimate/friendly
ผม-phǒm/ดิฉัน-dichǎn	คุณ - khun	เขา - khǎw	Polite
ผม-phǒm/ดิฉัน-dichǎn	ท่าน - thân	ท่าน - thân	Respectful
เรา- raw	พวก เธอ-phuak theu <sup>5</sup>	พวก เขา - phuak khǎw พวก เค้า - phuak kháw <sup>3, 5</sup>	Intimate/friendly (plural)

### Notes on the diagram:

- <sup>1</sup> These personal pronouns are extremely insulting if you use them to others than your most intimate friends.
- <sup>2</sup> the pronoun ฉัน - chǎn has been replaced by ผม - phǒm as the most common personal pronoun for men a few decennia ago. Women still using ฉัน - chǎn towards people they don't know nowadays are mostly of exceptionally high status. In an old fashioned way, ฉัน - chǎn can still be used as a non-status dependent personal pronoun between friends.
- <sup>3</sup> เขา - khǎw is normally written as เขา, although in normal speech the tone of the word is high (kháw). In modern literature and in comics the word is often written as it is pronounced: เค้า. เค้า is also used as a first person personal pronoun, mostly by young women. its is paired with ตัวเอง - 'you'.
- <sup>4</sup> เรา - raw is mostly a plural pronoun, but it is used as first person singular, as well.
- <sup>5</sup> In informal speech, the plural particle พวก - phûak is often omitted.

## 2. Particles, interjections and stopgaps

1. Particles for toning down an expression like เลย - leuj, หรือ - ròok and หรือ - ròk are put at the end of a sentence. They change an order into a request, soften an expression that might otherwise come over too harshly, and ease the tone of a reproach. They may also indicate contradiction, or imply an incentive.

ได้ เลย

can 'leuj'

dâj leuj

'You *may*.'; 'It's *O.K.* if you do that.'

ไม่ได้ เลย

no/not can 'leuj'

mâj dâj leuj

'You can't *do* that.' (it's actually forbidden)

สูบ บุหรี่ ที่ นี่ ไม่ได้ หรือ

To-smoke cigarette place this no/not to-can 'ròok'

sùup bùrì thîi nîi mâj dâj ròok

You can't smoke in here, *actually*.

ผม เอง หรือ -

I (man speaking) myself 'ròk'

phǒm eeng ròk

It's *only* me.

ไม่ได้ ง่าย เหมือน ที่ เธอ คิด หรือ

no [in contrast to] easy same that you think 'ròok'

mâj dâj ngâaj mǔean thîi theu khít ròok

It's not as easy as you think, *don't* you *know*?

In some cases, หรือ - ròok rather strengthens the essence of an expression:

ไม่มี ใคร สวย เท่า เธอ หรือ

No/not to-have someone beautiful as-much-as you 'ròok'

mâj mii khraj sǔaj thâw theu ròok -

There is *really* nobody who's as pretty as you.

2. Polite particles are either used to make an expression more polite, or to soften it. Polite articles are used towards elders and people who possess a higher position on the social standard than the speaker. Polite particles are also used as 'charms'. Many couples use polite

particles to each other after a lifetime of marriage (though it must be admitted that others absolutely don't), and a person may use more polite particles than usual if he wants to borrow some money from his father. A husband who wants to make up a quarrel with his wife will use polite particles in the process. Also, if you want something simple, but you're too lazy to get it yourself, a polite particle might help:

ที่รัก ครับ ขง ชา ให้ หน้อย ครับ - thî rák khráp . chong chaa hâj nòoj khráp  
darling [polite part. m.]. pour-hot-water tea to-give a-little [polite part. m.] -  
Darling, would you mind terribly to make me a cup of tea?

As you already know, a polite particle indicates the sex of a person. People of the 'third sex', of whom there are many in Thailand, use the polite particle which corresponds with the sex they wish they had; not the one which corresponds with their actual biological nature. Of course, people who have undergone a sex-operation use the polite particle which corresponds with their new biological nature by right.

3. Incentive particles and emphatic particles intensify an expression. Like most particles, they are difficult to translate directly into English. In this course, you will learn through practice and repetition how to add them automatically to certain idioms. Examples of often used incentive and emphatic particles are:

The particles ชี - sí ลี - sì ชี - sii and ชี - sîi - are different variants of a particle that emphasizes or nearer defines orders or other expressions of urgency. Appear at the end of the sentence, just in front of the polite particle.

ไป ชี ครับ - paj sí khráp - go; go ahead; please go.

The particles ชี - sii and ชี - sîi can express compulsion or impatience:

ไป ชี - paj sîi - please go now!

นะ - ná - is a particle that adds friendly emphasis to an expression. It can also soften a prohibition or a reproof. It is used as an informal or intimate question particle. Appears at the end of a sentence, just in front of the polite particle:

อย่า นะ - jàa ná - you shouldn't do that.

ไป กัน นะ - paj kan ná - shall we go, then?

นะ - nâ - is a particle which expresses incentive and instigation. It can also indicate the confirmation of an agreement. In another sense, it can mark the subject of a conversation in informal speech. The particle is often pronounced as 'น่า' (nâa) or 'น่า' (náa), and also written that way in popular literature and comics. Appears at the end of a sentence, in front of the polite particle:

ไป กัน นะ - paj kan nâ - O.K. let's go (as agreed).

ภาษี นะ ผม ไม่ ชอบ จ่าย - phaasîi nâ . phǒm mâj chòop càaj -

Taxes... I don't like to pay them. (ภาษี - phaasîi - 'taxes' is marked as the subject of the conversation)

## 6.5 Grammar

### The use of the verbs ไป (paj - 'to go') and มา (maa - 'to come') as directional verbs

ไป (paj) - *to go* and มา (maa) - *to come*, have, except from their use as intransitive verbs, another function as directional verbs. As directional verbs, both words can mean 'to' and 'from'. Other than in most western languages, the concepts of direction are relative in Thai. 'ไป' and 'มา' change their meaning dependent on the position of the speaker or the subject of the sentence. In any action that involves a movement away from the speaker, the direction is indicated with 'ไป' (paj); in any action that involves an action towards the speaker, the direction is indicated with 'มา' (maa):

เขาเดิน มา หาผม

khǎw deun maa hǎa phǒm

he to-walk to-come/towards to-see I

He walks towards me.

ผมเดิน ไป หาเขา

phom deun paj hǎa khǎw

I to-walk to-go/towards to-see he

I walk towards him.

In these sentences, the words ไป (paj) - *to go* and มา (maa) - *to come* are directional verbs, which follow on the principal verb in the sentence. As you see, the use of ไป (paj) - *to go* and มา (maa) - *to come* are determined by the position of the speaker.

เขา ส่ง จดหมาย ไป กรุงเทพ

khǎw sòng còtmǎaj paj krungthêep

He to-send letter to-go/towards Bangkok

He sends a letter to Bangkok.

แมว ส่ง จดหมาย มา ให้ จ้อย

mæw sòng còtmǎaj maa hǎi cōj

Maew to-send letter to-come/towards to-give Joy

Maew sends a letter to Joy.

In the first sentence; 'เขา ส่ง จดหมาย ไป กรุงเทพ', the action is seen from the viewpoint of the principle subject in the sentence, 'เขา'. 'He' sends a letter *to* Bangkok, so as a directional verb, the word 'ไป' must be used; as the action is 'away from the principal subject'.

In the second sentence, we can only conclude that either Joy is speaking in the first person singular, the sentence has been written by Joy, or the writer of the sentence has had Joy in mind as the principal person in the sentence; as Joy is the person to which the directional verb is modified. She is the principal subject in the sentence. Although in grammatical terms, the subject of the sentence is 'Maew', the action is towards the person from whose point of view the world is seen in this sentence. As you can see, it is not the grammatical subject of the sentence which determines whether the directional verb to be used will be 'ไป' or 'มา'.

The directional verbs ไป (paj) and มา (maa) are mostly used in combination with verbs as เดิน (deun - 'to walk'); ส่ง (sòng - to send); กลับ (klàp - 'to return'); ย้าย (jáaj - to move); โทรศัพท์ (thoórásàp - to telephone) เอา (aw - to take); พา (phaa - to take, to lead) and เปลี่ยน (plian - to change).

Also when ไป (paj) - *to go* and มา (maa) - *to come* are used independently as a principal verbs, their use is dependent on the position (whereabouts) of the principal subject of the sentence:

เขาไปเที่ยว หัว หิน

khǎw paj thîaw hǔa hĭn

*he to-go travel-for-pleasure Hua Hin*

He's going on a holiday to Hua Hin.

(he's not yet there, but he'll go)

เขา มา กิน ที่ ร้าน ผม

khǎw maa kin thîi ráan phǒm

*he to-come to-eat in shop I*

He's eating in my restaurant.

(he's sitting in my restaurant; he's come to me)

## 6.6 Exercises

### 1.

Translate the following sentences into Thai. Use the transcription script used in the course.

1. I'll take two rooms. How much are they per room?
2. I would like to pay when I check out. Is that possible?
3. The beach here is very beautiful.
4. I don't have enough money with me. Can you advance it for me?
5. I'm going on a holiday to Bangkok.
6. The receptionist says: '700 Baht'.
7. I'll pay with a credit card.
8. Hotels in Thailand are not expensive.
9. He's getting on the bus to Hua Hin.
10. She gets off at the market.

### 2.

1. Write a short story in Thai (about 50 words). It doesn't matter what you write about. Use the transcription script.
2. Listen to tone exercise 3 on the CD without looking in your book, and note down the tones you hear.

## 6.7 Answers to exercise 1

(In this stadium, you don't have to be able yet to read the Thai script. The answers are also given in Thai script for later reference.)

๑. ดิฉัน / ผม จะ เอา สอง ห้อง ห้อง ละ เท่าไร

1. dichǎn/phǒm cà aw sǒng hông . hông lá thâwraj .

๒. ดิฉัน / ผม อยาก จ่าย เงิน เมื่อ ออก จาก โรงแรม ได้ไหม

2. dichǎn/phǒm jàak càaj ngeun mûea òok càak roongreem . dâj mǎj .

๓. ชาย หาด ที่ นี้ สวย มาก

3. chaaj hàat thîi nî sǔaj mâak .

๔. ดิฉัน เอา เงิน มา ไม่ พอ เธอ ออก ให้ ก่อน ได้ไหม

4. chǎn aw ngeun maa mâj phoo . theu òok hâj kòon dâj mǎj .

๕. ดิฉัน / ผม จะ ไป เที่ยว กรุงเทพ ฯ  
5. dīchǎn/phǒm cà paj thĭaw krungthĕep .
๖. พนักงาน พูด: “เจ็ด ร้อย บาท”  
6. phánák-ngaan phŭut: ‘cèt rój bàat’
๗. ดิฉัน / ผม จ่าย เงิน ด้วย บัตร เครดิต ( except ‘also’ and ‘too’, ด้วย- dŭaj can mean ‘with’, ‘by means of’ as well)  
7. dīchǎn/phǒm càaj ngeun dŭaj bàt khreedit .
๘. โรงแรม ที่ เมือง ไทย ไม่ แพง  
8. rǒongrĕem thĭ mueang thaj mĕj phĕeng .
๙. เขา ขึ้น รถโดยสาร ไป ห้าง หิน  
9. khǎw khŭen rót dǒojsǎan paj hŭa hĭn .
๑๐. เขา ลง ที่ ตลาด  
10. khǎw long thĭ tàlàat .





# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 7

**Joy! Wake up!**

**จ๊อย! ตื่นได้แล้ว!**

- 7.1 Introduction
- 7.2 Dialogue
- 7.3 Idioms
- 7.4 Writing I: The consonants ก - ฅ
- 7.5 Exercises
- 7.6 Answers to exercise 1





## 7.1 Introduction

In this lesson we'll have a look into the home of a modern Thai family in Bangkok. The Chakraphet family consists of father Udom, mother Thanida, son Surasak ('Sua') and daughter Jintana ('Joy'). The family lives in a roomy and luxurious house at Soi Sainte Louise 3 in the district of Thung Mahamek, on the edge of the old centre of the city. The home is built on land that has been the property of the Chakraphet family for almost two hundred years. The residence consists of an old edifice, crafted from teak and meticulously preserved. Next to it stands a large, modern, and very comfortable private house. The old building is used for parties, ceremonies and receptions; the new quarters were built when Udom and Sunisa's first child was on the way. It is a cool building with high rooms, a broad gallery with impressive staircases, and a lot of imported marble. Son Sua and daughter Joy both have their own 'apartment' with shower, toilet and kitchenette, where they can study, rest and receive their friends. In the main kitchen of the house there's always something cooking, and within the fenced compound, between the many garages, residences, and smaller buildings which have fallen into disuse, red jasmine bushes, mahogany and teak trees offer nesting places for birds not found elsewhere in the metropolis. There is a pond with carp, turtles and lotus flowers, and a marble fountain. The chauffeur/guard and the cooks/maids – a small family consisting of father, mother and daughter – have their own comfortable quarters in a separate building. Naaj Udom, Naang Sunisa and their son Sua drive their own cars, all kept in mint condition by their chauffeur.

Joy hasn't taken the effort yet to obtain her driving license, but there is a fourth car, which is always at her disposal to take her to and from the university. Joy, though, is someone who seems to prefer a more perilous form of transport; the motor-taxi...

cd 1b

track 01

## 7.2 Dialogue

“Joy! Wake up !”

๗.๒. บท สนทนา

“จ้อย ! ตื่น ได้ แล้ว !”

[“จ้อย ! ตื่น ได้ แล้ว !”]

จ้อย ยัง นอน อยู่ แต่ จ้อย ต้อง ไป มหาวิทยาลัย แล้ว คุณ แม่ จึง มา ปลุก จ้อย

คุณ แม่: จ้อย จ๊ะ จ้อย เอ๊ย ตื่น ได้ แล้ว นะ แปด โมง แล้ว นะ ลูก

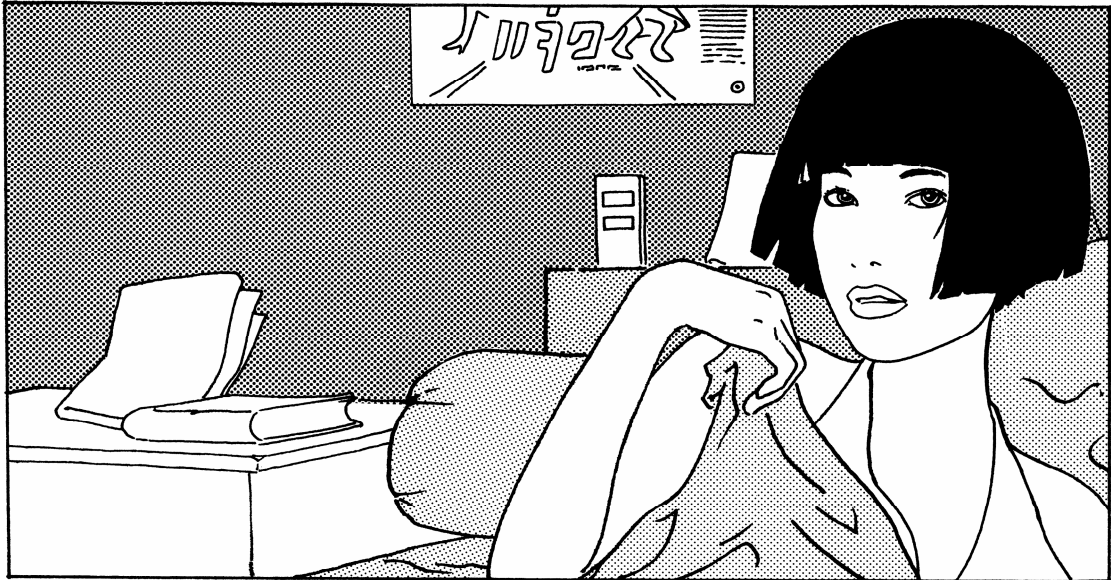
จ้อย: โอ้ ถ้า อย่าง นั้น จ้อย ต้อง รีบ ตื่น แล้ว ชี แม่ จ้อย มี สอบ ตอน สิบ โมง  
เช้า ค่ะ

คุณ แม่: อ้าว ลูก ทำไม เมื่อ คืน นี้ ไม่ นอน แต่ หัว ค่ำ อาบน้ำ เร็ว

จ้อย: แหม จ้อย ไป ทัน แ่น

จ้อย ลุก ขึ้น และ รีบ เข้า ไป ใน ห้อง น้ำ จ้อย อาบน้ำ เช็ด ตัว ทา ครีม และ หวี ผผม  
เร็วๆ จ้อย แต่ง ตัว เธอ ใส่ ชุด นัก ศึกษา จุฬาฯ กระโปรง สี ดำ กับ เสื้อ สี ขาว  
จ้อย ใส่ หนังสือ ปากกา และ สมุด ไว้ ใน กระเป๋า แล้ว ลง ไป ข้าง ล่าง คุณ แม่ ของ

จ้อย และพี่ชายของจ้อย พี่เสือ กำลัง กินอาหาร อยู่ คุณ พ่อ ของ จ้อย ไม่ อยู่  
ทำน ออกไป ทำงาน แล้ว



จ้อย: สวัสดี ค่ะ คุณ แม่ สวัสดี พี่เสือ คุณ พ่อ ไป ทำงาน แล้ว หรือ

พี่เสือ: โอ๊ย ตาย แล้ว น้อง จ้อย ตื่น เข้า ได้ ด้วย หรือ เก่ง จัง เลย

จ้อย: แหม พี่เสือ ตื่น สาย เป็น หรือ เปล่า

คุณ แม่: จ้อย มา กิน ข้าว ก่อน สิ ลูก

จ้อย: ไม่มี เวลา แล้ว ค่ะ จ้อย ต้อง รีบ ไป แล้ว

คุณ แม่: จ้อย จะ ชီး มอเตอร์ไซด์ ไป หรือ อย่า เลย มัน อันตราย นะ

จ้อย: ไม่ เป็น ไร ไม่ เห็น อันตราย เลย

## Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 7.2.

côj tuyền dâj léew .

*Joy to-wake-up to-can already.*

côj jang noon jùu . tề côj tông paj máhăawíthájaalaj léew . khun mềe >

*Joy still to-sleep to-stay. But Joy to-must to-go university already. Mr./mrs. mother >*

cueng maa plùk côj .

*therefore to-come to-awaken Joy.*

khun mềe: côj cá. côj ểuj. tuyền dâj léew ná . >

*Mother: Joy [affectionate particle]. Joy [affectionate particle] . To-wake-up to-can already [modifying sentence particle]. >*

pềt mọong léew ná lúuk .

*Eight o'clock already [modifying sentence particle] child. >*

côj: ồ . thaa jàang nán côj tông rúp tùen lếw sí mề . >

Joy: *Oh. If sort that (like that) Joy (I) to-must to-hurry to-wake-up already [emphatic particle] mother. >*

côj mii sòop toon sịp mọong cháaw khâ .

*Joy (I) to-have exam period-of-time ten o'clock morning [polite particle f.].*

khun mề: ầaw . lùuk thammaj mềa khuen níu mậ noon tề hủa khâm . >

Mother: *[Expression of surprise]. Child why while night this no/not to-sleep since head evening (early in the evening). >*

àap náam rew .

*to-bathe water fast.*

côj: mề . côj paj than nề .

Joy: *[expression of mild annoyance]. Joy (I) to-go on-time certainly.*

côj lúk khuen lế? rúp khaw paj naj hông náam . côj àap náam . chét tua thaa khriim . wủ >

*Joy to-get-up and to-enter to-go inside room water. Joy to-bathe water. To-wipe body to-smear cream. To-comb >*

phôm rew rew . côj tềeng tua . thêu sàj chúit náksùeksáa cùlaa .

*hair fast fast. Joy to-dress body. She to-put-on suit/uniform student Chula(longkorn University).*

kràprọong sủ dam kàp sùea sủ khắaw . côj sàj nắngsủ . pàakkaa . lế? sàmut wáj naj kràpắw .

*Skirt colour black with/and shirt/blouse colour white. Joy to-put-in book, pen. and notebook to-keep inside bag.*

lếw long paj khầang lầang . khun mề khỏong côj . lế? phừi chaaj khỏong côj . phừi sủea . >

*Afterwards to-descend to-go side below. Mrs./mr. Mother of Joy. And older-brother/sister man of Joy. Older brother Sua >*

kamlang kin aahầan jùu lếw . khun phồ khỏong côj mậ jùu . >

*[auxiliary verb indicating action going on] To-eat food to-stay/to-be-busy already. Mrs./Mr. Father of Joy no/not to-stay/to-be-present. >*

thần òok paj tham-ngaan lếw .

*He to-go-out to-go to-work already.*

côj: sàwàtdii khâ khun mề . sàwàtdii phừi sủea . >

Joy: *Good morning [polite particle f.] Mr./Mrs. mother. Hello older-brother/sister Sua. >*

khun phồ paj tham-ngaan lếw ừ .

*Mr./Mrs. father to-go to-work already [question particle yes/no question].*

phừi sủea: ồj . taaj lếw . nóong côj tùen cháaw >

O.B. Sua: *Wow. To-die already (expression of surprise; slang). Younger-brother/sister to-wake-up morning/early >*

dậ dậj ừ . kềng cang leuj .

*To-can also [question particle yes/no question]. Capable really [modifying sentence particle].*

côj: mǎe . phǔi sǔea tǔen sǎaj pen rǔe plǎaw .

Joy: [expression of mild annoyance]. Older-brother/sister Sua to-wake-up late to-be-able-to [question particle yes/no question] not (nothing).

khun mǎe: côj . maa kin khǎaw kòon sì lǔuk .

Mother: Joy. To-come to-eat rice first.[incentive particle]child.

côj: mǎj mii weelaa léew khǎ . côj tǔong rǐp paj léew .

Joy: No/not to-have/to-be available time already [polite particle f.]. Joy (I) to-must to-hurry to-go already.

khun mǎe: côj cà khǐi mooteusaj paj rǔe . jàa leuij .

Mother: Joy to-shall to-ride motorcycle to-go [question particle yes/no question]. Don't [modifying sentence particle]

man antàraaj ná .

It dangerous [emphatic particle].

côj: mǎj pen raj . mǎj hǎn antàraaj leuij .

Joy: It doesn't matter (idiom). No/not see dangerous [modifying sentence particle]

cd 1b Vocabulary  
track 02

บท

bòt

1. chapter; lesson; 2. actor's lines;  
3. character (in a play, movie);  
4. footprint

เรียน

rian

1. to learn; 2. to report to a superior

บท เรียน

bòt rian

lesson

ที่

thīi

1. place, dwelling place; 2. space, site; 3. office, department; 4. spot, site, place; 5. space, place, room; 6. that, which (in clauses); 7. to, that (jindii thīi dǎj rúcàk - ยินดี ที่ได้รู้จัก) - nice to meet (get to know)

you

ที่ หนึ่ง

thīi nùeng

first

หนึ่ง

nùeng

one

บ้าน

bāan

house

บ้าน

ครอบครัว

kh rôopkhrua

family

จักรเพชร

càkráp hét, càkphét Thai family name (lit.: wheel of diamonds)

การ

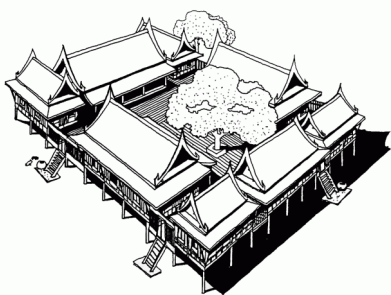
kaan

1. activity, task, work; 2. substativizing particle for dynamic verbs

การ สนทนา

kaan sǒnthánaa

conversation





นอน

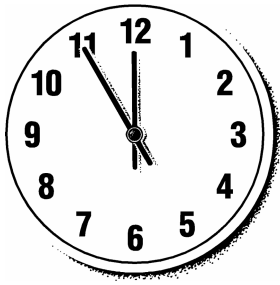


ตื่น



แม่

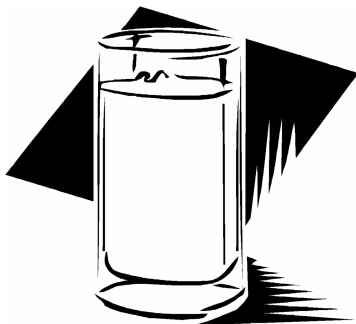
สนทนา	sǒnthánaa	to converse
จ้อย	côj	1. small, unimportant, negligible; 2. volubly, glibly, effusively (of speech); 3. nickname for girls
นอน	noon	to sleep
อยู่	jùu	1. to live, to reside; 2. to be present; 3. to be busy doing something (continuous tense particle)
แต่	têe	but
เขา	khǎw	he, she (3 <sup>rd</sup> person singular)
ต้อง	tông	to must
ไป	paj	to go
มหาวิทยาลัย	máhháawitthájaalaj	university
แล้ว	léew	already
จึง	cueng	therefore, consequently; so
มา	maa	to come
ปลุก	plùk	1. to awake (s.o.), to wake s.o. up; 2. to arouse
ตื่น	tùen	1. to wake up; to get up; 2. to be awake
ได้	dâj	to can, to may
แม่	mêe	mother
ฮะ, ฮะ	há; hâ	informal polite particle; variant of ครับ/คะ/ค่ะ
นะ	ná?, ná	mild incentive particle (modifying sentence particle)
แปด	pèet	eight
โมง	moung	o' clock (in 'it is 7 o' clock')
เช้า	cháaw *	morning
โ๊ะ	ố	expression of mild shock, surprise, annoyance: 'oh!'
ถ้า	thâa	if; in case
อย่าง	jàang	1. as, like; 2. sort
อย่าง นั้น	jàang nán	1. like that, as such; 2. a sort like that; 3. like it is
นั้น	nán	that; relative pronoun, and short-ened demonstrative pronoun



เวลา



อาบน้ำ



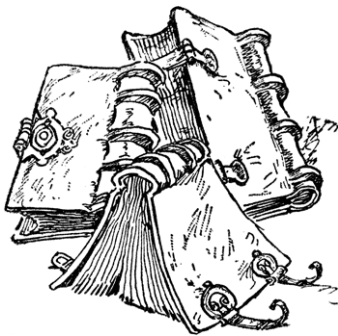
น้ำ

นั่น	nân	that; demonstrative pronoun
รีบ	rîp	to hurry, to hasten
คะ	khá	polite particle for women, mostly used in interrogative sentences
ค่ะ	khâ	polite particle for women, mostly used in affirmative sentences
มี	mii	1. to have, to possess, to own; 2. to be present; there is, there are; 3. to happen, come about, to occur; 4. to enjoy (prestige, rights)
สอบ	sòop	to examine, to test (often used as a noun: 'examination')
สิบ	sìp	ten
ลูก	lûuk	1. child; 2. classifier for small, round objects and fruits
ทำไม	thammaj	why
เมื่อ	mûea	1. once, when; 2. when; 3. at the time; 4. while
เมื่อวานนี้	mûea waan ní	yesterday
ไม่	mâj	no, not
นอน	noon	sleep
ทัน	than	1. on time; 2. to catch up (with); 3. prompt(ly); 4. 'there still is time to...'
ทันเวลา	than weelaa	to be on time
เวลา	weelaa	time
อาบน้ำ	àap náam	to bathe, to take a bath, to shower
น้ำ	náam	1. water; 2. juice (of fruits)
เร็ว	rew	1. fast; 2. (too) early
เร็ว ๆ (เร็ว เร็ว)	rew rew	fast, quick; 2. hasty, hurried
แหม	mǎe	expression of mild annoyance, surprise or indignation (real or feigned)
จะ	cà?, cà	to will, to shall; indicator of future tense
ทัน	than	in time
แน่	nĕe	certain





ห้อง น้ำ

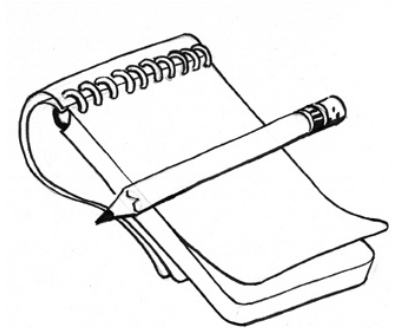


หนังสือ



กระเป๋

และ	lé?	and (such as in a sequence of time, or a logical order of cause and effect)
เข้า	khâw	1. to enter, to go in, to get in; 2. to join;
ใน	naj	in, inside
ห้อง	hông	room
น้ำ	náam	water
ห้อง น้ำ	hông náam	bathing room; toilet
อยู่	jùu	1. to stay, to remain; 2. to be (at, in, on); 3. to live, to dwell, to reside; 4. to exist; 5. to be living; 6. particle to indicate a continuous action; 7. to be busy doing ...
ใหญ่	jàj	large
ติด	tít	to be connected to; to stick; to glue
ด้วย	dûaj	1. also; 2. with
เช็ด	chét	to wipe, to wipe of, to wipe dry
เช็ด ตัว	chét tua	to wipe oneself of, to towel
ทา	thaa	1. to rub to smear on, to anoint; 2. to paint (ทา สี - thaa sǐi)
ครีม	khriim	cream (cosmetic)
หวี	wǐi	1. to comb; 2. comb
ผม	phǒm	1. hair (on the head); 2. I (man speaking)
ใส่	sàj	1. to load, to pack, to hold; 2. to wear, put on, have on (clothes); 3. to put in; 4. to fill; 5. to add; 6. to fix, to set, drive in (a nail); 7. to apply (make-up etc.)
ชุด	chút	suit, uniform, set of clothes
ชุด นัก ศึกษา	chút náksùeksǎa	student's uniform
จุฬาฯ	cùlaa	abbreviation for Chulalongkorn University (spoken language)
กระโปรง	kràproong	skirt
สีดำ	sǐi dam	black
เสื้อ	sûea	shirt, blouse
สีขาว	sǐi khǎaw	white



สมุด

หนังสือ

nǎngsǔe

book

ปากกา

pàakkaa

pen

สมุด

sàmut

notebook

ไว้

wáj

1. to keep, to preserve; 2. to uphold;  
3. to place, to put; to set, to lay; 4. to  
Grow (beard, hair); to keep (hair-  
style); 5. to keep, to maintain;  
6. auxiliary verb used after verbs of  
action (i.e. เก็บ (kèp - 'to keep'),

รักษา (ráksǎa - to maintain),ฝาก  
(fàak - to deposit, to place) to indi-  
cate that the action is done for future  
reference



อาหาร

ใส่ไว้

sàj wáj

put something into something with  
the intention to safely put it away

กระเป๋

kràpǎw

bag

ลง

long

to descent, to go down (stairs)

ชั้น

chán

1. floor; 2. class; 3, level; layer

ล่าง

lâang

lower; down, downstairs

ชั้นล่าง

chán lâang

first floor

คุณ

khun

1. You; 2. Mr., Sir; 3. Mrs., Madam

คุณแม่

khun mĕe

mother (respectful)

ของ

khǒong

1. of; belonging to; 2. thing

พี่

phīu

older sibling

ชาย

chaaj

man, boy

พี่ชาย

phīu chaaj

older brother

ทาน

thaan

to eat (polite, written language)

อาหาร

aahǎan

food

พ่อ

phôo

father

คุณพ่อ

khun phôo

father (respectful)

ท่าน

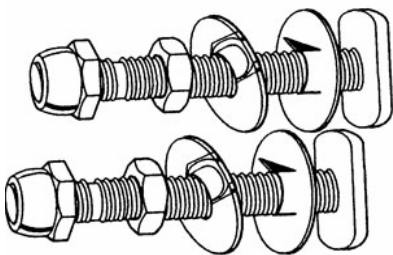
thân\*

1. You (very polite); he, she (very  
polite)

ออก

òok

1. out; 2. to go out; 3. to issue, to  
offer; 4. to put forth; 5. come of the  
press, publish; 6. to set off; 7. to  
start of, to get going



ของ

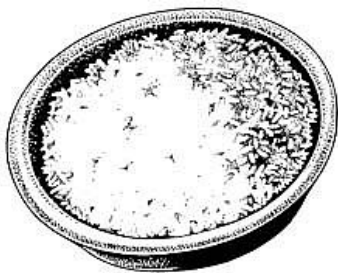
ไป

paj

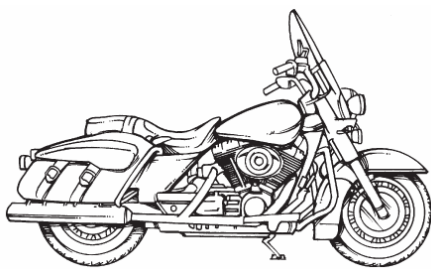
to go



คุณ พ่อ



ข้าว



มอเตอร์ไซด์

ทำ	tham	to do
งาน	ngaan	1. work; 2. party
ทำงาน	tham-ngaan	to work
แล้ว	léew	already
สวัสดิ์	sàwàtdii	good morning, good day, good afternoon, good night, hello, good bye
สวัสดิ์ ค่ะ	sàwàtdii khâ	good morning; good day etc. (woman speaking)
หรือ	rûe	1. or; 2. question particle for a yes/no question
โอย	óuj	expression of surprise, excitement
ตาย	taaj	to die
ตาย แล้ว	taaj léew	1. Uh oh!; O, jeez!; 2. dammit!
เก่ง	kèng	1. smart, capable, competent; 2. versatile; 3. be good at, be adept at
มาก	mâak	1. much, many; 2. very (adverb; as in ดีมาก dii mâak 'very good')
จริง	cing*	really, actually, indeed, truly, in fact
จ้ัง	cang	really, truly, indeed
เลย	leuj	1. really, indeed; 4. utterly, completely, entirely; 5. excessive, over; 2. to surpass, to exceed; 2. after; 3. to outstrip, to overtake
จ้ัง เลย	cang leuj	really indeed
เคย	kheuj	1. ever; 2. once; 3. to be accustomed to
สาย	săaj	late, too late
ข้าว	khâaw	rice
กิน ข้าว	kin khâaw	to eat rice; to eat
ก่อน	kòon	first
สิ	sì?, sì	incentive particle
มี	mii	1. to have; 2. there is, there are; 3. to consist of; 4. to happen
ต้อง	tông	must, shall, necessary, should, ought to



สาย

ขี่	khii	ride (horse, motorcycle, bicycle)
มอเตอร์ไซด์	moote <u>u</u> saj	motorcycle; motor-taxi
อีก	ìik	1. once more; again; 2 another; 3. more, still more; 4. besides, in addition
อย่า	jàa	don't! (warning or mild reproof)
อันตราย	antàraaj	dangerous
ไม่เป็นไร	mâj pen raj	it doesn't matter, it's no problem, it's all right; glad to be of service, with pleasure, you're welcome
เห็น	hěn	1.to see; 2. to think, to be of the opinion
ไม่เห็น	mâj hěn	(I) don't think, (I) am not of (that) opinion

### Translation of dialogue 7.2.

#### Joy, wake up!

Joy is still asleep. But she has to go to the university already. So her mother has come to wake her up.

Mother: Hey, Joy! Joy, sweetie, you have to wake up, you hear. It's eight o'clock already.  
Joy: Oh! Then I really have to get up fast. I've got an exam at ten o'clock.  
Mother: Oh dear, child! Why didn't you go to sleep early yesterday? Take a shower, quick.  
Joy: Oh please! I'll be on time for sure.

Joy gets up and hurriedly enters the bathroom. Joy takes a shower; she towels herself dry, applies cosmetic cream and combs her hair quickly. Joy dresses herself. She puts on her Chulalongkorn University student's uniform; a black skirt and a white blouse. Joy puts her books, pens and notebooks in her bag and goes downstairs. Joy's mother and Joy's older brother Sua are having breakfast already. Joy's father isn't there. He has gone to work already.

Joy: Good morning, mother. Hello brother. Has father gone to work already?  
Sua: Wow! What have we here!? Could you get out of bed this early? Very well done!  
Joy: Please come on, Sua! Don't you ever oversleep?  
Mother: Joy, come and have something to eat first, darling.  
Joy: I'm out of time. I've got to hurry already.  
Mother: Are you going to take a motor taxi? Don't do that. It's dangerous, you hear!  
Joy: That doesn't matter. I don't think it's dangerous at all.

## 7.3 Idioms

### 1. The polite final particle

Polite final particles are an inextricable part of Thai language and Thai manners. Polite particles can be used to make a statement polite, or instead of the word ‘yes’. They appear at the end of many sentences pronounced by the average Thai. Only the speech of the most exalted persons, such as the King, or the members of the Sangha (the Buddhist clergy) is devoid of polite final particles.

You have already encountered the two most common polite final particles; the male polite particle “ครับ”, and the female polite particles “ค่ะ” (for affirmative sentences) and “คะ” (for interrogative sentences). In the course of your study, you will discover some variants on these standard polite particles. In simple dictionaries, these variants are not mentioned. You’ll hear them spoken between your Thai friends, in movies, and you’ll find them written in modern Thai literature.

ครั้บ (khráap) -	Very polite; Male. Used by subordinates towards very high superiors. Is known to be used tongue-in-cheek between close friends and lovers.
ข่า (khǎa) -	Polite; Female. Used after someone’s name to attract the attention of a the person in question. Also used as an answer to a call; “Yes?” Used towards a lover, it indicated affection.
จ๊ะ (cá?, cá) -	Informal; Male and Female. Used by superiors to inferiors, and by parents to children. Used by lovers, it indicates affection.
จ้า (cǎa) -	Informal. Used after names of children, inferiors, friend and lovers. Used as an answer to a call by men and women (compare ข่า (khǎa)).
ฮะ; ฮึะ (há?, hâ) -	Short variant of both ครับ (khráp), ค่ะ (khá), and คะ (khâ). Used in informal speech towards inferiors and among equals. The first variant, (há, há?) is usually used by men (a glottal stop is often audible). The second variant (hâ- without stop) is mostly used by women.
ขอรับ (khǒoráp) -	Elegant version of ‘ครับ’, used by men towards superiors.
ครับผม (khrápphǒm) -	Politer version of ‘ครับ’. Used by men to superiors. Nowadays used more often than a few year ago.

There are other variants on the polite particle, which you will be introduced to in due time. Some of them are regional, like the Northern เจ้าข่า (câwkhǎa) and เจ้าคะ (câwkhâ), used in respectively interrogative and affirmative sentences by women.

### 2. Names, relation terms and functions used as personal pronouns

You already know that in Thai, nicknames are used as personal pronouns for the first, second and third person. If Joy talks about Nikki, she uses Nikki’s nickname. But also when Joy speaks to Nikki, she can use that nickname. To indicate herself, she uses her own nickname, Joy:

### นิกกี้ อยาก ไป ดูหนัง กับ จ้อย ไหม

níkkû jàak paj duu năng kàp cōj mǎj

Nikki (you) to-want to-go to-watch movie with Joy (I) [question particle]

Do you want to go watch a movie with me?

Between good friends, family members and lovers, the nickname is often used as a personal pronoun for the 1<sup>st</sup> and the 2<sup>nd</sup> person singular.

Kinship terms as พี่ (phî) - older brother or sister, น้อง (nóong) - younger brother or sister, พ่อ (phôo) - father, แม่ (mǎe) - mother, ป้า (pâa) - older sister of father or mother, ลุง (lung) - older brother of father or mother, อา (aa) - younger brother or sister of father, น้า (náa) - younger brother or sister of mother, ปู่ (pùu) - father's father, ย่า (jâa) - father's mother, ตา (taa) - mother's father and ยาย (jaaj) - mother's mother can also be used as personal pronouns (1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person) either or not preceded by the honorific คุณ (khun - Mr./Mrs.).

Formerly there were also other terms used for the honorific คุณ (khun). These included: นาง (naang) - Mrs., นาย (naaj) - Mr., and นางสาว (naangsǎaw) - Miss, which is shortened น.ส..

Nowadays, these are only used in written form in official documents. นาย (naaj) is also a term for 'you', used among young men, although the use of this word is wearing away a bit.

Persons who hold a profession with a certain status, like a teacher or a university professor, are often addressed to by the name of their profession, with or without the additional honorific คุณ (khun) or ท่าน (thân):

(คุณ) ครู	(khun) khruu	teacher; schoolmaster
(ท่าน) อาจารย์	(thân) aacaan	professor, lecturer, master

Military personnel is addressed by rank in formal situations, with or without the additional คุณ (khun) or ท่าน (thân):

(ท่าน) ผู้กอง	(thân) phûukoong	Commander
ผู้หมวด	phûu mùat	Captain
จ่า	càa	Sergeant

### 3. ไม่เป็นไร (mâj pen raj) and บ่เป็นยัง (bò pen jang).

In Thailand you will often hear the phrase: 'ไม่เป็นไร' (mâj pen raj)...

'ไม่เป็นไร' (mâj pen raj) is, as many foreigners love to say, the Thai philosophy of life. The phrase means 'it doesn't matter', 'everything is fine', 'don't mention it', 'pleased to be of service'. The phrase has survived the junta government of the nineties, which used it a lot along with the expression ไม่มีปัญหา - mǎj mii panhǎa - there are no problems), while at that time there were a lot of problems. 'ไม่เป็นไร' (mâj pen raj) is used in situations in which one, by making another remark or by getting angry, could lose face. Do you bump into someone by accident and you excuse yourself, you will be answered with: 'ไม่เป็นไร' (mâj pen raj). Has someone forgotten something, and does he offer his apologies? 'ไม่เป็นไร' (mâj pen raj). In the

dialogue, Joy's mother advises Joy against taking a motorcycle taxi to the university. But for Joy, this is 'ไม่ เป็นไร' (mâj pen raj). She has no problems with motorcycle taxis. She'll take one anyway.

The same expression in Isan (Northeastern Thai) is บ่ เป็นจั่ง (bò pen jang), and is sometimes used by Bangkokians and other non-Isan people, too, because it sounds so friendly.

## 7.4 Writing I: The consonants ก - ฦ

According to legend, the Thai alphabet has been designed in the 13<sup>th</sup> century by King Ramkhamhaeng the Great. He developed the letters from the italic Khmer script, which, in turn, was derived from the Indian Pali script. The alphabet has 44 consonants and 32 vowels and diphthongs. With the help of the 'Writing'-paragraphs you will gradually learn how to write and read. The faster you'll be alphabetized in Thai, the faster the language will become completely accessible to you, and the faster you will learn to speak Thai well.

You should initially concentrate on the shape and the pronunciation of the consonant. Forget for the moment that all dialogues have been written in Thai script from the beginning of the course. This has been done to offer you a reference to everything you have learned until you master the script completely.

The Thai script is a little more intricate than for instance the Latin and Cyrillic scripts, but it is quite possible to master it completely in a couple of weeks. After lesson 12, you'll be able to read the dialogues in the first lessons from the Thai script effortlessly.

Every consonant in the Thai script has a name. The letter 'ก', for instance, is called 'กไก (koo kàj)', after 'ไก' ('kàj'); 'chicken'; the letter 'ข' is called 'ขไข (khǎo khàj)', after 'ไข' (khàj); 'egg', and so on<sup>9</sup>. Because of the fact that many consonants, when pronounced out of context, sound identical or almost identical to each other, names of streets and persons, difficult words, etc., are spelled by mentioning their respective letters and the word after which the letter is named.

Thai consonants are divided in three classes: Low Class, Middle Class, and High Class. The class of the first consonant of a syllable is one of the factors which determines the tone in which that syllable is pronounced.

Many consonants are pronounced differently from their original pronunciation when they are pronounced in a final position. Plosives (p, ph, t, th, k, kh, c, ch) become unreleased stops (p', t', k'), as do all alveolar fricatives (all 's'-es; -ซ, ศ, ษ, ส - are pronounced t' in final position). Palatal and lateral approximants, as well as trills (j (ฦ), l, r) become nasals (n). Other consonants simply don't occur or are never pronounced at the end of a syllable (ฝ, ห, ฮ).

Over the next few chapters, you'll gradually get more acquainted with the Thai writing system. Again: It is very important to learn it. You'll never be able to speak Thai fluently if you are unable to read the language. And by learning the script, you'll be able to deduct the correct

---

<sup>9</sup> Note for total clarity: If you write 'ก', you haven't written the word 'chicken', but just the letter which is named after the word 'chicken'. 'Chicken' (kàj) is written: 'ไก'.

pronunciation of 99,9 % of all new Thai words you encounter in any text (yes, there are a few exceptions).

Consonant	Name of the Consonant	Pronunciation at initial position of a syllable	Pronunciation at final position of a syllable
ก	ก ไก่ (koo-kàj)	k (unaspirated)	k' (unreleased)
ข	ข ไข่ (khǎo-khàj)	kh (aspirated)	k' (unreleased)
ช	ช ชวด (khǎo-khùat)	No longer in use	No longer in use
ค	ค ควาย (khoo-khwaaj)	kh (aspirated)	k' (unreleased)
ต	ต คน (khoo-khon)	No longer in use	No longer in use
ฌ	ฌ ระฆัง (khoo-rákhǎng)	kh (aspirated)	k' (unreleased)
ง	ง งู (ngoo-nguu)	ng	ng
จ	จ จาน (coo-caan)	c (unaspirated)	t' (unreleased)
ฉ	ฉ ฉิ่ง (chǎo-chìng)	ch (aspirated)	t' (unreleased)
ช	ช ช้าง (choo-cháang)	ch (aspirated)	t' (unreleased)
ซ	ซ โซ่ (soo-sòu)	s	Only with <i>kaaran</i> (กะ) in loan words
ฌ	ฌ เฌอ (choo-cheu)	ch (aspirated)	Does not occur

### The meaning of the names of the consonants:

ไก่	‘chicken’
ไข่	‘egg’



ขวด (now written as: ‘ขวด’)	‘bottle’
ควาย	‘water buffalo’
คน (now written as ‘คน’)	‘man’; ‘person’
ระฆัง	‘temple bell’
งู	‘snake’
จาน	‘plate’
ฉิ่ง	‘cymbals’
ช้าง	‘elephant’
โซ่	‘chain’
เฌอ	‘tree’

## 7.5 Exercises

### Exercise 1

After reading dialogue 7.2, answer the following questions in Thai. Write your answers in the transcription script:

1. Does Joy wake up on time?
2. Who wakes her up?
3. What must Joy do quickly?
4. At what time does Joy have an exam?
5. What does Joy take with her in her bag?
6. Is Sua awake already?
7. Does Joy have time for breakfast?
8. Why doesn't Joy's mother want her daughter to take a motorcycle taxi to the university?
9. What does Joy think about that?
10. Does Joy have a father?

### Exercise 2

After reading dialogue 7.2 carefully again, answer the following questions in Thai. Write your answers in the transcription script:

1. Why does Joy have to hurry?
2. To which school does she go?
3. Is Joy's brother older or younger than Joy? How do you know?
4. What does Joy do in the bathroom?
5. Why does Joy have to dress in a university uniform? Explain your answer.
6. How does Sua tease his sister?

7. What does the Chakraphet family eat for breakfast in the morning?
8. Where is Joy's father?
9. Do you think that Joy's mother is protective of Joy? How do you know?
10. Has Joy taken a motorcycle taxi to the university before? How do you know?

### Exercise 3

Write down the letters you have learned in this lesson a couple of times. Pronounce the sound of the letter and its name every time you write it down. Do this until you have the feeling you know the letters by heart, and then write them down again, twenty to thirty times. After that, pronounce each letter again while looking at its form. Don't forget to pronounce the difference between the aspirated and the non-aspirated sounds. After the pronunciation exercise, write each letter down again a few dozen times:

ก ข ฃ ค ฅ ฆ

ง จ ฎ ช ฌ ญ

## 7.6 Answers to exercise 1

*(At this stage, you don't have to be able yet to read the Thai script. The answers are also given in Thai script for later reference.)*

1. No, Joy doesn't wake up on time. She wakes up late.  
๑. ไม่ใช่ จ้อย ตื่นไม่ทันเวลา เธอตื่นสาย  
1. māj chāj . cōj māj tūen than weelaa . theu tūen sǎaj .
2. Joy's mother wakes Joy.  
๒. แม่ของจ้อยปลุกจ้อย  
2. mēe khǒong cōj plùk cōj .

3. Joy has to get up quickly and take a bath.  
๓. จ้อย ต้อง ตื่น เร็ว แล้ว อาบน้ำ  
3. cōj tōng tūen rew léew àap náam .
4. Joy has a test (an exam or test paper) at ten o' clock in the morning.  
๔. จ้อย มี สอบ ตอน ลิบ โมง เช้า  
4. cōj mii thés (thét) toon sîp mōong cháaw .
5. Joy puts her books, notebooks and pens into her bag.  
๕. จ้อย เก็บ หนังสือ สมุด และ ปากกา ไว้ ใน กระเป๋า  
5. cōj kèp nāngsǔe sàmut lé? pàakkaa wáj naj kràpǎw .
6. Yes, Sua is awake already.  
๖. ใช่ เลือ ตื่น แล้ว  
6. châj . sǔea tūen léew .
7. No, Joy has no time to eat breakfast.  
๗. ไม่ใช่ จ้อย ไม่ มี เวลา กิน อาหาร เช้า  
7. mâj châj . cōj mâj mii weelaa kin aahaan cháaw .
8. Joy's mother thinks it is dangerous.  
๘. แม่ ของ จ้อย เห็น ว่า มัน อันตราย  
8. mēe khǒong cōj hǎn wāa man antàraaj .
9. Joy doesn't think it's dangerous at all.  
๙. จ้อย เห็น ว่า มัน ไม่ อันตราย เลย  
9. cōj hǎn wāa man mâj antàraaj leuj .
10. Yes, Joy's dad has already gone to work.  
๑๐. ใช่ คุณ พ่อ ของ จ้อย ไป ทำงาน แล้ว  
10. châj . khun phōo khǒong cōj paj thamngaan léew .



# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 8

### Welcome

#### ยินดี ต้อนรับ

- 8.1 Introduction
- 8.2 Dialogue
- 8.3 Grammar
- 8.4 Writing II: The consonants ญ - ถ
- 8.5 Exercises
- 8.6 Answers to exercise 1





## 8.1 Introduction

In this lesson, some attention is given to spoken Thai, but the lion's share of the subject matter will be about some phenomena that occur within Thai grammar, which foreign students might find alien. Although basically a Subject-Verb-Object Language, you have seen that in many cases the word order within a Thai sentence derives from the word order in English and other European languages. Apart from that, there exist a large number of idiomatic expressions, which must be learned by heart. In this lesson you'll get closer acquainted with some of the most striking and most often used expressions in the Thai language. During the rest of the course, many more will follow. Later, when you know more idioms, sayings and locutions, you'll be able to play with them subtly, changing them according to location and context, and use them to make language jokes, as the Thai like to do themselves.

In the dialogue, a young traveler arrives at Suvarnabhumi, Bangkok's International Airport.

cd 1b

track 03

## 8.2 Dialogue

Welcome

๘.๒. บทสนทนา

ยินดีต้อนรับ



[ยินดีต้อนรับ]

ที่ทำ อากาศยาน สุวรรณภูมิ วินเชนท วอล์ฟ ให้ หนังสือ เดินทาง กับ เจ้าหน้าที่  
ตรวจ คน เข้า เมือง

เจ้าหน้าที่: สวัสดี ครับ

วินเชนท วอล์ฟ: สวัสดี ครับ ท่าน

เจ้าหน้าที่: คุณ เป็น คน เนเธอร์แลนด์ ใช่ ไหม ครับ  
 วินเซนต์ วอล์ฟ: ครับ ผม  
 เจ้าหน้าที่: คุณ มา ที่ เมือง ไทย ก็ วัน ครับ  
 วินเซนต์ วอล์ฟ: มา สาม อาทิตย์ ครับ ผม มา เยี่ยมญาติ ด้วย  
 เจ้าหน้าที่: คุณ พูด ภาษา ไทย เก่ง นะ ครับ มา บ่อย ไหม ครับ  
 วินเซนต์ วอล์ฟ: ผม มา เที่ยว เมือง ไทย สอง ครั้ง แล้ว ครับ แต่ผม พูด ภาษา  
 ไทย ยัง ไม่ เก่ง เท่าไร ครับ ผม เพิ่ง เริ่ม เรียน ภาษา ไทย  
 ครับ  
 เจ้าหน้าที่: ยินดี ต้อนรับ ครับ เรียบ ร้อย แล้ว เชิญ เลย ครับ

### Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 8.2.

jindii tōon-ráp .

*Happy to-welcome.*

thûi thâa aakàatsàjaan sùwannáphuum . winseên woof hâj năngsǔe deun thaang kàp câw nâathûi  
 truat khon khâw mueang .

*At/in airport Suwarnabhumi . Vincent Wolf to-give book to-walk way/road with/to police(man)  
 border.*

câw nâathûi: sàwàtdii khráp .

*Officer: Good day/morning/afternoon etc. [polite particle m.].*

winseên woof: sàwàtdii khráp thân .

*Vincent Wolf: Good day/morning/afternoon etc. [polite particle m.] You/Sir/Madam.*

câw nâathûi: khun pen khon neetheuleen chây mǎj khráp .

*Officer: You to-be person Netherlands yes [question particle][polite particle m.].*

winseên woof: khráp phǎm .

*Vincent Wolf: [polite particle m.]<sup>1</sup> I (man speaking)<sup>2</sup> {<sup>1</sup> and <sup>2</sup>: formal polite 'yes' for men}.*

câw nâathûi: khun maa thûi mueang thaj kù wan khráp .

*Officer: You to-come to-travel in/at land Thai how-many day [polite particle m.].*

winseên woof: phǎm maa sǎam aathít khráp . phǎm maa jîam jâat dūaj.

*Vincent Wolf: I (man speaking) to-come to-visit family three week [polite particle m.]. I  
 to-come to-visit family also.*

câw nâathûi: khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kèng ná khráp . maa bòj >

*Officer: You to-speak language Thai able [emphasis particle] [polite particle m.].  
 to-come to-travel often*

mǎj khráp .

*[question particle][polite particle m.].*



winseen woof: phǒm maa thĭaw mueang thaj sǒong khráng lĕew >  
*Vincent Wolf: I (m.) to-come to-make-pleasure-tour country Thai two occasion already >*

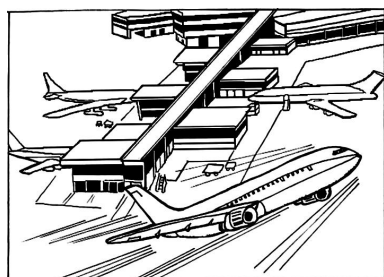
khráp . tĕe phǒm phūut phaasǎa thaj jang mǎj kĕng  
*[polite part. m.]. But I (m.) to-speak language Thai still no/not skilful >*

thāwraj khráp . phǒm phūeng rĕum rian phaasǎa >  
*so-much/how-much [polite part. m.]. I (m.) just to-start to-learn language >*

thaj khráp.  
*Thai [polite particle m.].*

cāw nāathĭi: jindĭi tōon rǎp khráp . rĭap rǒoj lĕew . cheun leuj khráp >  
*Officer: Happy to-welcome [polite particle m.]. To-be-ready already. Please/to-  
 invite to-pass-through [polite particle m.]*

cd 1b Vocabulary  
 track 04



ท่าอากาศยาน



ชายแดน

สนทนา	sǒnthánaa	to converse, to talk to, to talk with
การ สนทนา	kaan sǒnthánaa	dialogue, conversation
ที่	thĭi	1. at, in, on; 2. particle for the formation of ordinal numbers; 3. place, site; 4. land, soil; 5. that (relative pronoun); 6. that, which (conjunction); 7. office, department
ท่า	thāa	harbor, pier
อากาศยาน	aakàatsàjaan	airplane; aircraft
ท่าอากาศยาน	thāa aakàatsàjaan	airport
ชายแดน	chaaj dĕen	border, frontier
สุวรรณภูมิ	sùwannáphuum	Suvarnabhumi, Bangkok's international airport
ให้	hāj	to give
หนังสือ เดินทาง	nǎngsǔe deun thaang	passport
แก่	kĕe (kĕ, kà)	1. to; 2. for; 3. old, aged; 4. override; 5. strong (tea)
เจ้าหน้าที่ ตรวจ	cāw nāathĭi truat.	Immigration Officer;
คน เข้า เมือง	khon khāw mueang	Customs official;
สวัสดิ์	sàwàtdĭi	good morning/afternoon/evening/night; hello; bye



พูด



ญาติ



ผม

ครับ

ท่าน

คุณ

เป็น

คน

เนเธอร์แลนด์

ใช่

ไหม

ใช่ไหม

ครับ ผม

มา

เมือง

เมืองไทย

กี่

วัน

สาม

อาทิตย์

เยี่ยม

ญาติ

พูด

ภาษา

ภาษาไทย

เก่ง

เที่ยว

บ่อย

kh ráp

thân\*

khun

pen

khon

neethelæn

châj

măj

châj mǎj

kh ráp phǒm

maa

mueang

mueang thaj

kìi

wan

săam

aathít

jîam

jâat\*

phûut

phaasăa

phaasăa thaj

kèng

thîaw

bòj

polite particle (man speaking)

1. you (polite); 2. he, she; 3. Sir, Madam

you (polite-neutral)

1. to be; 2. to be able to; 3. to be alive; alive

person, man, woman, human being

The Netherlands

yes

question particle for general questions

yes, isn't it?; that's right, isn't it?

formal polite particle (m.)

1. to come; 2. to arrive; 3. direction indicator towards speaker or subject

1. country; 2. city

Thailand

how many

day

three

week

1. to visit, to call on, to see (persons); 2. excellent, brilliant, supreme, outstanding family

1. to talk, to speak; 2. to say language

Thai (the Thai language)

1. be good at, be adept at; 2. be expert in skilled; 3. to be able, capable, competent; 4. to be clever

1. to go out; 2. to go on a trip; to go on a holiday

often, regularly



เมืองไทย

ผม	phǒm	I (man speaking)
มาเที่ยว	maa thîaw	to come and visit (a place)
สอง	sǒong	two
ครั้ง	khráng	time; occasion
ยัง	jang	1. still, yet; 2. more, still more; 3. besides, in addition to; 4. “ยัง” (as negation)- “not yet”
ไม่	mâj	no, not
เท่าไร	thâwraj	1. how many, how much; 2. that much
เพิ่ง	phêung	just, just now (short/spoken language for เพิ่ง)
เริ่ม	rêum	to start, to begin
เรียน	rian	to learn
ยินดี ต้อนรับ	jindii tôn ráp	welcome (idiom)
เรียบร้อย	riap róoj	1. to be ready; 2. to be in order; 3. to be neat, to be tidy; 4. to be well-mannered
เชิญ	cheun	1. to invite; 2. please, go ahead
ผ่าน	phàan	to pass, to cross; 2. undergo, experience, go through; 3. by, after, through, by means of

## Translation of dialogue 8.2.

### Welcome

At Suvarnabhumi Airport, Vincent Wolf hands over his passport to the immigration officer.

Officer:	Good morning, Sir.
Vincent Wolf:	Good morning, Sir.
Officer:	You are a Dutchman, aren't you?
Vincent Wolf:	That's right, Sir.
Officer:	How many days will you stay in Thailand?
Vincent Wolf:	I'll stay for three weeks, Sir. I've come to visit my family, too.
Officer:	You speak Thai well. Do you come often?
Vincent Wolf:	I have visited Thailand twice already. But I don't speak Thai that well, yet. I've just started learning Thai.
Officer:	Welcome. Everything's in order. Please pass through.

**cd 1b track 05 Basic conversation: Rehearsal and additional constructions.**

I (man speaking)	ผม	phǒm
I (woman speaking)	ดิฉัน	dichǎn
I (woman and man; informal)	ฉัน	chǎn
Hello	สวัสดี	sàwàtdii
Good day (man speaking)	สวัสดี ครับ	sàwàtdii khráp
Good day (woman speaking)	สวัสดีค่ะ	sàwàtdii khâ
My name is... (man speaking)	ผม ชื่อ	phǒm chûe
My name is... (woman speaking)	ดิฉัน ชื่อ	dichǎn chûe
I come from...	ผม / ดิฉัน มา จาก ...	phǒm / dichǎn maa càak ...
I'm going to...	ผม / ดิฉัน (จะ) ไป ...	phǒm / dichǎn (cà) paj ...
I live in... / stay at...	ผม / ดิฉัน อยู่ ที่ ...	phǒm / dichǎn jùu thî ...
I've come on holiday in... (man speaking)	ผม มา เที่ยว ที่ ...	phǒm maa thîaw thî ...
I've come on holiday in... (woman speaking)	ดิฉัน มา เที่ยว ที่ ...	dichǎn maa thîaw thî ...

### 8.3 Grammar. Repetition and addition: The Thai sentence.

- In principle, Thai has the same word order within a sentence as English: Subject-Verb-Object (direct or indirect):  
I hit him: ผม ตี เขา - phǒm tii khǎw. I give him: ผม ให้ เขา - phǒm hâi khǎw.
- Because Thai is a tonal language, there is less opportunity to indicate stress with intonation, or to add a rising intonation to an interrogative sentence, like in English. (Intonation *does* exist in spoken Thai, but at this stage you don't have to pay attention to it, yet.)  
An interrogative sentence is indicated by means of a question particle. The question particle appears at the end of the actual sentence, in front of the polite particle. Two fundamental particles can be distinguished: ไหม (mǎj, which is a question particle for open questions) and หรือ (rûe, which is a particle for questions on which one expects either a 'yes' or a 'no' for an answer):

เขา เป็น คน ดี ไหม	khǎw pen khon dii mǎj
He to-be person good [question p. (mǎj)]	'Is he a good man?'
เขา เป็น คน ดี หรือ	khǎw pen khon dii rûe
He to-be person good [question p. (rûe)]	'Are you sure that he is a good man?'

- A supposition, which will almost certainly be acknowledged, is expressed in a question with the question particle ใช่ไหม - chǎi mǎj - 'yes [question particle].

เขาเป็น คน ดี ใช่ไหม	khǎw pen khon dii châi mǎi
He-to-be person good [question p. (châi mǎi)]	‘He is a good man, isn’t he?’

4. In a sentence in which there is a direct object as well as an indirect object (or recipient), the indirect object commonly follows directly behind the direct object:

เขาให้หนังสือเดินทางเจ้าหน้าที่ตรวจคนเข้าเมือง  
khăw hâi năngsŭe deun thaang câw nâathî truat khon khâw mueang  
He to-give passport official/officer to-check person to-enter country  
He gives his passport to the immigration officer.

To emphasize the act of giving, like in dialogue 7.2, the following construction can be used: Place the word **ให้** (hâj) - 'to give', in front of the direct object, and the word **กับ** (kàp, kà) - 'with', 'to', or **แถม** (kè, kà) - 'to' in front of the indirect object (recipient):

เขาให้ หนังสือเดินทาง กับเจ้าหน้าที่ ตรวจคนเข้าเมือง  
khăw hâi năngsue deun thaang kàp (kà) câw nâathîu truat khon khăw mueang  
He to-give passport *with/to* official/officer to-check person to-enter country  
He gives his passport to the immigration officer.

เขาให้ หนังสือเดินทาง แก่ เจ้าหน้าที่ ตรวจคนเข้าเมือง  
khǎw hâi nǎngsue deun thaang k<sup>h</sup>èe (kà) câw nǎathîu truat khon khâw mueang  
He to-give passport to official/officer to-check person to-enter country  
He gives his passport to the immigration officer.

Note: The words ‘กั๊บ’ and ‘ແກ້’ are both often pronounced as ‘กะ’ (kà) in common spoken language.

5. The word **เท่าไร\*** (thâwràj) means: ‘how much’ in, for example, the expression: **ราคาเท่าไร** (raakhaa thâwràj) - price how much (‘how much does it cost’). In a negation, **เท่าไร** (thâwràj) means ‘so much’. See for example the following sentences:

ภาพนี้สวยไหม	phâap nîi sǔaj mǎj
picture this beautiful [question particle]	Is this picture beautiful?

ภาพนี้ไม่สวยเท่าไร	phâap nîu mâj sǔaj thâwraṅ
picture this no/not beautiful so-much	This picture is not so beautiful.

คุณ มี เงิน ไหม	khun mii ngeun mǎj
you to-have money [question particle]	Do you have money?

ไม่ มาก เท่าไร	mâj mâak thâwràj
no/not much so-much	Not so much.

## Idiomatic greetings

**ยินดี ต้อนรับ** (jindii tôn ráp) means ‘welcome’. One often sees it written on wooden signs at the entrance of shops, hotels, beach clubs and nightclubs. The spoken expression is encour-

tered a bit more rarely, but when spoken out loud, it means of course more.

กิน ข้าว แล้ว หรือ ยัง (kin khâaw léew rŭe jang) means, literally, ‘have you eaten already, or not?’

In the countryside you will be regularly greeted with these words. Don’t take them too literally, because if you answer ‘no’, there is a big chance that you’ll be invited for lunch. In fact, the phrase is a greeting, a word of welcome, and mostly more sincerely meant than ยินดี

ต้อนรับ (jindii tôn ráp), which sounds rather more formal even if pronounced to you personally.

สบาย ดี หรือ (sàbaaj dii rŭe) means something like ‘Are you fine?’, ‘Everything all right?’ As an answer, a confirmative answer is expected: สบาย ดี (sàbaaj dii). ‘I am fine’, ‘all is well’.

## 8.4 Writing II. The consonants ญ - ญ

Consonant	Name of the Consonant	Pronunciation at initial position of a syllable	Pronunciation at final position of a syllable
ญ	ญ - ญิง joo - jŭng	j	n
ฎ	ฎ - ชฎา doo - chádaa	d	t’ (unreleased)
ฏ	ฏ - ปฏัก too - pàtàk	t (unaspirated)	t’ (unreleased)
ฐ	ฐ - ฐาน thoo - thǎan	th (aspirated)	t’ (unreleased)
ฑ	ฑ - มณฑล thoo - monthol	th (aspirated) or d	t’ (unreleased)
ฒ	ฒ - ผู้เฒ่า thoo - phŭuthâw	th (aspirated)	t’ (unreleased)
ณ	ณ - เณร noo - neen	n	n
ด	ด - เด็ก doo - dèk	d	t’ (unreleased)
ต	ต - เต่า too - tàw	t (unaspirated)	t’ (unreleased)
ถ	ถ - ถุง thoo - thŭng	th (aspirated)	t’ (unreleased)

### The meaning of the names of the consonants:

หญิง	girl, woman
ชฎา	Thai theatrical crown
ปถุ๊ก	goad
ฐาน	pedestal
มณโฑ	name of the spouse of King Thosakan (Dasakanth or Rawana); the ten headed demon from the ‘Ramayana’ (or ‘Ramakian’, as the Thai version of the epic is called).
ผู้เฒ่า	old man
เณร	Buddhist novice; young monk
เด็ก	child
เต่า	turtle
ถุง	bag, sack

## 8.5 Exercises

### Exercise 1

After reading dialogue 8.2, answer the following questions in Thai. Write your answers in the transcription script:

1. What is the name of Bangkok International Airport? (กรุงเทพฯ - krungthêep - Bangkok)
2. Is Vincent polite to the immigration officer? (สุภาพ - sùphâap - polite)
3. How does the immigration officer know that Vincent is a Dutchman?
4. How long will Vincent stay in Thailand? (นานเท่าไร - naan thâwràj - how long)
5. What is Vincent going to do in Thailand?
6. Is the policeman friendly to? (พูดอย่างกันเอง - phûut pen kan eeng - to speak friendly, informally)
7. Does Vincent speak Thai well?
8. How does the immigration officer welcome Vincent to Thailand?

Translate the following sentences. Write your answers down in the transcription script:

1. Good afternoon, Sir/Madam. (use the polite particle)
2. I am an Englishman.

3. I don't speak Thai well, yet.
4. Welcome Sir/Madam.
5. I come to Thailand often.
6. My name is Vincent.
7. I've come to visit my family.
8. You may pass through.

## Exercise 2

Put these sentences in the right order, and translate:

1. neetheleen maa phǒm thîaw bǒj bǒj thîu
2. pen thaj khon phǒm
3. phaasǎa thaj kèng phǒm mǎj phûut jang
4. ráp jindii tôn thaj mueang thîu
5. khráp sàwàtdii thân
6. aakàatsàjaan thîu mueang pen thaj thāa sùwannáphuum
7. chaaj tamrùat dēen thaj khon pen
8. jām maa winseēn thîu thaj mueang jāt

Fill in (a word may be used more than once):

jindii	thaj	phûut	bǒj bǒj	mueang	sǒong khráng
phûut	chaaj	maa	dēen	jāt	
jang	thîaw	thîu	phǒm	mǎj	

1. winseēn maa thîu mueang thai ... lēew
2. tamrùat ... .. pen ... thaj
3. ... tôn ráp ... mueang thaj
4. ... maa thîu mueang thaj ...
5. ... maa jām ...
6. phǒm ... .. mueang thaj
7. phǒm ... phaasǎa thaj ... mǎj dāj
8. khun ... thîaw mueang thaj ...

## Exercise 3

Write down the letters you have learned in this lesson a couple of times. Start at the highest or left-most little circle (หัว - hǔa). Pronounce the sound of the letter and its name every time you write it down. Do this until you have the feeling you know the letters by heart, and then write them down again, twenty to thirty times. After that, pronounce each letter again while looking at its form. Don't forget to pronounce the difference between the aspirated and the non-aspirated sounds. After the pronunciation exercise, write each letter down again a few dozen times.

The letters จ-ญ (joo jǐng) and the ฐ-ฎ (thǒo thǎan) exist of two parts. Start with the upper part, and put the lower part under it later. In writing each letter, relax your hand, and put your pen on the paper in the same way as you do when you write your name.



บ บ ฎ จ ฑ

ฒ ณ ด ต ถ

## 8.6 Answers to exercise 1

1. The airport in Bangkok is called Suwarnabhumi.  
๑. ท่าอากาศยาน ของ กรุงเทพฯ ชื่อ สุวรรณภูมิ  
1. thâa aakaàtsàjaan khǒong krungthêep chûe sùwannáphuum
2. Yes, he talks politely.  
๒. ใช่ เขา พูด สุภาพ  
2. chây khǎw phûut sùphâap
3. He has seen Vincent's passport already.  
๓. ท่าน เห็น หนังสือ เดินทาง ของ วินเซนต์ แล้ว  
3. thân hên nǎngsǔe deun thaang khǒong winseen léew
4. Vincent stays for three weeks.  
๔. วินเซนต์ มา อยู่ สาม อาทิตย์  
4. winseen maa jùu sǎam aathít
5. Vincent has come to visit his family.  
๕. วินเซนต์ มา เยี่ยมญาติ  
5. winseen maa jîam jâat
6. Yes, the policeman speaks friendly.  
๖. ใช่ ตำรวจ พูด อย่าง ก็นเอง  
6. chây . tamrùat phûut jàang kan eeng

7. Vincent doesn't speak Thai very well, yet.

๗. วินเซนต์ พูด ภาษา ไทย ยัง ไม่ เก่ง

7. winseən phûut phaasǎa thaj jang mâj kèng

8. He says: 'Welcome'.

๘. ท่าน บอก: “ยินดี ต้อนรับ”

8. thân bòok: 'jindii tòn ráp'

### Translation of the sentences

1. sàwàtdii khráp/khâ

๑. สวัสดี ครับ /ค่ะ

2. díchǎn/phǒm pen khon neetheuleen

๒. ดิฉัน / ผม เป็น คน เนเธอร์แลนด์

3. díchǎn/phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj jang mâj kèng

๓. ดิฉัน / ผม พูด ภาษา ไทย ยัง ไม่ เก่ง

4. jindii tòn ráp khâ/khráp .

๔. ยินดี ต้อนรับ ค่ะ / ครับ

5. díchǎn/phǒm maa thîi muang thaj bòj bòj

๕. ดิฉัน / ผม มา เมือง ไทย บ่อย บ่อย (บ่อย ๆ)

6. phǒm chûe winseən woof

๖. ผม ชื่อ วินเซนต์ วอล์ฟ

7. phǒm maa jîam jâat

๗. ผม มา เข้าม ญาติ

8. cheun leuj khâ/khráp

๘. เชิญ เลย ค่ะ / ครับ

# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 9

### Meeting family at the airport

#### มา รับ ญาติ ที่ สนาม บิน

- 9.1 Introduction
- 9.2 Dialogue
- 9.3 Idioms
- 9.4 Grammar
- 9.5 Cultural notes
- 9.6 Writing III: The consonants ท - ฎ
- 9.7 Theoretical overview of the five tones in Thai
- 9.8 Exercises
- 9.9 Answers to exercises 1 and 2





## 9.1 Introduction

Bangkok's Suvarnabhumi Airport (the name is pronounced 'sùwannáphum') is one of the most important air traffic hubs in Asia. Every year, tens of millions of travelers touch down at Suvarnabhumi; either arriving at their destination, or to board a connecting flight to an Asian, European or American city. Suvarnabhumi is also a transshipment airport for millions of tons of goods per annum. For most travelers, Suvarnabhumi Airport is the first impression they get of Thailand. It is an easily accessible airport with excellent road connections to the most important tourism- and business centers in Bangkok, and it has air connections to many provincial capitals. The arrival hall is large, modern and luxurious. After you have collected your luggage and passed through customs, you may rest for a while in one of the many bars and restaurants at the airport, before continuing your journey by bus or by taxi to one of the bustling centers of Bangkok.

In this lesson you'll learn some kinship terms. Moreover, you'll of course enlarge your active practical vocabulary. But especially your knowledge of Thai grammar will be refreshed and extended. You'll learn more about the art of negating, and you'll learn how to express yourself towards friends and family members in a practical, informal manner.

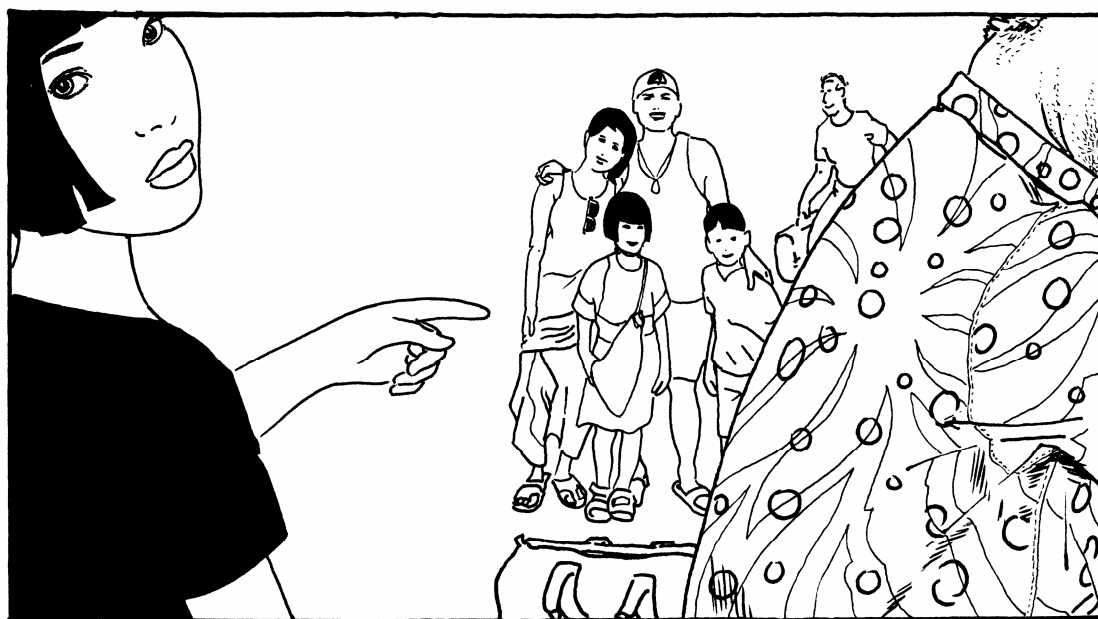
cd 1b  
track 6

## 9.2 Dialogue

Meeting family at the airport

๙.๒. บทสนทนา

มา รับ ญาติ ที่ สนาม บิน



[มา รับ ญาติ ที่ สนาม บิน]

ที่ สนาม บิน สุวรรณภูมิ นายเบเตอร์ วอล์ฟ กับ ลูกสาว นิกกี้ และเพื่อน ๆ ของ นิกกี้ จ้อย และ แมว มา รับ วินเซนท์ ที่ อาคาร ผู้โดยสาร ขา เข้า

นิกกี้: พ่อคะ ฉัน เห็น เขา มา แล้ว

เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ: ใช่ เขามาแล้ว (โบกมือ) วินแซนท! วินแซนท อะ!  
 จ้อย: ไหน คะ คนไหน  
 นิกกี้: คน สูง ๆ หล่อ ๆ นั้นไง นั่นพี่ชายของนิกกี้  
 จ้อย: เขาหล่อจริง ๆ  
 แมว: จริง ๆ ด้วย เขาเป็นลูกของคุณลุง นิกกี้ใช่ไหม  
 นิกกี้: ใช่ ดูลิ เขามาแล้ว  
 วินแซนท: สวัสดีครับ อาเปเตอร์ สวัสดี นิกกี้ รอ นานไหม ครับ  
 เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ: ไม่ นานเลย  
 วินแซนท: คุณ อาฐานิดา ไม่ มา หรือ  
 นิกกี้: คุณ แม่ ไม่ มา ค่ะ เขาไม่ว่าง  
 เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ: มีผู้หญิง อีก สอง คน มา รับ วินแซนท นะ นี่ คุณ จินตนา และ คุณ  
 ปวีณา  
 จ้อย: (ไหว้ วินแซนท) สวัสดี ค่ะ ดิฉัน ชื่อ จ้อย ค่ะ  
 วินแซนท: (ไหว้ตอบ) ผม วินแซนท ครับ ยินดี ที่ได้ รู้จัก ครับ  
 แมว: (ไหว้ วินแซนท เหมือนกัน) ดิฉัน ชื่อ แมว ค่ะ สวัสดี ค่ะ  
 วินแซนท: แหม ไหว้ผม ด้วย หรือ ขอบคุณ ครับ ที่ให้ เกียรติ ผม  
 เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ: อะ ๆ สามสาว พวกนี้ สุภาพ ไป หน่อย เมื่อ ก็ นี่ ยัง ชม วินแซนท  
 ว่า หล่อ ด้วย  
 วินแซนท: อะ ๆ ขอบคุณ มาก ครับ คุณ ทั้ง สาม คน ก็ สวย มาก ครับ

## Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 9.2.

maa ráp jáat thû sànáam bin .

*To-come to-meet family at/in airport .*

thû sànáam bin sùwannáphuum naaj peeteu woof kàp lûuk-săaw níkkû lé? phûean phûean >  
*At/in field to-fly Suwarnabhumi Mr. Peter Wolf with child-girl (daughter) Nikki and friend  
 friend of/belonging-to Nikki . Joy >*

khôong níkkû . còj lé? meew . maa ráp winseen thû aakhaan phûu-doojsaan khăa-khâw .  
*And Maew . to-come to-meet Vincent at/in room to-receive passenger incoming/import .*

níkkû: phôo khá . chăh hên khăw maa léew .

Nikki: *Father [polite part. f.] . I to-see he/she to-come already .*

peeteu woof: chây . khăw maa léew (bòok mue) . winseen ! winseen há !

Peter Wolf: *Yes . He/she to-come already (to-wave hand) . Vincent! Vincent! [emphatic  
 part.] !*

còj: năj khá . khon năj .

Joy: *Which [polite particle f.] . Person which?*

níkkû:	khon sũung sũung lòo lòo nân ngay . nân phîi chaaj khõong níkkû .
Nikki:	Person tall tall handsome handsome that why (you see) . That older-sibling man belonging-to Nikki .
côj:	khăw lòo cing cing .
Joy:	He/she handsome really really .
mɛɛw:	cing cing dũaj . khăw pen lûuk khõong khun lung níkkû châj mǎj .
Maew:	Really really also . He/she to-be child belonging-to Mr./Mrs. uncle Nikki yes [question particle] .
níkkû:	châj . duu sì . khăw maa léɛw .
Nikki:	Yes. To-look [emphatic part.]. He to-come already .
winseɛn:	sàwàtdii khráp aa peeteu . sàwàtdii níkkû . roo naan >
Vincent:	Good day [polite particle m.] uncle Peter. Hello Nikki. To-wait long(time) > mǎj khráp . [question part.] [polite part m.] .
peeteu woof:	mâj naan leuj
Peter Wolf:	No/not long(time) at all.
winseɛn:	khun aa thǎanídaa mâj maa rûe .
Vincent:	Mrs. Aunt Thanida no/not to-come [question particle yes/no question]?
níkkû:	khun mɛɛ mâj maa khâ . khăw mâj wâang .
Nikki:	Mrs./Mr. Mother no/not to-come [polite part. f.]. She/he not/no free .
peeteu woof:	mii phûujǐng ìik sõong khon maa ráp winseɛn ná . >
Peter Wolf:	To-have/to-be-present girl more two person to-come to-meet Vincent [emphatic part.] >
	nîi khun cintànaa . lé? khun pàwiinaa .
	This Miss Jintana . And miss Paweena.
côj:	(wâj winseɛn) sàwàtdii khâ . díchǎn >
Joy:	(to-greet-with-a- 'wai' Vincent) Good day [polite particle f.] I [f.] > chûe côj khâ . to-be-called Joy [polite particle f.]
winseɛn:	(wâj tòop) phõm winseɛn khráp . >
Vincent:	(to-greet-with-a- 'wai' to-answer) I Vincent [polite part. m.] . > jindii thîi dǎj rúuchak khráp . Happy that [part. for opportunity] to-know [polite particle m.] .
mɛɛw:	(wâj winseɛn mǔean kan) díchǎn chûe mɛɛw >
Maew:	(to-greet-with-a- 'wai' Vincent as well) I [f.] to-be-called Maew khâ . sàwàtdii khâ . [polite part. f.]. Good day [polite part. f.].

- winseɛn: mǎe . wâj phǒm dūaj rǔe . >  
 Vincent: (Expression of surprise) . To-greet-with-a-‘wai’ I (m.) also [question particle for yes/no questions] . >
- khòop khun khráp thîi hâi kiat phǒm .  
 Thank you [polite part. m.] that to-give honor I (m.).
- peeteu woof: hâ hâ . sǎam sǎaw phûak ní sùphâap paj nòoj . mûea-kîi-ní jang chom >  
 Peter Wolf: Haha . Girl three group this polite too-much a-little. A-moment-ago still to-praise >
- winseɛn wâa lòo dūaj .  
 Vincent to-say/that handsome also .
- winseɛn: hâhâ . khòop khun mâak khráp . khun thǎng sǎam kô >  
 Vincent: Haha. Thank you much [polite particle m.]. You every three also >
- sǔaj mâak khráp .  
 beautiful much [polite particle m.]

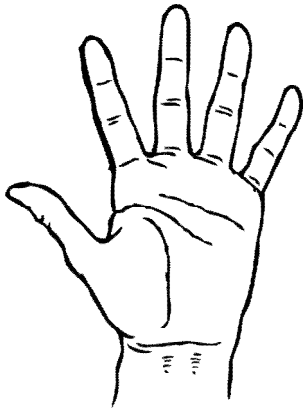
### Vocabulary



ผู้โดยสาร

รับ	ráp	1. to receive; 2. to meet; to welcome
สนามบิน	sànnām bin	airport
สุวรรณภูมิ	sùwannáphuum	‘Land of Gold’, name of Bangkok’s International Airport
นาย	naaj	1. lord, master; 2. Mr. ... 3. Personal pronoun 3 <sup>rd</sup> person singular, used between young men (familiar)
กับ	kàp	with; and
และ	lé?	and
เพื่อน	phûean	friend
อาคาร	aakhaan	building; hall
ผู้โดยสาร	phûu dōōjsǎan	traveler, passenger
ขาเข้า	khǎa khâw	1. entering; 2. imported
พ่อ	phôo	father
ฉัน	chǎn	I (normally used by women; a couple of decades ago also used by men; informal)
เห็น	hǎn	1. to see; 2. to be of the opinion





โบกมือ



แม่



อา

แล้ว

โบกมือ

อะ

ที่ไหน

สูง

หล่อ

นั่น

ไง

พี่ชาย

ของ

จริง ๆ (จริงจริง)

ลูก

คุณ

ลุง

ดู

สิ

รอ

นาน

เลย

อา

หรือ

แม่

ค่ะ

เขา

léew

bòok mue

há?

thîu nǎj

sǔung

lòo

nân

ngaj

phîu chaaj

khǒong

cing cing

lûuk

khun

lung

duu

sì , sì?

roo

naan

leuj

aa

rûe

mêe

khâ

khǎw

1. already; 2. then, afterwards, later; and then...

to wave (with the hand)

variant of ครับ - *kháp* or ค่ะ - *khá*

where, which place

1. high; 2. tall (in height)

handsome (only used for men)

that (demonstrative pronoun)

short for อย่างไร - *jàang raj* - how

older brother

1. thing; 2. of, belonging to, owned by (possessive pronoun)

really, truly

child; son or daughter

1. you (polite); 2. Mr., Mrs.

uncle (older brother of mother or father)

1. to see; 2. to look

modifying sentence particle for emphasis

to wait (for)

long (time)

1. to pass, to surpass, past; 2. consequently; 3. in the least, at all (after a negative); 4. under any circumstance; 5. utterly

younger brother or sister of father: uncle, aunt

1. or; 2. question particle for yes-no questions

mother

polite particle for affirmative sentences (woman speaking)

he; she



ผู้ หญิง



รู้จัก กัน



ไหว

ว่าง

มี

ผู้ หญิง

อีก

สอง

นะ

นี่

นางสาว

ไหว้

ที่

ได้

รู้จัก

กัน

แหม

ด้วย

ขอบ คุณ

ได้ เกียรติ

wâang

mii

phûujǐng

ìik

sǒong

ná?

nîi

naangsǎaw

wâj

thîi

dāj

rúucàk

kan

měe

dûaj

khòop khun

dāj kiāt

free, not occupied

1. to have; 2. be present;  
3. there is, there are; 4. to  
contain; 5. to happen

woman, girl

1. more; 2. again; 3. other,  
another; 4. else; 5. besides;  
6. yet

two

particle for light emphasis  
(modifying sentence particle  
this (demonstrative pronoun)

1. young woman; 2. miss;  
3. Miss (term of address)

1. a greeting performed by  
bringing the palms of both  
hands together and raising  
them to a position between  
the chest and the crown of  
the head (according to the  
social status of the person  
greeted)

1. place; 2. which, that (rel-  
ative pronoun) 2. land, soil;  
3. space, site; 4. preposition  
of place: in, on, at

1. to can, to be able; 2. to get,  
to obtain, to acquire; 3. to  
may, might; 4. particle for  
the past perfect tense; 5. part-  
icle to indicate opportunity

1. to know, to understand, to  
realize; 2. to know, to be  
acquainted to

1. together; 2. each other

exclamation of mild surprise,  
indignation or grievance

1. also, too; 2. moreover;  
3. with, by means of

thank you

to be honored, to receive  
honor



สวย

นี้	ní	this (relative pronoun or shortened demonstrative pronoun)
ฮะ ๆ (ฮะ ฮะ)	hâ? hâ?	[sound of laughter]
สุภาพ	sùphâap	polite
ไป น้อย	paj nòoj	a little too...
เมื่อ กี้ นี้	mûea kî ní	just now, a minute ago
ยัง	jang	yet, still
ชม	chom	1. to praise; 2. to admire; 3. to flatter
ว่า	wâa	1. to say; 2. 'that' (introducer of a subordinate clause); 3. to criticize; 4. to scold, to abuse (verbally)
ขอบคุณ มาก	khòop khun mâak	Thank you very much
สวย	sǔaj	1. beautiful; 2. pretty, attractive, lovely (only said of girls); 3. smooth, successful; 4. fine, nice
ทั้ง สาม คน	tháng sǎam khon	all three of them

## Translation of conversation 9.2

### Meeting family at the airport

At Suvarnabhumi Airport, Mr. Peter Wolf, his daughter Nikki and Nikki's friends Joy and Maew have come to meet Vincent in the arrival hall.

Nikki: Dad, I see him coming already.

Peter Wolf: Yes, he's coming already (waves), Vincent! Vincent! Hey!

Joy: Where? Which one is he?

Nikki: That tall, handsome man over there! That's my cousin.

Joy: He is really handsome.

Maew: As you say! He's a son of your father's brother, isn't he??

Nikki: Exactly! Look there. He's coming already.

Vincent: Hello Uncle Peter. Hello, Nikki. Have you been waiting long?

Peter Wolf: Not at all.

Vincent: Hasn't Aunt Thanida come with you?

Nikki: Mom hasn't come. She isn't free.

Peter Wolf: There are two other ladies who have come to pick you up, Vincent. These are Miss Jintana and Miss Paweena.

Joy: (greeting Vincent with a 'wai') Good afternoon, my name is Joy.

Vincent: (greeting back with a 'wai') I'm Vincent, pleased to meet you.

Maew: (greeting Vincent with a 'wai', as well) My name is Maew, pleased to meet

- you.
- Vincent: Well! Are you wai'ing me as well? Thanks a lot for the honor you bestow upon me.
- Peter Wolf: Haha! These girls are a little too polite. A moment ago they said they thought you were so handsome.
- Vincent: Haha! Thanks a lot. You three are all very pretty, too.

### 9.3 Idioms

- Also for young men and women the polite predicate 'khun' - คุณ is used. In English, we could translate it with 'Miss' in the case of young women; for young men, there is of course no equivalent but Mr.

คุณ สุรศักดิ์	khun sùrásàk	Mr. Surasak
คุณ ฐานิดา	khun thǎanídaa	Mrs. Thanida
คุณ จินทนา	khun cintànaa	Miss Jintana

- ว่า - wāa - means 'to say', 'to speak', 'to remark', and also 'to criticize', 'to reproach', 'to reprove', 'to admonish'.

คุณ ว่าอะไร ครับ - *khun wāa àraj khráp* - 'What are you saying?'

แม่ ว่าเขา - *mêe wāa khǎw* - 'Mother reproaches him.'

ว่า - wāa - also functions as a relative pronoun which introduces a dependent clause, as the English 'that'. In some cases Thai uses ว่า (wāa) where in English a comma would be sufficient.

จินตนา บอก ว่า ฉัน ต้อง มา เร็ว - *cintànaa bòok wāa chǎn tōng maa rew* - Jintana said that I had to come quickly.

เขา ตอบ ว่า เขา ยัง ไม่ แต่ง ตัว - *khǎw tòop wāa khǎw jang mâj tèeng tua* - He answered that he wasn't dressed, yet.

ผม ไม่ รู้ ว่า เขา จะ มา หรือ เปล่า - *phǒm mâj rúu wāa khǎw cà maa rǔe plàaw* - I don't know whether he will come or not.

เธอ จะ รู้ ได้ อย่ างไร ว่า เขา เป็น ใคร - *theu cà rúu dâj jàangraj wāa khǎw pen khraj* - How could she ever know who he was?

Verbs which can be followed by ว่า (wāa) are, for example:

กลัว (klua)	- to be afraid	เป็น ห่วง (pen hǔang)	- to be worried
เข้าใจ (khâw caj)	- to understand	พูด (phûut)	- to speak
คิด (khít)	- to think	เรียก (riak)	- to call

จำได้ (cam dâj)	- to remember	รู้ (rúu)	- to know
ชมเชย (chom cheuj)-	to compliment	รู้สึก (rúusùek)	- to feel
เชื่อ (chûea)	- to believe	สงสัย (sǒngsǎj)	- to suspect
ได้ยิน (dâjjin)	- to hear	หมายความว่า (mǎaj khwaam)-	to mean
ทราบ (sâap)	- to know (formal)	หวัง (wǎng)	- to hope
แน่ใจ (nĕcĕcaj)	- to be certain	เห็น (hĕn)	- to see, to think
บอก (bòok)	- to say		

3. Ways to say 'too...', 'too much', 'a little too...' in Thai:

adjective + ไป  
paj

อาหารมัน เค็ม ไป  
aahǎan man khem paj  
*food it salty 'paj'*  
'The food is too salty.'

verb + มาก ไป  
mâak paj

เขาใส่น้ำมัน มาก ไป  
khǎw sàj námman mâak paj  
*he to-put-in oil 'mâak paj'*  
'He put in too much oil.'

adjective + มาก ไป  
mâak paj

เด็กคนนี้อ้วน มาก ไป  
dèk khon ní ùan mâak paj  
*child [class.] this fat 'mâak paj'*  
'This child is much too fat.'

adjective + เกิน ไป ที่จะ  
keun paj thîi cà

งานยุ่งเกินไป ที่จะ ไป เที่ยวนิด  
ngaan jǔng keun paj thîi cà paj thĭaw dâj  
*work busy 'keun paj thîi cà' to-go to-go-out to-can*  
'The work is too busy, so I can't go out.'

มาก เกิน ไป  
mâak keun paj

เขามีอายุ มาก เกิน ไป  
khǎw mii aajú mâak keun paj  
*he to-have age 'mâak keun paj'*  
'He is too old.'

มาก เกิน กว่า ที่จะ  
mâak keun kwàa thîi cà

มี ยุง มาก เกิน กว่า ที่จะ นอน ได้  
mii jung mâak keun kwàa thîi cà noon dâj  
*to-be-present mosquito 'mâak keun kwàa thîi cà'*  
*to-sleep to-can*  
'There are too many mosquitos to be able to sleep'

ไป น้อย  
paj nòoj

ปลา ตัว นี้ เล็ก ไป น้อย  
plaa tua nîi lék paj nòoj  
*fish [class.] this small 'paj nòoj'*  
'This fish is a little too small.'

## 9.4 Grammar

### a. Leaving out the subject

In English, the presence of a subject in a sentence is almost always compulsory, but in Thai, a sentence can very well do without. When it has become clear whom or what is the subject of a sentence, it may be conveniently left out. Sometimes it is already clear from the beginning of the situation that a sentence doesn't need a subject. Especially personal pronouns are often seen as superfluous in spoken conversations.

ไป ไหน มา  
paj nǎj maa  
'Where did (you) just come from?'

ไป ตลาด มา  
paj tàlàat maa  
'(I) just came from the market.'

ผม จะ ไป ตลาด จะ ไม่ ไป ร้าน ตัด ผม  
phǒm cà paj tàlàat cà mâj paj ráan tàt phǒm  
*I to-shall to-go market . shall not to-go to shop to-cut hair*  
'I'm going the market, (I) shall not go to the hairdresser.'

เธอ เป็น เด็ก สวย แล้ว มี นิสัย ดี ด้วย  
theu pen dèk sǎaj léew mii nísǎj dii dûaj  
*she to-be child beautiful .and/already to-have character good too*  
She is a beautiful child, and (she) also has a good character.

ดู รถ คัน นั้น ลี สวย นะ  
duu rót khan nân sì sǎaj nâ  
*to-look/to-see car [class.] that [emphatic part.] . beautiful [emphatic part.]*  
Look at that car! (That's) really a beautiful one!

### b. The negation; rehearsal and additional constructions

In lesson 2 you have seen how a simple sentence can be made into a negative statement, and in the dialogues you have already encountered many examples of affirmative and negative sentences. In this lesson, we'll pay some more attention to possible forms of the negation.

# 1. The negation of เป็น - pen and คือ - khue; ('to be'):

เป็น (pen) in its meaning of 'to be' is used as the determiner of a noun or a noun phrase:

นี่ เป็น หมา <i>This 'pen' dog</i>	- nî pen mǎa - 'this is a dog'
การเมือง เป็น เรื่องสกปรก <i>politics 'pen' affair filthy</i>	- kaan mueang pen rûeang sòkkàpròk - 'politics is a dirty game.' (literally: 'politics is a dirty affair')
เขา เป็น เพื่อนผม <i>he 'pen' friend I</i>	- khǎw pen phûean phǒm - 'He is my friend'

In neutral situations the negative of 'pen' - in its meaning of 'to be' - is 'ไม่ใช่' ('mâj châj') - 'no', 'not' (literally: 'not yes', 'not to be'):

นี่ ไม่ใช่ หมา <i>This 'mâj châj' dog</i>	- nî <u>mâj</u> châj mǎa - 'this is <u>not</u> a dog'
การเมือง ไม่ใช่ เรื่องสกปรก <i>Politics 'mâj châj' affair filthy</i>	- kaan mueang mâj châj rûeang sòkkàpròk - 'politics is <u>not</u> a dirty game'
เขา ไม่ใช่ เพื่อนผม <i>He 'mâj châj' friend I</i>	- khǎw mâj châj phûean phǒm - 'He is not my friend'

In contradictions of assumptions or presuppositions, the negation 'ไม่ได้เป็น' ('mâj dâj pen') is often used:

เขา ไม่ได้ เป็น ลุงผม <i>He 'mâj dâj pen' uncle I</i>	- khǎw 'mâj dâj pen' lung phǒm - 'He is not my uncle' (other than you might have supposed)
--	---

An exception to this rule is the famous Thai phrase 'ไม่เป็นไร' ('mâj pen raj); an idiom meaning 'never mind'.

เป็น in its meaning 'to suffer from an illness' is negated as ไม่เป็น:

เขา ไม่ เป็น หวัด <i>He 'mâj pen' cold</i>	- khǎw mâj pen wàt - 'He doesn't have a cold'
---	--

คือ (khue) means 'to be equal to', 'namely' and can be seen as almost analogous with เป็น (pen). It is used when giving explanations and definitions. The negative of คือ (khue) is always ไม่ใช่ (mâj châj) - 'not yes', 'no'. The word คือ (khue) itself cannot be negated:

นี่ คือ หมา

this 'khue' dog

- nû khue mǎa

- 'this is a dog'

นี่ ไม่ใช่ หมา

This not/no dog

- nû mǎj chǎj mǎa

- 'this is not a dog'

## 2. The negation of a single verb

A sentence with only one verb in it is negated by placing **ไม่** (*mǎj*) in front of the verb:

ผม มา

- phǒm maa

- I come

ผม ไม่ มา

- phǒm mǎj maa

- I don't come

Compound verbs are also negated in this manner:

เธอ เห็น ด้วย

- theu hǎn dûaj

- She agrees

เธอ ไม่ เห็น ด้วย

- theu mǎj hǎn dûaj

- She doesn't agree

(เห็น ด้วย - hǎn dûaj - literally: 'to see also' - 'to agree')

## 3. The negation of the resultative verb

In Thai there exist a number of compound verbs that exists of a first verb indicating an action, and a second indicating the result of that action. The second verb in such a combination is called a 'resultative verb'.

These combinations are negated by placing **ไม่** (*mǎj*) in front of the second element of the compound verb:

เขา นอน หลับ

- khǎw noon lǎp

- he sleeps (he to-lay to-sleep)

เขา นอน ไม่ หลับ

- khǎw noon mǎj lǎp

- he can't sleep (he to-lay not to-sleep)

เธอ ฟัง ออก

- theu fang òk

- she hears (understands) it (she to hear to-go-out)

เธอ ฟัง ไม่ ออก

- theu fang mǎj òk

- she doesn't hear (understand) it (she hears not to-go-out<sup>10</sup>)

ผม กิน หมด

- phǒm kin mòt

- I eat (it) all (I eat finish; end)

ผม กิน ไม่ หมด

- phǒm kin mǎj mòt

- I don't eat (it) all; 'I can't eat all of it'

## 4. The negation of the auxiliary verb and the predicate

The negation of auxiliary verbs, and with them, the predicate, can follow two patterns in Thai. A number of auxiliary verbs is negated following pattern A, but most are negated following pattern B:

<sup>10</sup> ออก actually means 'out', 'to go out', but can be translated in this instance with 'successfully': 'She hears (it) successfully: She not only hears it, but understands it, too.'



Pattern A. ไม่ (mâi) + auxiliary verb + predicate:

The following auxiliary verbs are negated following negation pattern A. Some are frequently used in combination with: จะ (cà) - ‘will’, ‘shall’. The use of จะ (cà) is, however, not compulsory:

เคย	- kheuj	- to be accustomed too; ever, once
ควร (จะ)	- khuan (cà)	- should, ought
น่า (จะ)	- nâa (cà)	- should, ought; worth doing
อยาก (จะ)	- jàak (cà)	- to want, to wish
ต้อง	- tông	- to must

*Examples:*

ผม เคย ไป กรุงเทพฯ แล้ว แต่ ยัง ไม่ เคย ไป เชียงใหม่

phǒm kheuj paj krungthêep léew . tɛɛ jang mâi kheuj paj chiangmài

*I ever to-go Bangkok already, but yet no/not to-go Chiang Mai .*

‘I’ve been to Bangkok once, but I’ve never been to Chiang Mai.’

คุณ ควร จะ ออก กำลัง กาย สัก หน่อย ไม่ ควร จะ นั่ง เฉย ๆ

khun khuan-cà òok-kamlang-kaaj sàk-nòoj . mâi khuan cà nâng chǎuj chǎuj

*You should to-exercise merely a little. No/not should to-sit to-do-nothing .*

‘You should do some more exercises, not just sit around and do nothing.’

เธอ น่า จะ พูด ดี ๆ กับ น้อง ไม่ น่า จะ ด่า เขา ทั้ง วัน

thɛu nâa-cà phûut dii dii kà? nóong . mâi nâa-cà dàa khǎw thǎng wan

*You ought to-speak good-good with younger-sister/brother. No/not ought scold she/he the-whole day.*

‘You should talk nicely to your little sister, and not call her names all day long.’

คุณ อยาก จะ ไป งาน เลี้ยง หรือ ไม่ อยาก เห็น หน้า คุณ เปเตอร์ อีก

khun jàak-cà paj ngaan-líang , rǔe mâi jàak hèn nâa khun peeteu iik

*You to-want to-go party, or no/not to-want to-see face Mr. Peter again.*

‘Do you want to go to the party, or don’t you want to see the face of Mr. Peter again?’

จินตนา ต้อง ทำ ตาม ที่ ผม พูด ไม่ ต้อง นึก อะไร เอา เอง

cintanaa tông tham taam thû phǒm phûut . mâi tông núek àraj aw eeng

*Jintana to-must to-do to-follow that I to-say .No/not to-must to-think something to-take self.*

‘Jintana (you) must do (it) like I say. You mustn’t think for yourself.’

Pattern B. auxiliary verb + ไม่ (mâi) + predicate:

The following auxiliary verbs are negated following pattern B. Some may be used in combination with จะ (cà) - ‘will’, ‘shall’. In some cases, the use of จะ (cà) - ‘will’, ‘shall’ is compulsory:

คง (จะ)	- khong (cà)	- probably; certainly
จะ	- cà ; cà?	- will, shall (indicator of future tense)
ดู เหมือน (จะ)	- duu mǔean (cà)	- to look like
ท่า (ทาง) จะ	- thâa (thaang) cà	- seemingly; 'it seems'
แทบ (จะ)	- thêep (cà)	- almost, nearly, practically
มัก (จะ)	- mák (cà)	- to have a tendency towards; often, frequently, always
ย่อม (จะ)	- jôm* (cà)	- inevitable; certainly, necessarily
เห็น จะ	- hǎn cà	- maybe, probably
อาจ (จะ)	- àat (cà)	- could be; maybe
ต้อง	- tông	- must

*Examples:*

**ไฟโรจน์ คง ไป แต่ อนงค์ คง (จะ) ไม่ไป**

phajrōt khong paj . tɛɛ ànong khong (cà) mǎj paj .

*Phairote 'khong' to-go, but Anong 'khong (cà)' no/not to-go.*

'Phairote shall probably go, but Anong shall probably not go.'

**คุณ จะ อาบน้ำ ไหม ครับ ผม จะ ไม่ อาบน้ำ**

khun cà àap náam mǎj khráp . phǒm cà mǎj àap .

*You 'cà' to-bathe water [question part.] [polite part.]. I (m) 'cà' no/not to bathe.*

'Will you take a bath? I won't take a bath.'

**มัน ดู เหมือน (จะ) ไม่ เวิร์ก**

man duu mǔean (cà) mǎj weuk .

*It to-look like (cà) no/not to-work.*

'It looks like it's not going to work.'

**ฝน ท่า (ทาง) จะ ไม่ ตก คุณ ไป อาบน้ำ แดด ก็ ได้**

fǎn thâa (thaang) cà mǎj tòk . khun paj àap dèed kô dâj .

*Rain 'thâa-cà' no/not to-fall. You to-go to-bathe sunlight rather to-can.*

'It doesn't seem it's going to rain. Go can go sunbathing.'

**ผม แทบ (จะ) ไม่ กล้า เชื่อ หู ของ ตัว เอง**

phǒm thêep (cà) mǎj klâa chûea hǔu khǒong tua eeng .

*I 'thêep (cà)' not to-dare to-believe ear belonging-to body self.*

'I almost didn't (dare to) believe my ears.'

นี่ เป็น เรื่อง ที่ มัก (จะ) ไม่ เกิด ขึ้น บ่อย ๆ

nîi pen rûeang thîi māk (cà) māj keut-khûen bòi bòi .

*This to-be affair which 'māk (cà)' not to-happen often.*

'This is something which normally doesn't happen very often.'

ท่าน ย่อม (จะ) ไม่ เคย รวย อย่าง แน่ นอน

thân jôm (cà) māj kheuj ruaj jàang nêenoon .

*He/you 'jôm (cà)' not ever rich thing certain.*

'He shall certainly (inevitably) never become rich.'

ผม เห็น จะ ไม่ ไป

phôm hên (cà) māj paj .

*I 'hên (cà)' not to-go.*

'I shall probably not go.'

เขา อาจ (จะ) ไม่ ชอบ กิน ข้าว เหนียว

khăw àat (cà) māj chôop kin khâaw nîaw .

*He 'àat (cà)' not to-like to-eat rice sticky.*

'Maybe he doesn't like sticky rice.'

คุณ ต้อง ไม่ เล่า ให้ เขา ฟัง

khun tông māj lâw hâj khăw fang .

*You 'tông' not to-tell to-give he/she to-hear.*

'You must not tell it to him.'

*(Compare this sentence with the last example for pattern A.)*

#### Pattern C. predicate - ไม่ (māj) – auxiliary verb:

For verbs, which express ability or permission, a third pattern is used: เป็น (pen) is here: 'to can', 'to be able', ได้ (dâj) is 'to can' and ไหว (wǎj) – 'to be capable' (auxiliary verb indicating potential or stamina):

เขา พูด ไทย ไม่ เป็น

*he/she to-speak Thai not to-be-able*

khăw phûut thaj māj pen

He cannot speak Thai.

The auxiliary verb 'pen' (here: to be able) is negated, and with it the whole predicate.

ผม เล่า ให้ คุณ ฟัง ไม่ ได้

*I to tell to/to-give you to-hear no-not to-be-able*

phôm lâw hâj khun fang māj dâj

I can't tell (it) to you.

The auxiliary verb 'dâj' (here: to can) is negated, and with it the whole predicate.

เธอ เดิน ไป ไม่ ไหว

*she to-walk to-go/to not to-be-capable-of*

theu deun paj māj wǎj

She is not capable to walk (to it).

The auxiliary verb 'wǎj' (to be capable) is negated, and with it the whole predicate.

## 5. Negative sentences with ไม่มี - māj mii ('not present', 'not available')

A statement can be made negative by placing ไม่มี (māj mii) in front of the noun:

ไม่มี รถไฟ ไป ร้อยเอ็ด	<i>not to-be-available train to-go/to Roi Et</i>
māj mii rót-faj paj róoj èt	There is no train to Roi Et.

ไม่มี คน มา หาผม	<i>not to-be-available person to-come to-visit I</i>
māj mii khon maa hăa phǒm	Nobody comes to visit me.

ไม่มี (māj mii) is also used to negate the pronouns ใคร (khraj) - 'someone', อะไร (àraj) - 'something' and ที่ไหน (thîi nǎj) - 'somewhere':

ไม่มี ใคร รู้	<i>not to-be-available someone to-know</i>
māj mii khraj rúu	There is no one who knows. (Nobody knows.)

ไม่มี อะไร เกิด ขึ้น	<i>not to-be-available something to-happen</i>
māj mii àraj keut khûen	There is nothing that happens (Nothing happens; nothing has happened.)

ไม่มี ที่ไหน ที่ จะ นอน ได้	<i>not to-be-available somewhere that shall to-sleep to-can</i>
māj mii thîi-nǎj thîi cà noon dāj	There is nowhere we can sleep.

Individually, without subordinate clause, ไม่มี (māj mii), ไม่มีใคร (māj mii khraj), ไม่มีอะไร (māj mii àraj) and ไม่มีที่ไหน (māj mii thîi nǎj) have the following meaning:

ไม่มี	<i>not to-be-available/ not to-be-present</i>
māj mii	(It) is not (there). (We don't have it)

ไม่มีใคร	<i>not to-be-available someone</i>
māj mii khraj	There is nobody.

ไม่มีอะไร	<i>not to-be-available something</i>
māj mii àraj	There is nothing

ไม่มีที่ไหน	<i>not to-be-available somewhere</i>
māj mii thîi nǎj	There is nowhere..., there is no place...

## 9.5 Cultural notes

### a. Being flattered; sincere compliments or licking boots?

In Thailand everybody is always complimented with his or her appearance. Women are called สวย (sǔaj) - 'beautiful', and men หล่อ (lòo) - 'handsome'. Older people are flattered with remarks as 'ยัง สวย อยู่' (jang sǔaj jùu) - 'still beautiful' and 'ยัง หล่อ อยู่' (jang lòo jùu) - 'still handsome'. People in Thailand are also called 'beautiful' and 'handsome' when they look healthy or when they dress well. If you're not a leper and your face is not grossly misshapen, you will also receive these nice compliments. Members of your own sex as well as those of the opposite will make them, but compliments alone don't intend to invite you to take any liberties towards the one who's paying you the compliment. Nor is the compliment intended to try to get something out of you, or even to toady. One pays compliments out of politeness or respect. Exceptions are of course found everywhere. You might be rightfully suspicious if a trinket salesman in a tourist trap copiously praises your appearance, your language skills and intellect. He might do this solely because he wants to sell you his trinkets. On the other hand, sincere compliments can be expected when you are building up a relationship with a Thai. Compliments become pet names. And sincerely spoken sweet words obviously imply an invitation to closer contact.

### b. The ไหว้ (wǎi) - 'wai' (Thai salute)

The 'wai' is a gesture of polite salute. It consists of your two hands, palms pressed together, brought in front of your chest, chin, nose, forehead or even higher. The higher your hands are, the more respectful your 'wai'. In a good 'chest-wai', your elbows are pressed against the sides of your body, the your fingertips reach about to your chin, and you bow your head a little, so lips or nose (almost) touch the tips of your stretched fingers. In higher 'wai's', also try to keep your elbows as close together as possible without making it look like you're forcing yourself. If you bow your head in one of the 'higher wai's', bow it from the neck; don't move your whole torso.

In the utmost of 'wai's', people crawl towards a monk or a monarch on knees and hands, and alternately cover the floor in front of the dignitary's feet with their palms, and bring them high 'wai's' with the hands well above their heads. To laud monks, this is done three times, after which a normal posture is assumed. In the case of royalty, the 'wai' is made a single time, but is often held as long as the royal audience might last.

You cannot only 'wai' to low, and thus not accord the honor fit for a person's status (be wary of politicians, senior policemen and army generals), but also too high. It brings bad luck to a young child if it is 'wai-ed' by an older person. A laborer would consider a 'wai' from his boss sarcastic and insulting, and a beggar would feel ridiculed when honored with a 'wai'

### c. Respect for status and age

Thai society is hierarchical. This comes forth from the principle of *'bunkhun'* to which has been referred in lesson two. Simply said, a person of lower social class is at the disposal of someone from a higher social class, while members of the higher classes should feel the compulsion to be honest and good towards their underlings. At the top of the Hierarchical pyramid stand the King, the Royal Family and the 'Sangha'; the top of the Buddhist clergy. Under this exalted summit come the nobility, the abbots of important temples, the high military and the economically powerful (the rich). Under them follow politicians, civil servants

and administrators. Politicians regularly break through from one social stratum to another. This always causes a lot of heartache, and has even led to bloody repression.

A separate group is formed by scientists and scholars, professors, teachers and artists, who have no traditional, economic or political power, but enjoy a lot of prestige, as they are important for the maintenance of Thai culture, art and science.

Within a family, grandparents, parents, older uncles and older aunts have more to say than their younger children, cousins, brothers and sisters. A successful younger uncle can count on receiving more respect from his cousins than his older brother who's always drunk, but he himself as well as the younger generation will still salute his 'failed' older sibling with an appropriate 'wai'.

Within a company, the hierarchical organization is always very strict, but even young managers will be polite towards an older man who has been the boss's driver for twenty years.

Thai society is in principle patriarchal, but in the last twenty years, more and more women have gained top positions in management and administration. Especially in the academic world, women have made great progress. These women receive the respect they deserve, also from their younger male subordinates.

Traditionally, the house and the market are the domain of women. Thai men discuss domestic affairs with their wives, and in the countryside there are still men to be found who hand their salary over to their wives, who manage the financial side of the household. In the towns and cities, young couples often administer their finances together, especially when both partners earn an income.

As a foreigner, it is safest for you to speak politely to every Thai who's older than or at least as old as you, until it becomes clear what the actual status is of the person to whom you're speaking.

## 9.6 Writing III. The consonants ท - ฅ

Consonant	Name of the Consonant	Pronunciation at initial position of a syllable	Pronunciation at final position of a syllable
ท	ท-ทหาร thoo tháhǎan	th	t' (unreleased)
ธ	ธ-ธง thoo thong	th	t' (unreleased)
น	น-หนู noo nǔu	n	n
บ	บ-ใบไม้ boo bajmáaj	b	p' (unreleased)
ป	ป-ปลา poo plaa	p	p' (unreleased)

ผ	ผ-ผึ้ง phǒo phûeng	ph	p' (unreleased)
ฝ	ฝ-ฝา foo fǎa	f	does not occur
พ	พ-พาน phoo phaان	ph	p' (unreleased)
ฟ	ฟ-ฟัน foo fan	f	f ; p' (in loan words)
ภ	ภ-สำเภา phoo sǎmphaw	ph	p' (unreleased)

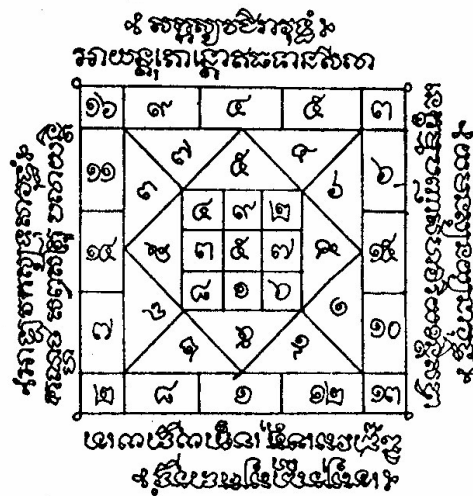
**The meaning of the names of the consonants:**

ทหาร	‘soldier’
ธง	‘flag’
หนู	‘mouse’
ใบไม้	‘leaf’
ปลา	‘fish’
ผึ้ง	‘bee’
ฝา	‘lid’, ‘cover’
พาน	‘footed tray’
ฟัน	‘tooth’
สำเภา	‘Chinese junk’ (kind of ship)

## 9.7 Theoretical overview of the five tones

To exercise the correct pronunciation of the tones, you should listen to the CD's that go with this course, or listen carefully to a patient native speaker who is willing to teach you tonality in Thai. The diagram below is therefore only meant as a mnemonic device:

English description	Thai name	Sounds like:
Flat tone or middle tone	เสียง สามัญ (sǎang sǎaman)	This tone sounds almost level, and sounds like a somewhat resigned utterance in English. Like the word 'leave' in the sentence: 'I'll just <u>leave</u> then...'
Low tone	เสียง เอก (sǎang èek)	This tone lays a little beneath the normal timbre of the voice, like in 'Ah... What a pity...'
Falling tone	เสียง โท (sǎang thō)	This tone goes from a little above the normal timbre of the voice to relatively low, like in: 'Look, I already <u>told</u> you that...'
High tone	เสียง ตรี (sǎang trii)	This tone starts from a little higher than the normal timbre of the voice to a relatively high pitch. Like in 'Oh, can I have a cookie, <u>please</u> !'
Rising tone	เสียง จัตวา (sǎang càttàwaa)	This tone rises from relatively low to relatively high, and sounds like the intonation of a question in English: 'Is this a <u>horse</u> ?'



*In predicting fate and fortune, you'll see that 'khöom' (๗๐๓), or Khmer script is often used...*



## 9.8 Exercises

### Exercise 1

*Answer the following questions. Try to formulate your answers in correct Thai and write them down according to the transcription method used in the course:*

1. Where is Mr. Wolf waiting for his nephew Vincent? (Vincent is the nephew (หลาน - lǎan) of uncle (อา - aa) Peter.)
2. Who is the first to see Vincent coming? (the first person: คนแรก - khon rĕək)
3. What do Nikki and her friends think of Vincent?
4. Did Peter Wolf and the girls have to wait a long time?
5. Why hasn't aunt Thanida come as well?
6. How do Joy and Maew greet Vincent?
7. What is Peter Wolf's reaction on their greeting?
8. How does Vincent compliment his cousin and her friends?

### Exercise 2

*Translate the following sentences into Thai. Write them down according to the transcription method used in the course:*

1. Uncle Peter is waiting for Vincent.
2. Vincent is from the Netherlands.
3. Uncle Peter lives in Bangkok.
4. He arrives at the airport. (มาถึง - maa thŭeng - to arrive)
5. Nikki calls Vincent her older brother. (เรียก - rĭak - to call)
6. Miss Paweena greets Vincent with a 'wai'.
7. She looks at the people.
8. He sees the airport.

### Exercise 3

*a. Put these sentences in the right order, and translate:*

1. duu khǎw thŭ bin khon sǎnǎam
2. winseĕn naan roo khǎw
3. thŭ rǎp dŏj sǎan rŏng khon khǎa mâak khâw mii phŭu
4. khon pen sŭng neethŭeĕn khon
5. thaj khǎw kĕng phŭut
6. māj thǎanĭdaa maa aa dāj
7. cang lòo khǎw mâak
8. cŏj sàwàtdii khun khráp

b. Fill in the right word, and translate:

sǎaj maa phûut phûu càak wâang pen mueang

1. cōj ... khon thaj .
2. khǎw ... thǔeng thî sànnām bin .
3. krungthêep pen ... jàj .
4. thî rōong ráp ... dōjsǎan khǎa khâw mii khon mâak .
5. khǎw maa ... pràthêet neethēuēen .
6. pàwiinaa ... mâak .
7. khǎw ... phǎasǎa thaj kèng .
8. khun phōo māj ... .

#### Exercise 4

Write down the letters you have learned in this lesson a couple of times. Start at the highest or left-most little circle (หัว - hǔa). Pronounce the sound of the letter and its name every time you write it down. Do this until you have the feeling you know the letters by heart, and then write them down again, twenty to thirty times. After that, pronounce each letter again while looking at its form. Don't forget to pronounce the difference between the aspirated and the non-aspirated sounds. After the pronunciation exercise, write each letter down again a few dozen times.

Relax your hand, and put your pen on the paper in the same way as you do when you write your name.

ท ธ น บ ป  
ผ ฝ พ ฟ ภ

## 9.9 Answers to exercises 1 and 2

### 1. Answers to the questions:

1. naaj peeteu woof roo lăan khăw thîi aakhaan phûu dɔɔjsǎan khǎa khâw .
๑. นาย เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ รอ หลาน เขา ที่ อาคาร ผู้ โดยสาร ขา เข้า
2. níkkî pen khon rĕek thîi hĕn winseĕn khâw maa .
๒. นิกกี เป็น คน แรก ที่ เห็น วินแซนซ์ เข้า มา
3. níkkî lé? phûean phûean khít wâa winseĕn pen khon lòo .
๓. นิกกี และ เพื่อน ๆ คิด ว่า วินแซนซ์ เป็น คน หล่อ
4. kô naan tĕe māj pen raj .
๔. ก็ นาน แต่ ไม่ เป็น ไร
5. aa thǎanídaa māj wāang .
๕. อา ฐานิดา ไม่ ว่าง
6. cōj kàp meew wāj winseĕn .
๖. จ้อย กับ แมว ไหว้ วินแซนซ์
7. khǎw rúusùek wâa pen kiat cang .
๗. เขา รู้สึก ว่า เป็น เกียรติ จัง
8. khǎw chomcheuj níkkî lé? phûean phûean wâa sǎaj mǎak .
๘. เขา ชมเชย นิกกี และ เพื่อน ๆ ว่า สวย มาก

### 2. Solution of the translation exercise

1. aa peeteu roo winseĕn .
๑. อา เปเตอร์ รอ วินแซนซ์
2. winseĕn maa càak neetheuleĕn .
๒. วินแซนซ์ มา จาก เนเธอร์แลนด์
3. aa peeteu jùu thîi krungthĕep .
๓. อา เปเตอร์ อยู่ ที่ กรุงเทพ ฯ
4. khǎw maa thŭeng thîi sànáam bin .
๔. เขา มา ถึง ที่ สนาม บิน
5. níkkî rĭak winseĕn wâa phîi chaaj .
๕. นิกกี เรียก วินแซนซ์ ว่า พี่ ชาย
6. khun pàwiinaa wāj winseĕn .
๖. คุณ ปวีณา ไหว้ วินแซนซ์
7. khǎw duu khon . or: khǎw moong khon
๗. เขา ดู คน or: เขา มอง คน
8. khǎw hĕn sànáam bin .
๘. เขา เห็น สนาม บิน



# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 10

### At the restaurant

#### ที่ภัตตาคาร

- 10.1 Introduction
- 10.2 Dialogue
- 10.3 Idioms
- 10.4 Grammar
- 10.5 Cultural note
- 10.6 Writing IV: The consonants ม - ฮ
- 10.7 Exercises
- 10.8 Answers to exercises 1 and 2





## 10.1 Introduction

Thailand is famous for its delightful cuisine. Large parts of the country are very fertile, and Thai rice (ข้าวหอมมะลิ - *khâaw hǒom málí* - jasmine scented rice) is known all over the world for its delicate taste and scent. Traditionally, in each Thai dish the five main flavors (sweet, salty, sour, spicy and bitter) should be represented in their ideal proportions. The cuisines of the four main regions (Central, North, Northeast and South) differ clearly from each other. Dishes from the South and the Northeast, for instance, are often very spicy. Southern cuisine uses a lot of fish and other sea products. In the North, more vegetables are used, and also some spices which do not occur in other regions. The Northeast, the region called 'Isan', is famous for its grilled chicken, pork and meat dishes, preserved vegetables, fermented fish and spicy sauces. In Isan, people also have a taste for edible insects like giant water bugs, grasshoppers and larvae, which are nowadays also sold at the markets in Bangkok and other cities. In the Southern and Central regions, the basis for every meal is dry, steamed rice. Whereas in the North and Northeast, sticky rice is preferred. The Thai have cold water with their food or one of the many available fruit juices. Also, excellent Thai beer is available everywhere. Thailand produces several brands of soda water and many kinds of soft drinks. Products from the Coca Cola Company and Pepsi can be bought at all general stores and restaurants. Coffee is grown in Southern Thailand and tea in the mountains of the North.

cd 1b

## 10.2 Dialogue

track 8

At the restaurant

๑๐.๒. บทสนทนา

ที่ภัตตาคาร



[ที่ภัตตาคาร]

นาย เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ พา ลูกสาว นิกกี กับ หลาน วินแซนซ์ และ เพื่อน ๆ ของ นิกกี จ้อย กับ แมว ไป กิน ข้าว ที่ ร้าน อาหาร

นิกกี: พี่วินแซนซ์ คิด ถึง อาหาร ไทย ไหม ค่ะ

จ้อย: พ่อ จ้อย บอก ว่า สมัย นี้ มี ร้าน อาหาร ไทย เยอะ แยะ แล้ว ที่ ยุโรป

วินแซนซ์: คุณ พ่อ ของ จ้อย เคย ไป เที่ยว ที่ ยุโรป แล้ว หรือ  
แมว: พ่อ ของ จ้อย ทำงาน เป็น นักบิน ของ การบิน ไทย ท่าน ไป มา  
ทุก หน ทุก แห่ง แล้ว จ้อย เคย ไป เที่ยว ยุโรป มา ด้วย  
จ้อย: แหม จ้อย เคย ไป ลอนดอน ครั้ง หนึ่ง เมื่อ จ้อย อายุ สิบ ห้า ปี จ้อย  
พัก อยู่ แค่ สอง วัน แล้ว ก็ กลับ  
นาย เปเตอร์: (เรียก เด็ก เสิร์ฟ) น้อง ขอ เมนู หน่อย นะ

เด็ก เสิร์ฟ เดิน มา และ ส่ง รายการ อาหาร ให้ คน ละ เล่ม

วินแซนซ์: จ้อย จะ กิน อะไร จ๊ะ จ้อย ชอบ กิน อาหาร ผัด ไหม  
นิกกี: ใช่ ๆ จ้อย ชอบ กิน ผัด มาก จน น้ำ หู น้ำ ตา ไหล รู้ มั้ย เพราะ คุณ  
ตา ของ จ้อย เป็น คน บังคลาเทศ  
จ้อย: ไม่ใช่ ท่าน มา จาก ศรี ลังกา ค่ะ แต่ นั้น ไม่ เกี่ยว กัน เลย ลัก  
น้อย  
นาย เปเตอร์: นิกกี อย่า เอา ญาติ ผู้ใหญ่ ของ เพื่อน มา ล้อ เล่น สิ สิ่ง อาหาร  
กัน ดี กว่า

นาย เปเตอร์ เรียก เด็ก เสิร์ฟ มา อีก ครั้ง และ เริ่ม สั่ง อาหาร...

นาย เปเตอร์: เอา กุ้ง แซ่ น้ำ ปลา เสือ ร้อง ให้ ลาบ หมู เนื้อ น้ำ ตก...  
แล้วเอาอะไรอีก จ้อย แมว วินแซนซ์  
จ้อย: เอา ส้ม ตำ และ ไก่ ย่าง ด้วย ได้ ไหม ค่ะ  
นิกกี: ขอ ข้าว เหนียว และ ข้าว สวย ก็ แล้ว กัน แกง เหลือง มี ไหม  
น้อง  
เด็ก เสิร์ฟ: มี ค่ะ  
วินแซนซ์: จั๊น เอา ด้วย แมว เอา อะไร อีก ครับ  
แมว: ที่ สั่ง มา แมว ชอบ ทั้ง นั้น ค่ะ ทุก อย่าง มัน อร่อย  
เด็ก เสิร์ฟ: คุณ จะ รับ เครื่อง ต้ม อะไร ไหม ค่ะ  
นาย เปเตอร์: ขอ เปียร์ สิงห์ ขวด หนึ่ง นะ น้อง แล้ว วินแซนซ์ กับ พวก สาว ๆ  
ละ ครับ  
วินแซนซ์: ผม จะเอาเปียร์ สิงห์ เหมือน กัน ขอ ขวด ใหญ่ นะ ครับ จ้อย  
จะ ต้ม อะไร ครับ  
จ้อย: จ้อย เอา โอเลี้ยง แล้ว แมว กับ นิกกี ต้ม อะไร ละ  
นิกกี: เอา น้ำ มะพร้าว ค่ะ  
แมว: ขอ ชา เย็น แก้ว



**Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 10.2.**

thîu pháttaakhaan .

*In/at a restaurant .*

naaj peeteu woof phaa lûuksăaw níkkî kàp lăan winseên lé? phûean phûean khǒong níkkî côj >  
*Mr. Peter Wolf to-lead daughter Nikki with nephew Vincent and friend friend of Nikki Joy >*

kàp meew paj kin khâaw thîu ráan aahăan .  
*with Maew to/to-go to-eat rice in shop food .*

níkkî: phîu winseên khít thûeng aahăan thaj mǎj >

Nikki: *Older sibling Vincent to-think towards {to long for} food Thai [question part.] >*

khá .  
*[polite particle f.] .*

côj: phôo côj bôok wăa sàmmǎj ní mii ráan aahăan thaj >

Joy: *Father Joy (I) to-say that era/time this to-be-present shop food Thai >*

jéu?-jé? léew thîu júróop .  
*many/much already in Europe .*

winseên: khun phôo khǒong côj kheuj paj thîaw thîu júróop rûe .

Vincent: *Mr./Sir father of Joy ever to-go to-make-a-trip in Europe [yes-no question part.] .*

meew: phôo khǒong côj tham-ngaan pen nák-bin khǒong kaan-bin thaj . thân >

Maew: *Father of Joy to-work to-be pilot of airline Thai . He (polite) >*

paj maa thúk hǒn thúk hēeng léew . côj kheuj paj thîaw júróop maa léew dūaj .  
*to-go/to-come every place every place already . Joy ever to-go to-make-a-trip Europe to-come already also .*

côj: mǎe . côj kheuj paj loondoôn khráng nùeng mûea côj aajú >

Joy: *[expression of relativity] . Joy ever go/to London occasion one when Joy age >*

síp-hăa pii . côj phák jùu sǒong wan léew kô kláp .  
*fifteen year . Joy (I) to-stay two day and/already also to-return .*

naaj peeteu: ( rîak dèk seup) nóong . khǒo meenuu nòoj >

Mr. Peter: *( to-call child to-serve) Younger sibling . To-ask menu a-little >*

ná? .  
*[emphatic part.] .*

dèk seup deun maa lé? sǒng raajkaan aahăan hâj khon lá lêm .

*Child to-serve to-walk to-come and to-send/to-hand-over list food to-give/to person per [classifier for books, notebooks etc.] .*

winseên: côj cà? kin àraj cá? . côj chôop kin aahăan phèt >

Vincent: *Joy to-shall to-eat what [informal question part.] Joy to-like food spicy >*

- măj .  
[question part.] .
- níkkû: chây chây . côj chôop kin aahăan phèt con náam hũu náam taa >  
Nikki: Yes yes . Joy to-love to-eat food spicy until water ear water eye >
- lăj rúu măj . phró? khun taa khõong côj >  
to-flow to-know [question part.]. Because grandfather (mother's father) of Joy >
- pen khon bangkhálaathêet .  
to-be person Bangladesh .
- côj: mậ-chây . thân maa càak sủ langkaa khâ . tềe nân mậ >  
Joy: No (not yes) . He to-come from Sri Lanka [polite part. f.]. But that not >
- kìaw-kan leuj sà? nòoj .  
to-have-something-to-do-with at-all a-bit a-little .
- naaj peeteu: níkkû jàa aw jàat phũu jàj khõong phũean maa lóo-lên >  
Mr. Peter: Nikki don't to-take family person big of friend to-come to-make-jokes >
- sì . sàng aahăan kan dii kwàa .  
[mitigating part.]. Order food together good [part. comparative degree] .
- naaj peeteu riak dèk seup maa ùk khráng , >  
Mr. Peter to-call child to-serve (young waiter/waitress) to-come again/et time/occasion , >
- lé? rêu sàng aahăan .  
and to-start to-order food .
- naaj peeteu: aw kũng chềe náam plaa . sũa róong hậ . lâap mũu . >  
Mr. Peter: To-take shrimp to-soak water fish . Tiger to-cry . Minced-meat-salad pork/pig >
- nũa náam-tòk ... lếw aw àraj ùk . côj mềw winseên .  
meat waterfall ... Already (and) to-take what more Joy Maew Vincent .
- côj: aw sôm tam lé? kậ jầang dủaj dậ >  
Joy: To-take orange to-pound and chicken to-roast also to-can >
- măj khá .  
[question part.] [polite part. f.] .
- níkkû: khõo khầaw nầaw lé? khầaw sủaj kô-lếw-kan . kềeng lữeang mii >  
Nikki: To-ask rice sticky and rice beautiful good-as-well . Curry yellow to-be-present >
- măj nóong .  
[question part.] younger sibling .
- dèk seup: mii khâ .  
waitress: To-be-present/to-have [polite part. f.] .
- winseên: ngán aw dủaj . mềw aw àraj ùk khráp .  
Vincent: to-take to-come also indeed . Maew to-take what again/more [polite part. m.] .

mɛɛw:	thû sàng maa mɛɛw chòop tháang nán khâ . >
Maew:	which to-order to-come Maew (I) to-like every thing [polite part. f.] . >
	thúk jàang man àroj .
	every thing it tasty.
dèk seup:	khun cà ráp kh-rûeang-dùem àraj mǎj khâ .
waitress:	You to-shall to-receive drink (n.) which [question part.][polite part. f.] >
naaj peeteu:	khǎo bia sǐng khàat nùeng ná nóong . léew >
Mr. Peter:	To-ask beer Singha bottle (class.) one [emphatic part.] younger-sibling . And >
	winseem kàp phûak sǎaw sǎaw lá khráp .
	Vincent with group girl girl what-about [polite part. m.] .
winseem:	phǎm cà aw bia sǐng mǔean-kan . khǎo khàat jàj ná >
Vincent:	I to-shall to-take beer Singha also . To-ask bottle large [emphatic part.] >
	khráp . côj cà dùem àraj khráp .
	[polite part. m.] . Joy to-shall to-drink what [polite part m.]
côj:	côj aw ɔɔlíang . léew mɛɛw kàp níkkû dùem
Joy:	Joy (I) to-take iced-black-coffee . And/already Maew with/and Nikki to-drink >
	àraj lá .
	what [reciprocal part. ('what about...')].
níkkû	aw náam máphráaw khâ .
Nikki:	To-take water/juice coconut [polite part. f.].
mɛɛw	khǎo chaa jen kêew .
Maew:	To-ask tea cold glass..

cd 1b Vocabulary  
track 9



ข้าว

ภัตตาคาร	pháttaakhaan	(large) restaurant (elegant language)
พา	phaa	to take, to lead (persons)
กิน	kin	to eat
ข้าว	khâaw	rice
กิน ข้าว	kin khâaw	to eat (literally: 'to eat rice')
ร้าน	râan	shop
ร้านอาหาร	râan aahâan	restaurant (common language)
ทาน	thaan	to eat (elegant language)
อาหาร	aahâan	food



ยุโรป



นักบิน



ลอนดอน

สมัย นี้

บอก

ยุโรป

เยอะ แยะ

เคย

เที่ยว

ไป เที่ยว

ทำงาน

ทำงาน เป็น

บิน

นักบิน

ของ

การบิน

ไป มา

ทุก หน ทุก แห่ง

ไป ... มา

แหม

ลอนดอน

ครั้ง เดียว

เมื่อ

อายุ

สิบ ห้า

ได้

ได้ พัก อยู่

กลับ (มา)

เด็ก

เสิร์ฟ

เด็ก เสิร์ฟ

sàmjǎj nù

bòok

júròop\*

jéu? jé?

kheuj

thiaw

paj thiaw

tham-ngaam

tham-ngaam pen

bin

nák bin

khǒong

kaan bin

paj maa

thúk hǒn thúk  
hèeng

paj ... maa

měe

loondoan

kháng diaw

mûea

aajú

sìp hâa

dâj

dâj phák jùu

klàp (maa)

dèk

sèup

dèk sèup

in this time, contemporary

to say

Europe

a lot; much; many

ever

1. to go out; 2. to go on  
holiday

1. to go out; 2. to  
go on holiday

to work

to work as ...

to fly

pilot

of, belonging to; *here*: for

airline

to and fro, again and again  
(also: ไป ๆ มา ๆ)

everywhere (idiom)

to (just) come from

exclamation expressing mild  
surprise or mild irritation

London

one time (also: ครั้ง หนึ่ง -  
kháng nùeng)

1. when; 2. if

age

fifteen

*here*: particle to form past  
tense

(ever) stayed

to come back

child

to serve

young waiter or waitress



เด็กเสิร์ฟ

น้อง

nóong

1. younger sibling; 2. informal form of address for a person younger than the speaker

ขอ ... หน่อย

khǎo ... nòoj

(I) would like... (when ordering)

เมนู

meenuu

menu

นะ

ná?

particle for mollification or light emphasis

เดิน

deun

to walk

เดิน มา

deun maa

to walk in the direction of the speaker or the subject

ส่ง ... ให้

sòng ... hâj

1. to send (to); 2. to hand over (to)

รายการ

raajkaan

list

รายการ อาหาร

raajkaan aahăan

menu

คน ละ

khon lá

per person

เล่ม

lêm

classifier for books, notebooks, knives and oxcarts

จะ

cà?

to shall; particle for direct future tense

จ๊ะ

cá?

intimate variant of ครับ (khráp), ค่ะ (khá)



คุณ ตา

ชอบ

chôop

to like

เผ็ด

phèt

spicy, hot

จน

con

so that; until

น้ำ

náam\*, nám

water

ตา (1)

taa

eye

น้ำ หู

náam hũu

earwax ('ear water')

น้ำ ตา

náam taa

tear, tears

ไหล

lăj

to flow, to stream

จน น้ำ หู น้ำ ตา ไหล

con náam hũu  
náam taa lăj

until (it) drives you (her, him) to tears; until breaking out in tears

เพราะ

phró?

because

ตา (2)

taa

grandfather (mother's father)



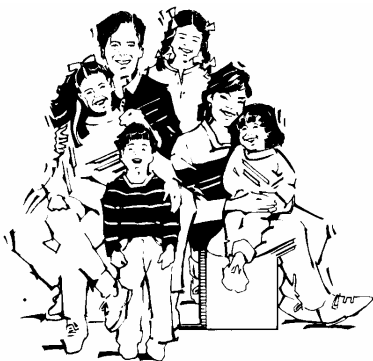
ชอบ



ตา (1)



น้ำตา



ญาติ

คุณ ตา  
บังคลาเทศ  
รู้  
ท่าน  
ศรีลังกา  
ไม่ เกี่ยว

ไม่ เกี่ยว กับ ...  
ไม่ เกี่ยว กัน

เลย

อย่า

อย่า เอา ... มา

ญาติ  
ญาติ ผู้ใหญ่  
ล้อ เล่น

สั่ง  
กัน

ดี กว่า  
เรียก ... มา

เรียก  
ครั้ง  
เริ่ม  
ข้าว เหนียว  
ข้าว สวย  
ก็

khun taa grandfather (respectful)  
bangkhálaathêet Bangladesh  
rúu to know  
thân\* You (honorific; very polite)  
sǐi langkaa Sri Lanka  
mâj kǐaw not to be concerned with, not  
to be involved with

mâj kǐaw kàp ... to have nothing to do with  
mâj kǐaw kan to have nothing to do with  
each other

leuǐ 1. to pass, to surpass ; 2. as  
a consequence; 3. in the least,  
at all (in negative sentences);  
4. cannot but; 5. (might) as  
well

jàa don't (in an order or a  
suggestion)

jàa ... aw maa don't come up with; don't  
use ... (something for  
doing/saying something)

jâat family

jâat phǔu jàj older family members

láo lèn to make jokes; to make fun;  
to joke

sàng to order

kan 1. together, each other; 2. all  
together

dii kwàa better

ríak ... maa to call (someone) to come  
over

ríak 1. to call

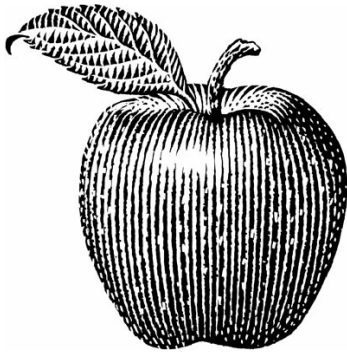
kh ráng time, occasion

rêum to begin

khâaw nǎaw sticky rice

khâaw sǔaj steamed white rice

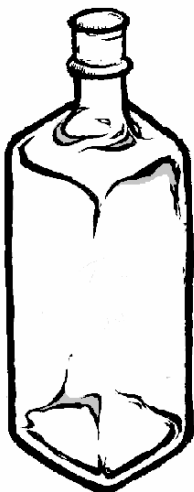
kô; kôo 1. subsequently; afterwards;  
2. then; 3. indicator for an  
idea or a consequence;



อร่อย



เครื่อง ดื่ม



ขวด

ก็ แล้ว กัน

kô léew kan

4. quite, rather; 5. yet, nevertheless; 6. whatever; 7. whether

แกง

kɛɛng

1. also, too; 2. (also) 'all right, let's take (do; fix) ... too'<sup>11</sup>

แกง เหลือง

kɛɛng lǔeang

curry

อีก

ìik

Southern Thai fish curry

1. more; 2. again; 3. other, another; 4. else; 5. as well; 6. yet

ทุก

thúk

all, every

ทุก อย่าง

thúk jàang

everything

สั่ง มา

sàng maa

to order (in the direction of the speaker or the subject)

ทั้ง นั้น

thángnan

all, every; everything

อร่อย

àroj

tasty, delicious

มาก

mâak

1. much, many, a lot; 2. very

รับ

ráp

1. to take; to get; 2. to receive

เครื่อง

khruêang

1. machine; 2. tool; 3. article, thing; 4. instrument

เครื่อง ดื่ม

khruêang dùem

drink, beverage

เบียร์

bia

beer

เบียร์ สิงห์

bia sǐng

Singha beer; a popular beer brewed in Thailand

ขวด

khùat

bottle

แล้ว ... ละ

léew ... lá

and what about...

พวก หญิงสาว

phûak jǐng sǎaw

(group of) girls, young ladies

ใหญ่

jàj

big, large

โอเลี้ยง

oolíang

iced black coffee

น้ำ มะพร้าว

nám máphráaw

coconut juice

ชา เย็น

chaa jen

iced milk tea

<sup>11</sup> 'ก็ แล้ว กัน' is a particle used when suggesting a compromise or a solution, or that implies that a decision has been made.

## Translation of dialogue 10.2.

### In the restaurant

Mr. Peter Wolf takes his daughter Nikki, his nephew Vincent, and Nikki's friends: Joy and Maew out to dinner (lit. 'out to eat') in a restaurant.

- Nikki: Vincent, did you miss the Thai food?  
Joy: My father says that there are a whole lot of Thai restaurants in Europe nowadays.  
Vincent: Has your father ever been on a trip to Europe, then?  
Maew: Joy's father works as a pilot for Thai Airways. He has already been everywhere. Joy has also been on holiday in Europe, once.  
Joy: Oh, I've only been to London once. When I was fifteen years old, I've stayed there for two days and then came back.  
Mr. Peter: (calls the waitress) Miss, we would like to have a menu.

The waitress walks toward them and gives each of them a menu.

- Vincent: Joy, what are you going to have? Do you like spicy food?  
Nikki: Yes, yes! Joy likes food that's so hot that the sweat runs out of her ears and the tears run down her cheeks. Because Joy's grandfather is a Bangladeshi, did you know that?  
Joy: He's from Sri Lanka, but that has really nothing at all to do with it.  
Mr. Peter: Nikki, don't make jokes about your friends' elder family members, will you? We'd better order something to eat.

Mr. Peter calls the waitress once more, and starts to order their food.

- Mr. Peter: We'll take 'kung chae nam plaa', 'suea rong hai', 'laap muu', 'nuea nam tok' and eh... What else are you going to order, Joy, Maew, Vincent?  
Joy: Can I take 'som tam' and 'kai jaang', too?  
Nikki: We would like sticky rice and some steamed rice would be O.K., too. Do you have 'kaeng lueang'?  
Waitress: Yes, we have.  
Vincent: Then, we'll take that, too. Maew, what'll you have?  
Maew: I like everything that you ordered already. Everything is delicious!  
Waitress: Would you like anything to drink?  
Mr. Peter: I would like to have a bottle of Singha beer, miss. And you, Vincent? And what about you, ladies?  
Vincent: A Singha beer, too, please. I would like a large bottle. What would you like to drink, Joy?  
Joy: I'll have an iced black coffee. Maew and Nikki, what about you?  
Nikki: I'll have coconut milk  
Maew: A glass of iced milk tea please.

## เมนู

## Menu

กุ้งแช่น้ำปลา (kûng chêe nám plaa)

raw, de-shelled shrimps, smothered in lime juice and fish sauce, served with chilies, mint and lemongrass.

เสือร้องไห้ (sŭea róong hâi)

'crying tiger'; very spicy dish of grilled strips



		of meat, marinated in ginger, chilies and lime juice.
ลาบ หมู	(lâap mǎu)	very spicy salad of minced, lightly fried pork, with chilies, lime juice, fish sauce mint and spring onions.
เนื้อ น้ำ ตก	(núea nám tòk)	‘waterfall meat’; grilled strips of meat marinated in lime juice and ground black pepper, fried and sprinkled with pounded, dry-fried rice.
ส้ม ตำ	(sôm tam)	spicy, fresh salad of grated green papaya with chilies, pickled field crab and fermented fish paste.
ไก่ ย่าง	(kàj jâang)	also ไก่ ปิ้ง (kàj pīng) or ปิ้ง ไก่ (pīng kàj); chicken marinated in garlic, coriander root, black pepper and fish sauce, grilled over a low charcoal fire.
ข้าวเหนียว	(khâaw nǎaw)	sticky rice. A special type of rice, steamed in plaited bamboo steamers over an earthen pot with boiling water. Popular in Northern and North-eastern Thailand.
ข้าวสวย	(khâaw sǔaj)	steamed white rice (often ข้าวหอมมะลิ (khâaw hǒom málí), jasmine rice)
แกงเหليلอง	(kɛɛng lǔeang)	a Southern Thai curry of fish, squash, pineapple, green beans and green papaya. Very spicy.
เบียร์สิงห์	(bia sǐng)	Singha beer; strong Thai beer with a hoppy taste.

### 10.3 Idioms

เขาไปทุกหนทุกแห่งแล้ว (khǎw paj thúk hǒn thúk hɛɛng léɛw) ‘He has been everywhere and to every place’: หน (hǒn) and แห่ง (hɛɛng) both mean ‘place’. By the use of both words, rhythm and alliteration enliven the expression. Compare the English expression ‘busy as a bee’.

แก (kɛɛ) means ‘you’, ‘he’ or ‘she’. As a personal pronoun in the second person, it is an informal pronoun used between equals. As a personal pronoun in the third person, it is used to refer to friends. It can also be used to refer to older persons one is familiar with.

ขอ (khǒo) ‘to ask’. The word is also used in placing orders in a restaurant, and is equivalent to ‘I would like a...’, ‘A ... please’ Polite.

(จะ) เอา [(cà) aw] ‘to take’. This word is also used during ordering in restaurants, but is more informal. ‘I’ll have...’.

และ (lé?) and กับ (kàp, kà?) both mean ‘and’. และ (lé?) means ‘and’, ‘added to’ and is mostly used to combine two things or persons which are not automatically associated with one another. กับ (kàp, kà?) means ‘and’, ‘with’, and is used to connect things and persons which are felt as being more or less automatically connected to one another.

เสีย (sá; sía), sometimes also written as ะ (sá), always follows the predicate. There is no exact translation into English. It often indicates a sense of being rid of or a sense of loss, and it influences the mood of the whole expression in which it is used. Sometimes the word can be translated with ‘completely’ or ‘at all’, but in most cases it is untranslatable. เสีย (sía)/ะ (sá) is one of those words, or rather expressions (to be more exact) which makes us realize that the idea behind the Thai language is in essence different from the idea behind English. There are more than several of these untranslatable words and phrases which only indicate a mood or a certain situation. You will encounter many more of them during your study.

Don’t confuse this word with the homographic but heterophonic ‘เสีย’ (always pronounced ‘sǎa’), which has a whole range of meanings: ‘to deteriorate’, ‘to spoil’, ‘to rot’, ‘to die (polite)’, ‘to lose’, ‘to suffer’, ‘to be damaged’, ‘to waste’, ‘to use up’, ‘to spend’, and ‘to pay’

เขา จะ ไม่ มา เสีย แล้ว  
khǎw cà mâj maa sá léew

*he to-shall no/not to-come sá already*  
‘He will probably not come at all anymore.’

เธอ มี แฟน ะ ด้วย  
theu mii fæn sá dûaj

*She to-have boyfriend/girlfriend sá also*  
‘She has (alas) a boyfriend already.’

ฆ่า มัน เสีย ดี กว่า  
khâa man sá dii kwàa

*To-kill it/him sá good [particle for comparative degree]*  
‘It is better to kill him off.’

The word is also used in combination with เมื่อไร (mûearaj) - ‘when’ and ที่ (thii) - ‘time (classifier)’, ‘turn’ to indicate impatience or offence:

เมื่อไร จะ ไป เสีย ที่  
mûearaj cà paj sá thii

*when to-shall to-go sá time*  
‘When shall we go at last?’

## 10.4 Grammar

### a. Meanings of the word ได้ (dâj)

In the course of your study, you have encountered some meanings of the word ได้ (dâj) along with its position within a sentence. The following list sums them up:

1. ได้ (dâj): ‘to can’, ‘to be able to’. Auxiliary verb, placed at the end of a sentence, but in front of the question particle and the polite particle:

ดิฉัน พูด ภาษาไทย ได้ ค่ะ  
 díchăn phûut phaasăa thaj dâj khâ .  
*I [f.] to-speak language Thai dâj [polite particle f.].*  
 ‘I can speak Thai.’

2. ได้ (dâj): ‘to obtain’. Placed in front of the object:

เขา ทำงาน จน ได้ เลื่อน ตำแหน่ง สูง ขึ้น  
 khăw thamngaan con dâj lûean tamnɛɛng sŭng khûen .  
*He/she to-work until dâj to-change position/rank high to-go-up.*  
 ‘He worked until he got a better position.’

3. ได้ (dâj): Indicates an action in the past. Placed in front of the verb phrase:

เมื่อ กี้ นี้ เขา ได้ ส่ง จดหมาย ไป แล้ว  
 mûea-kî-ní khăw dâj sòng còdmăaj paj léew .  
*A-moment-ago he dâj to-send letter go/to already.*  
 ‘He has just sent the letter out.’

4. ได้ (dâj): Means: ‘Yes, it’s possible’.

ทำได้  
 tham dâj .  
*to-do dâj.*  
 ‘Yes, it can be done’ (‘I/you/he/she can do it’)

## b. The negation (continued)

1. ไม่ได้ (mâj dâj) + verb; ไม่ใช่ (mâj chây) + noun

The construction ไม่ได้ (mâj dâj) + verb is used to:

- a. Form the negative of the past tense with verbs of action and statement:

ผม ไม่ได้ ไป ทำงาน  
 phôm mâj dâj paj tham-ngaam  
*I mâj dâj to-go/to work*  
 ‘I didn’t go to work.’

เขา ไม่ได้ พูด อย่าง นั้น  
 khăw mâj dâj phûut jàang nán  
*He mâj dâj to-speak/to-say thing/as that*  
 ‘He hasn’t said that’; ‘He didn’t say that’

- b. To contradict a supposition (in combination with เปล่า (plàaw) - ‘no’):

เขา อยู่ บ้าน หรือ  
 khăw jùu bâan rŭe  
*He to-stay house [question part. yes/no question]*  
 ‘Is he home? (Is he in the house?)’

เปล่า ไม่ได้ อยู่  
plàaw . mâj dâj jùu

No . mâj dâj to-stay  
'No, he is not there.'

- c. To negate the verbs ชื่อ (chûe) - 'to be named' and เป็น (pen) - 'to be':

เขา ไม่ได้ ชื่อ จินตนา  
khăw mâj dâj chûe cintànaa

She mâj dâj to-be-named Jintana  
'Her name is not Jintana.'

เขา ไม่ได้ เป็น ฝรั่ง  
khăw mâj dâj pen fàràang

He mâj dâj to-be white-foreigner  
'He is not a (white) foreigner.'

The construction ไม่ใช่ (mâj châj) + noun is used to negate affirmative sentences in which the verbs คือ (khue) - 'to be', 'to be equal to' and เป็น (pen) - 'to be' are used:

ตัว นี้ ไม่ใช่ หมา  
tua nî mâj châj mǎa

[classifier for animals] this mâj châj  
dog  
'This is not a dog.'

ผม เป็น คน อังกฤษ ไม่ใช่ เยอรมัน  
phǒm pen khon angkrit mâj châj jeuráman

I to-be person England mâj châj  
Germany  
'I am an Englishman; not a German.'

## 2. Intensifying or mitigating negations:

A negation is intensified or mitigated (softened) by putting ไม่ in front of the clause which is negated and the modifier (intensifying or mitigating adverb) behind it:

Intensifying modifiers are:

ไม่ ... แน่  
mâj ... nêe

No/not ... certainly  
'certainly not'

ผม ไม่ ไป แน่  
phǒm mâj paj nêe

I no/not to-go certainly  
'I'm certainly not going.'

ไม่ ... (โดย) เด็ดขาด  
mâj (dɔɔj) dètkhàat

no/not ... absolutely  
'absolutely not'

ฉัน ไม่ ขอ ให้ (โดย) เด็ดขาด  
chǎn mâj paj (dɔɔj) dètkhàat

I no/not to-ask to-give/for absolutely  
'I certainly won't ask that (for you).'

ไม่ ... เลย  
mâj ... leuj

No/not utterly  
'utterly not' ('not at all')

คน นี้ ไม่ ฉลาด เลย

khon ní māj chàlàat leuj

*Person this no/not intelligent utterly*

‘This man/woman is not intelligent at all.’

ไม่ ... แม้ แต่ (classifier) เดียว

māj ... mée tɛɛ (classifier) diaw

*No/not even (classifier) single*

‘Not even a single...’

ไม่ มี ใคร มา แม้ แต่ คน เดียว

māj mii khraj maa mée tɛɛ khon diaw

*No/not to-have/to-be-present someone to-come even [classifier for people] single*

‘Nobody came, not even a single person’

ไม่ ... แม้ แต่ (adjective) เดียว

māj ... mée tɛɛ (adjective) diaw

*No/not even (adjective) a little*

‘Not even a little...’

เขา ไม่ อาย แม้ แต่ นิด เดียว

khǎw māj aaj mée tɛɛ nít diaw

*He no/not bashful even a-little single*

He’s not even a little shy.

Mitigating modifiers are:

ไม่ (ค่อย) ... เท่าไร

māj (khôj) ... thâwraj

*No/not (comparatively) ... so-much/how-much*

‘Not very’

ผม ไม่ (ค่อย) รัก เธอ เท่าไร

phǒm māj (khôj) rák theu thâwraj

*I no/not (comparatively) to-love she so-much/how-much*

I don’t love her so much.’

ไม่ (ค่อย) ... นึก

māj (khôj) ... nák

*No/not (comparatively) ... so-much/how-much*

‘not very’

เที่ยว ไม่ (ค่อย) สนุก นึก

thiaw māj khôj sànnùk nák

*Trip/outing no/not merry/cheerful much*

‘The trip hasn’t been much fun.’

ไม่ ลื ... นึก

māj sūu ... nák

*No/not (quite) ... so much*

‘not quite so much’; ‘not very much’

เขา ไม่ (ลื) ฉลาด นึก

khǎw māj sūu chàlàat nák

*He/she no/not quite clever so-much*

‘He is not very smart.’

Notice that ไม่ ค่อย (māj khôj) is also used without modifiers:

เขา ไม่ ค่อย ฉลาด

khǎw māj khôj chàlàat

*He/she no/not quite intelligent*

‘He is not quite so intelligent’; ‘He’s not very smart.’

### 3. The causative and its negation

A causative can be compared to an English construction with ‘to let’, ‘to make’. In Thai, causatives are formed with the verbs **ทำ** (tham - ‘to make’), **ให้** (hâj - ‘to give’, ‘to let’) or **ทำให้** (tham hâj - ‘to let’). They are negated in a specific manner [Take notice: The words **ให้** (hâj) and **ทำ** (tham) also have other meanings and functions]:

#### a. Subject (human or non-human) + **ทำ** (tham) + (inanimate) Object + Verb:

เขา ทำ กระจก แตก	<i>He to-make mirror to-break</i>
khǎw tham kràcòk tèek	‘He makes the mirror break’ (‘He broke the mirror’)

เด็กๆ ทำ บ้าน เปื้อน	<i>Children to-make house dirty</i>
dèk dèk tham bâan pûean	‘The children made the house dirty.’

Other verbs that can be formed according to this pattern are for instance:

ทำ ... ตก	tham ... tòk	to drop (to let fall)
ทำ ... เสีย	tham ... sǎa	to damage, to break (to make damaged)
ทำ ... หล่น	tham ... lòn	to drop (to let fall (from somewhere))
ทำ ... หลุด	tham ... lùt	to let slip
ทำ ... หก	tham ... hòk	to spill (to let spill)
ทำ ... หัก	tham ... hàk	to break (to make broken (in pieces))
ทำ ... หาย	tham ... hǎaj	to lose (to make lost)

The negation of these verbs will usually indicate a past tense. Therefore, their negative is formed by putting **ไม่ได้** (mâj dâj) in front of **ทำ** (tham). The word combination **ไม่ได้** (mâj dâj) here conveys both *emphasis* and a *negative past tense*:

เขา ไม่ได้ ทำ กระจก แตก	<i>He no/not to-make mirror to-break</i>
khǎw mâj dâj tham kràcòk tèek	‘He didn’t break the mirror.’

เธอ ไม่ได้ ทำ นม หก	<i>She no/not to-make milk spill</i>
theu mâj dâj tham nom hòk	‘She hasn’t spilled the milk.’

#### b. Subject (human) + **ให้** (hâj) + (animate) Object + Verb:

In the following constructions, **ให้** (hâj) can mean: ‘To make someone do something’ or ‘To force or engage someone to do something’:

ผม จะ ให้ เธอ ไป ด้วย	<i>I to-shall ให้ you to-go also</i>
phǒm cà hâj theu paj dûaj	‘I shall let you go, too.’; ‘I’ll take you (there) also.’

ผมให้เธอไปซื้อของ  
phǒm hâj theu paj sŭe khǒong

*I ให้ you to-go to-buy thing*  
'I let you do the shopping'; (also in the sense of:  
'I let you decide what you need...')

The negative in this construction is formed by putting **ไม่** (mâj) in front of **ให้** (hâj):

ผมไม่ให้เธอไปซื้อของ  
phǒm mâj hâj theu paj sŭe khǒong

*I no/not ให้ you to-buy things*  
'I won't let you do the shopping' (also in the  
sense of: 'I don't want you to...')

**ให้** (hâj) also occurs as a fixed part of certain verbs that indicate a sense of cause and effect:

ให้ ... เกิด	hâj keut	to cause
ให้ ... ยืม	hâj juem	to lend
ให้ ... เช่า	hâj châw	to rent out

c. The causative in combination with a specifying verb:

A specifying verb is a verb which links itself to a clause of specification, like in English 'to say that...' (clause of definition). In combination with a clause of definition, the word **ให้** (hâj) is put behind the verb:

บอกให้	bòok hâj	to say that
ขอให้	khǒo hâj	to ask to
สั่งให้	sàng hâj	to order to
ยอมให้	joom hâj	to consent to, to allow to
เตือนให้	tuean hâj	to warn
อนุญาตให้	ànújâat hâj	to permit to

Note that negative specifying verbs use a double negative. The word **ไม่** is used to emphasize the negative:

ปฏิเสธไม่ให้	pàtisèet mâj hâj	to refuse to
ห้ามไม่ให้	hâam mâj hâj	to forbid to

The negation of a specifying verb can be formed in three ways:

c.1. Subject (human) + Specifying Verb + **ไม่ ให้** (mâj hâj) + (Animate) Object + Verb Clause:

เขาบอกผมไม่ให้ไปกรุงเทพฯ ។  
khǎw bòok mâj hâj phǒm paj krungthêep

*He to-say I ไม่ให้ to-go/to Bangkok*  
'He says (that) he won't let me go to Bangkok.'

ผม ปฏิเสธ ไม่ให้ เธอ ดื่ม เหล้า	<i>I to-refuse ไม่ให้ you to-drink liquor</i>
phǒm pàtisèet mâj hâj theu duem lâw	‘I refuse to let you drink liquor.’

c.2. Subject (human) + Specifying Verb + (Animate) Object + ไม่ให้ (mâj hâj) + Verb Clause:

เขา บอก ผม ไม่ให้ ไป กรุงเทพ ฯ	<i>He to-say I ไม่ให้ to-go Bangkok</i>
khǎw bòk phǒm mâj hâj paj krungthêep	‘He says he won’t let me go to Bangkok.’

ผม ห้าม เธอ ไม่ให้ ดื่ม เหล้า	<i>I to-forbid you ไม่ให้ to-drink liquor</i>
phǒm hâam theu mâj hâj duem lâw	‘I forbid you to drink liquor.’

(Please notice the double negation in the last examples of c.1. and c.2. (to refuse + ‘no/not’; ‘to forbid + ‘no/not’)

c.3. Subject (human) + ไม่ (mâj) + Specifying Verb + ให้ (hâj) + (Animate) Object + Noun Phrase

ผม ไม่ ยอม ให้ น้อง สาว ไป ตลาด คน เดี่ยว	<i>I ไม่ to-allowให้ younger-sister to-go/to market person single</i>
phǒm mâj joom hâj nóong sǎaw paj tàlàat khon diaw	‘I won’t allow my sister to go to the market alone.’

d. Subject (human or non-human) + ทำให้ (tham hâj) + Object + Verb:

This pattern indicates a certain intention or compulsion to do or cause something as a result of the initial subject or phrase:

เจ้า โง่ นั้น ทำให้ ดิฉัน ปวด หัว	person/being stupid that ทำให้ I to-ache head
câw ngòo nán tham hâj dīchǎn pùat hǔa	‘That idiot gives me a headache.’
อากาศ ร้อน ทำให้ เธอ รู้สึก สบาย	weather warm ทำให้ she to-feel comfortable
aakàat rón tham hâj theu rúusùek sàbaaj	‘Warm weather makes her feel good.’

In the negation of this structure, ไม่ (mâj) is put in front of ทำให้ (tham hâj):

อากาศ ร้อน ไม่ ทำให้ เธอ รู้สึก สบาย	weather warm no/not ทำให้ she to-feel comfortable
aakàat rón mâj tham hâj theu rúusùek sàbaaj	‘Warm weather doesn’t make her feel good.’



#### 4. Saying ‘No’

Every question particle has its own negative answer. The most frequently used question particles and their correct negative answers follow below:

Ending of the question:		negative answer:
... ไหม (มัย)	... mǎj (máj)	ไม่ (mâj) + verb
... หรือ (เหฺรหฺ, เหลหฺ, รือ)	... rǔe (rěu, lěu, rúe)	ไม่ (mâj)
		ไม่ (mâj) + verb
		เปล่า (plàaw)
... ใช่ ไหม	... châj mǎj	ไม่ใช่ (mâj châj)
		ไม่เชิง (mâj cheung)
... แล้ว หรือ ยัง	... léew rǔe jang	ยัง (jang)
		ยังไม่ (jang mâj) + verb
... หรือ เปล่า (รือ เปล่า)	... rǔe plàaw (rúe plàaw)	เปล่า (plàaw)
... นะ	... ná	ไม่ (mâj) + verb

#### 5. Negative conditional clauses

A conditional clause introduces an expression in which a condition is stipulated. The first word of such a clause is a conjunction such as ‘if’, a word for which there are several expressions in Thai: ถ้า หาก ว่า (thâa hàak wâa); หาก ว่า (hàak wâa); หากแต่ ว่า (hàak t̄e wâa). The words for ‘if’ are often omitted. Negative conditional clauses use the following pattern:

(ถ้า) ไม่ อย่าง นั้น ... - (thâa) mâj jàang nán ... - ‘otherwise...’, ‘if not...’

(ถ้า) ไม่ อย่าง นั้น ผม ไป ก่อน นะ      Otherwise I to-go before [emphatic particle]  
mâj jàang nán phǒm paj kòon nâ      ‘Otherwise, I’ll go first, all right?’

(ถ้า) ไม่ อยาก ... ก็ ไม่ ต้อง ...      (thâa) mâj jàak ... kô mâj tông - ‘if (you) don’t want to, (you) don’t have to’

ไม่ อยาก ไป เที่ยวน ก็ ไม่ ต้อง มา รับ      No/not to-want to-go to-go-out then no/not  
to-must to-come to-pick-up  
(thâa) mâj jàak paj thîaw kô mâj tông      ‘If (you) don’t want to go out, then (you)  
maa ráp      don’t have to come to pick me up.’

(ถ้า) ไม่ ... ก็ ... - (thâa)mâj ... kôo ... - if (you) not ... then ...

ไม่จ่าย ก็ ช่วย ไม่ได้

mâj càaj kôo chûaj mâj dâj

No/not to-pay then to-help no/not to-can

‘If you don’t pay, I can’t help you (I can’t do anything for you)’

(ถ้า) ไม่ใช่ ... ก็ ... - (thâa)mâj châj ... kôo...- if not ... then ...

ไม่ใช่ หนึ่ง ร้อย ก็ เอา ห้าสิบ

mâj châj nùeng róoj kô aw hâa sèp

No/not one hundred then to-take fifty

‘If not a hundred, then I’ll take fifty’

## 10.5 Cultural note

Especially in urban areas, the Thais take their meals at roadside stands and restaurants just as often as they eat at home. The food at the stands and the mobile restaurants at the markets, and the ones you’ll find at fixed times of the day on their spots near universities, schools and office buildings - is priced so reasonably, that one often pays less for a healthy and delicious meal at a stall than for one at home, if one would buy the ingredients at the market and cook for one-self. The quality of the food in Thailand is always high: a stall-owner or hawker who sells bad food would be out of business in a day.

There are restaurants of all sorts in Thailand, and their nature is often obvious at first sight. A large building with a façade of real or fake timber, and adornments of buffalo skulls and wooden Indians is a restaurant where they play ‘Songs for Life’ (เพลงเพื่อชีวิต - phleeng phûea chiiwít). Every night, there will be a performance of a more or less famous Thai folk-rock group. If you were lucky you could chance upon a session by veteran Songs-for-Life band: Carabao of Caravan.

A long and narrow room with an open front, filled with formica tables and plastic chairs, where young waiters hurry to and fro serving bowls and plates of food is not seldom a lunch- or dinner spot where specialties are served by renowned cooks. Restaurants festooned with colored lamps are often a bit more luxurious establishments where gentlemen are treated to a selection of pretty female singers. In many cases, the singers can be ‘bought out’ for a private nocturnal adventure, but only if she approves of her temporary suitor. A visitor can lay claims to the charms of the singer he thinks cutest by buying garlands of plastic flowers and placing those around her neck.

European style cafes and pubs that are purely built for the convenience of imbibers of alcoholic beverages are rare in Thailand. The Thai do imbibe, for sure, but they always do this during a cozy outing with a group of good friends in an appropriate restaurant. Next to drinking, eating (a lot) is one of the main purposes of such an undertaking. It isn’t strange to enter a restaurant for supper and be seated next to a small gathering of gentlemen who have obviously already been feasting in style since early afternoon. It will not only show by the behavior and the purple faces of the group, but also by a great quantity of empty bottles, kept in serried ranks under their table, as well as the puddles of melted ice, shrimp heads, crab shells, ashtrays full of small bones and cigarette butts, and the tools of the Thai drinker: Ice bucket, ice clamp, bottled water, soda, plenty of glasses and a large bottle of Maekhong.

A large restaurant (a ภัตตาคาร - pháttaakhaan) is often a Chinese or a seafood restaurant. It often is much larger than a simple ร้านอาหาร - ráan aahān, and it always has an extensive menu. A ‘pháttaakhaan’ is an ideal place to invite a large company of guests, colleagues, business relations, family, Party Members, etcetera. It was a very good idea of Mr. Wolf to invite his nephew and his daughter – plus her lady friends – to a restaurant like this.

## 10.6 Writing IV. The consonants ม - ฮ

Consonant	Name of the Consonant	Pronunciation at initial position of a syllable	Pronunciation at final position of a syllable
ม	ม-ม้า moo máa	m	m
ย	ย-ยักษ์ joo ják	j	j
ร	ร-เรือ roo ruea	r	n
ล	ล-ลิง loo ling	l	n
ว	ว-แหวน woo wǎen	w	w
ศ	ศ-ศาลา sǎo sǎalaa	s	t'
ษ	ษ-ฤๅษี sǎo rǔesii	s	t'
ส	ส-เสือ sǎo sǔea	s	t'
ห	ห-หีบ hǎo hìip	h	Only with <i>kaaran</i>
ฬ	ฬ-จุฬา loo cùlaa	l	n
อ	อ-อ่าง oo àang	1. vowel bearer 2. a-, o-, oo-	oo
ฮ	ฮ-นกฮูก hoo nókhûuk	h	Only with <i>kaaran</i> ; in loan words

**The meaning of the names of the consonants:**

ม้า	‘horse’
ยักษ์	‘giant’, ‘ogre’
เรือ	‘ship’
ลิง	‘monkey’
แหวน	‘ring’
ศาลา	‘pavilion’
ฤๅษี	‘hermit’
เสือ	‘tiger’
หีบ	‘chest’, ‘box’
จุฬา	‘male kite’
อ่าง	‘large water vessel’, ‘basin’, ‘tub’
นกฮูก	‘owl’

## 10.7 Exercises

### *Exercise 1*

*Answer the following questions. Formulate and write your answers down in Thai. Use the transcription method used in the course:*

1. Who says that there are a lot of Thai restaurants in Europe?
2. Has Joy ever been to Europe?
3. Does Joy like spicy food?
4. Why is that, according to Nikki?
5. Which dishes does Mr. Wolf order?
6. Why doesn't Maew order any food??
7. What do Peter and Vincent drink with their meal?
8. And what is the order of the young ladies?

### *Exercise 2*

*Translate the following sentences into Thai. Use the transcription method used in the course:*

1. Peter Wolf likes Thai food.
2. Joy walks towards Nikki.
3. In Bangkok the people love Thai food.
4. We are going to eat in a restaurant.

5. Mr. Wolf orders food for his nephew.
6. Vincent really enjoys Singha beer.
7. Mr. Wolf works in Thailand.
8. Nikki likes good food.

### Exercise 3

*Put the words of the following sentences into the right order and translate:*

1. thân côj kàp krungthêep thîaw níkkî paj
2. nákbîn kaanbîn côj khǒong pen phôo thaj khǒong khun
3. chôop woof bia dùem thaj peeteu
4. lûuksăaw peeteu pen naaj woof níkkî khǒong
5. aahăan jàj aahăan ráan mâak mii ní
6. aahăan māj kin chôop māj mɛɛw
7. cà sàng khá raw māj mɛɛkhǒong
8. sǐi langkaa khǒong maa khun côj càak taa

### Exercise 4

*Fill in the right word and translate:*

khǒong dùem seuf pen dūaj nam jǐngsăaw thaam phûut jâat jéu?jé?

1. phôo ... mɛɛw māj maa .
2. khǎw māj chôop ... bia .
3. dèk ... māj kin khâaw nǎw .
4. côj ... phûean khǒong níkkî .
5. lâap mǔu pen aahăan phèt ... .
6. naaj peeteu ... lăan lé? ... sǎam khon paj ... aahăan .
7. khǎw ... lèn kǎw kàp ... phǒm .
8. khǎw chôop kin aahăan ... .

### Exercise 5

Write the letters you have learned in this lesson down a couple of times. Start at the highest or left-most little circle (หัว - hǔa). Relax your writing hand, and assume the writing pose you are most comfortable in. Pronounce the sound of each letter - and its name - every time you write it down. Do this until you have the feeling that you know the letters by heart, and then write them down again, twenty to thirty times. After that, pronounce each letter again while looking at its shape. After the pronunciation exercise, write each letter down again a few dozen times. Relax your hand, and put your pen on the paper in the same way as you do when you write your name.

ม ย ร ล

ว ศ ษ ส

ห ฟ อ ฮ

## 10.8 Answers to exercises 1 and 2

### Exercise 1

1. phòo khǒong cǒj bòok wâa thîn júrǒɔp mii ráan aahǎan thaj mâak .

๑. พ่อ ของ จ้อย บอก ว่า ที่ ยุโรป มี ร้านอาหาร ไทย มาก

2. châj . cǒj kheuj paj thîaw júrǒɔp léew .

๒. ใช่ จ้อย เคย ไป เที่ยว ยุโรป แล้ว

3. châj . cǒj chǒop kin aahǎan phèt .

๓. ใช่ จ้อย ชอบ กิน อาหาร เผ็ด

4. níkkhū khít wâa cǒj chǒop kin aahǎan phèt phrǒ? taa khǒong cǒj pen khon bangkhálaathêet .

๔. นิกกี้ คิด ว่า จ้อย ชอบ กิน อาหาร เผ็ด เพราะ ตา ของ จ้อย เป็น คน บังคลาเทศ

5. peeteu woof sàng kûng chĕe nám plaa . sŭea róong hâj . lâap mǔu . lé? núea nám tòk .

๕. เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ สั่ง กุ้ง แซ่ น้ำ ปลา เลือ ร้อง ให้ ลาบ หมู และ เนื้อ น้ำ ตก

6. mɛɛw chòop thúk jàang thîi sàng maa léɛw .

๖. แมว ชอบ ทุก อย่าง ที่ สั่ง มา แล้ว

7. peeteu woof kàp winseɛn dùem bia sǐng kan .

๗. เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ กับ วินเซนต์ ดื่ม เบียร์ สิงห์

7. còj aw ɔ̀ɔlǎang , sùan níkkûi dùem náam máphráaw , lé? mɛɛw sàng chaa jen kêɛw nùeng

๘. จ้อย เอา โอเลี้ยง ส่วน นิกก็ ดื่ม น้ำ มะพร้าว และ แมว สั่ง ชา เข็น แก้ว หนึ่ง

## Exercise 2

1. peeteu woof chòop thaam aahǎan thaj .

๑. เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ ชอบ ทาน อาหาร ไทย

2. còj deun paj hǎa níkkûi .

๒. จ้อย เดิน ไป หา นิกก็

3. thîi krungthêep khon chòop kin aahǎan thaj .

๓. ที่ กรุงเทพฯ ๑ คน ชอบ กิน อาหาร ไทย

4. raw cà kin khǎaw thîi ráan aahǎan thaj .

๔. เรา จะ กิน ข้าว ที่ ร้าน อาหาร ไทย

5. khun woof sàng aahǎan hâj lǎan khǒong khǎw .

๕. นาย วอล์ฟ สั่ง อาหาร ให้ หลาน ของ เขา

6. winseɛn chòop bia sǐng mâak .

๖. วินเซนต์ ชอบ เบียร์ สิงห์ มาก

7. khun woof tham-ngaan thîi pràthêet thaj .

๗. คุณ วอล์ฟ ทำงาน ที่ ประเทศไทย

8. níkkûi chòop kin aahǎan aròj .

๘. นิกก็ ชอบ กิน อาหาร อร่อย





# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 11

### Stuck in traffic again

#### รถติด อีก แล้ว

- 11.1 Introduction
- 11.2 Dialogue
- 11.3 Idioms
- 11.4 Grammar
- 11.5 Cultural notes
- 11.6
  - Writing V: The vowels and diphthongs
  - Writing VI: The triphthongs
  - Writing VII: Unwritten vowels
- 11.7 Diacritics and punctuation marks
- 11.8 Exercises
- 11.9 Answers to exercise 1





## 11.1 Introduction

The ‘Old Bangkok Hands’ among you probably remember: The traffic in Bangkok was legendarily chaotic, and commuters daily spent more time in a jam than actually moving, whether they traveled by bus, car, taxi or tuktuk. Students who had to follow early lectures, civil servants and business people had to leave home as early as four or five o’ clock in the morning. Breakfast was eaten in cars, and portable urinals were developed for use in the car when you were semi-permanently stuck in a jam as usual. From nearby offices, one can often spot sweating gentlemen with briefcases, jogging towards their desks because they had to leave their chauffeur-driven cars behind in the traffic, and would be unable to arrive on time at their meetings in any other way.

Many people say that the traffic problems started when, in the 50ies and 60ies, the khlongs (the canals which gave had given Bangkok the moniker ‘Venice of the East’) were gradually filled and transformed into roads. A boat is narrower than a car, and as the khlongs had been easily wide enough to let the long-tail boats pass through, the narrow streets that were built in their stead could simply not contain more than two lanes of motorized traffic. In those days, money from several countries which intended to keep Thailand as an alley during the many smaller and bigger wars fought in Asia, was streaming in, and Bangkokians bought cars avidly. The traffic situation quickly worsened.

The existing system of “*soojs*” and “*tròoks*” developed from paths on land that connected separate villages – of which Bangkok still mainly consists. The names Bang Kapi (‘shrimp paste village’), Bang Na (‘village of fields’) and Ban Mai (‘new village’) still reminds us of that fact. These paths were later transformed into lanes, roads and driveways to let the growing number of vehicles pass. Shortcuts and connecting roads were built between the main thoroughfares. Some of these lanes, like Sukhumvit Soi 71 and Sukhumvit Soi 21 (Soi Asoke), are now wide roads themselves, and have sois of their own.

Other sois eventually went the same way. Often the inhabitants of a soi would sacrifice part of their land in exchange for a good infrastructure. Garden paths and driveways were asphalted, and people saw to it themselves that their sois were well connected to at least two main roads. Real Bangkokians knew all those alleys well. Shortcuts could be made that literally saved hours of time on a day of bad traffic. However, as soon as one exited the sois and entered a main artery like Sukhumvit, Ramkhamhaeng, Lat Phrao or Din Daeng Road again, one was back in traffic and back in trouble again. In the nineties, the city of Bangkok became so congested that an answer to the traffic problem simply had to be found within short term. Streets would have to be broadened, and new thoroughfares would have to be built, but it would cost billions of Baht to buy all the property that would have to be bulldozed down to fulfill that aspiration. A more outlandish solution to the traffic problem was proposed: Bangkok should have to be completely rebuilt in a different location. Meetings and conferences were held, but in the mean time, Bangkokian commuters were not inclined to leave their Mercedes and Isuzu Pickup trucks at home and take a bus or a taxi to work or shopping mall.

After many years of meeting, proposing and planning, a modern system of express ways (for which a toll was charged) was built over the city, and a sky train was constructed. At almost the same time, the Bangkok Metro (the subway) became operational. Bangkok had become a sci-fi city which few people who had known the Krung Thep of the fifties would be able to recognize.

There are still traffic jams in Bangkok, but they cannot be compared to those of the late eighties and the nineties. The traffic problem is past its peak.

cd 1b

## 11.2 Dialogue

๑๑.๒ บทสนทนา

track 10

Stuck in traffic again

รถติดอีกแล้ว

[รถติดอีกแล้ว]

จ้อย กับ นิกกี้ กำลังจะไปหาแม่ที่บ้านในช่วงเวลาที่รถติด ทั้งสองขึ้นรถเมล์ปรับอากาศสีส้ม เนื่องจากเครื่องปรับอากาศเสีย ทำให้อากาศในรถร้อนมากอีกทั้งคนก็แน่น โชคดีที่สองสาวได้ที่นั่งในขณะที่คนส่วนใหญ่ต้องยืนโหนราว หรือ เกาะพนักเก้าอี้เพื่อไม่ให้ล้มเมื่อรถเบรค พอรถลงจากทางด่วนและแล่นเข้าไปถนนดินแดง สาวทั้งสองก็มองเห็นรถติดเป็นทางยาวแต่ไกลเมื่อรถจอดป้าย :



นิกกี้: โอ้ มีเด็กขึ้นมาด้วย เราคงต้องลุกให้เด็กนั่งดีกว่า

จ้อย: อะไรกัน ฉันยังเมื่อยและเหนื่อยอยู่เลย ขี้เกียจลุก ให้เขาขึ้นเถอะ

นิกกี้: จ้อยว่าอะไรนะ มีน้ำใจหน่อยซิ ถ้าเด็กไม่ได้นั่ง เด็กอาจจะถูกรถเหวี่ยง หก ล้ม และได้รับอุบัติเหตุ นะ

จ้อย: ฉันไม่สน... อื้อ ду ซิ เด็กคนนี้ น่ารักจัง แหม น่าสงสาร เอ้า หนูมานั่งไหม พวกพี่จะลงแล้วละ นิกกี้ ลงกันเถอะ

จ้อย กับ นิกก็ ลง จาก รถ เมล์ แล้ว ก็ เดิน ไป ซื้อ ไอติม มา คน ละ แท่ง พวก เขา ค่อย ๆ เดิน กิน ไอติม จน หมด ใน เวลา สอง สาม นาที

นิกก็: นี่ จ้อย พุด เล่น อยู่ ได้ เดียว คน อื่น จะ ไม่ เข้าใจ ว่า เธอ พุด เล่น หรือ พุด จริง รู้ มั้ย คน เขา จะ คิด ว่า เธอ บ้า หรือ เป็น แม่ มด

จ้อย: ถึง จะเป็น แม่ มด แต่ ก็ เป็น แม่ มด ที่ สวย เหมือน นาง ฟ้า

นิกก็: เพ้อ เจ้อ บ้า แล้ว

นิกก็ กำลัง จะ ข้าม ถนน โดย ไม่ มอง ซ้าย ซวา

จ้อย: อย่า ข้าม ถนน ตรง นี้ นะ ใคร หละ ที่ บ้า กัน แน่ เออ ! เรา ต่อ แท็กซี่ ไป ดี กว่า นั่ง รถ เียน ๆ อารมณ์ จะ ได้ ดี ขึ้น เฮ้ ! แท็กซี่ มิเตอร์ มา แล้ว

จ้อย โบก มือ เรียก แท็กซี่ เมื่อ แท็กซี่ จอด จ้อย เปิด ประตู หน้า ถาม แท็กซี่:

จ้อย: ไป ลาด พั่วว สังคม สงเคราะห์ ขอย สาม มั้ย คะ

คน ขับ รถ แท็กซี่ มอง จ้อย ด้วย แวว ตา ขึ้น ขอบ เขา คิด ว่า สาว ทั้ง สอง สวย มาก มี สาว สวย ๆ นั่ง อยู่ ใน รถ ถึง รถ จะ ติด ก็ ไม่ ทำให้ หงุด หิด

แท็กซี่: เชิญ เชิญ ครับ

จ้อย เปิด ประตู หลัง ให้ นิกก็ เข้า ไป นั่ง ก่อน แล้ว ก็ ขึ้น ตาม พร้อม กับ รีบ ปิด ประตู รถ

จ้อย: เร็ว หน่อย นะ พี่ เรา สาย มาก แล้ว ลาด พั่วว สังคม สงเคราะห์ ขอย สาม นะ พี่

คน ขับ รถ แท็กซี่ พยัก หน้า รับ ทราบ เขา มอง จ้อย และ นิกก็ ที่ กระจก หลัง คน ขับ ยิ้ม และ คิด ในใจ: “ทั้ง สอง สาว ช่าง น่า รัก น่า เอ็นดู จริง ๆ”

ประมาณ ครึ่ง ชั่วโมง ต่อ มา แท็กซี่ ก็ มา ถึง บ้าน ของ แมว นิกก็ ลง จาก รถ ใน ขณะ ที่ จ้อย จ่าย ค่า แท็กซี่ ให้ คน ขับ จ้อย ให้ ทิป เขา หนึ่ง ร้อย บาท ด้วย

จ้อย: เฮ้ ฉัน ให้ ทิป หนึ่ง ร้อย

แท็กซี่ รับ เงิน แล้ว ไหว้ จ้อย จาก นั้น ก็ เหยียบ คัน เร่ง แล้ว ขับ ออก ไป จ้อย เห็น แมว เดิน มา เปิด ประตู รั้ว เธอ มี สี หน้า บ้าง ตึง

แมว: เฮ้ย จ้อย ! นิกก็ ! พวก เธอ ทำไม มา สาย ละ

จ้อย: อย่า ถาม เลย นะ

นิกก็: ก็ รถ มัน ติด นะ ชี

**Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 11.2.**

rót tít ñk lɛɛw .

*Car to-be-stuck again already.*

côj kàp níkkû kamlang cà paj hǎa mɛɛw thî bâan naj chûang weelaa thî rót >

*Joy and/with Nikki [aux. verb continuous tense] shall to-go to-look-for Maew in/at house in part time that car >*

tít . thǎng sǒong khûen rǒtmee pràp-aakàat sǐ sôm . nûeang-càak khruêang pràp-aakàat >

*to-be-stuck. Entire two to-ascend bus air-conditioned color orange. Because machine air-conditioning >*

sǎa tham hǎi aakàat naj rót rǒon mǎak , ñk thǎng khon kô nɛn . chǒok dii thî >

*Broken to-make to-give {to make that} air in car hot much. More (moreover) all people quite crowded. Luck good that >*

sǒong sǎaw dǎi thî nǎng naj-khàa-thî khon sùn jǎi tǒng juen hǒon >

*two girls to-get place to-sit while people part large to-must to-stand to-cling >*

raaw . rǔe kǒ? phánák kǎw?-îi phûea mǎi hǎi lóm mûea rót brèek .

*rail. or to-hold-tight backrest chair in-order-to no/not to-allow to-fall when car to-break .*

phoo rót long càak thaang dùan lɛ? lɛn khǎw paj thaang thànǒn dín dɛɛng , >

*As-soon-as car to-descend from way express and to-move to-enter to-go direction road Din Daeng.>*

sǎaw thǎng sǒong kô moong hɛn rót tít pen thaang jaaw tɛɛ-klaj .

*girl all two also to-look to-see car to-be-stuck to-be direction long far-away.*

mûea rót còot pǎaj :

*When car to-stop sign (bus stop):*

níkkû: ôo . mii dèk khûen maa dûaj . raw khong tǒng >

*Nikki: Hey. To-be-present/to-have child to-ascend to-come also. We sure to-must >*

lúk hǎi dèk nǎng dii kwàa .

*to-stand-up to-give child to-sit good [part. superlative degree] .*

côj: àraj kan . chǎn jang mûeaj lɛ? nûeaj jûu leuj . khûiàt lúk . hǎi khǎw juen thèu? .

*Joy: What? (what are you saying?) . I still/yet to-be-fatigued and to-be-tired to-stay (here: particle continuous tense) onward/utterly. Lazy to-stand-up. To-give he/she to-stand [instigating part.]. >*

níkkû: côj wǎa àraj ná . mii námcaj nòoj sí . >

*Nikki: Joy to-say what [emphatic part.]. to-have thoughtfulness a-little [emphatic part.] >*

thǎa dèk mǎi dǎi nǎng dèk àat-cà thùuk rót wǎang >

*If child no/not to-have-opportunity to-sit child maybe [passive voice part.] to-fling >*

hòk lóm lɛ? dǎi rǎp ubàttihèet ná.

*to-fall-over to-fall and to-have-opportunity to-receive accident [emphatic part.] .*

côj: chǎn mǎi sǒn . új . duu sí . dèk khon níu nǎa-rák >

Joy: *I (informal) not interested. [expression of surprise]. To-look [emphatic part.]. Child [classifier for people] this loveable >*

cang . mǎe . nǎa-sǒngsǎan . ǎw . núu maa nǎng mǎj . phǔak phǔ >

*extremely. [expression of surprise]. Pitiful. [exclamation of approval]. Mouse to-come to-sit [question part.]. Group older-sister >*

cà long léew là . níkkhū long kan thèu? .

*to-shall to-descend already [emphatic part.] child. Nikki to-descend together [instigating part.].*

côj kàp níkkhū long càak rǒt-mee . léew-kô deun paj súe ajtim maa khon lá >

*Joy and/with Nikki to-descend from bus. Then/afterwards to-walk to-go to-buy ice-cream to-come person per >*

thèeng . phǔak khǎw khōj-khōj deun kin ajtim con mǒt naj weelaa sǒong sǎam naathii .

*[class.]. Group he/she slowly to-walk to-eat ice-cream finished in time two three minute.*

níkkhū: níu côj phǔut lèn jǔu dǎj . dǎw khon uèn cà mǎj khǎwcaj wǎa >

Nikki: *This Joy to-speak to-play {to joke} to-stay to-can. Presently person other to-shall no/not to-understand that >*

thèu phǔut lèn rǔe phǔut cing , rǔu mǎj . khon khǎw cà khít wǎa >

*You to-speak to-play or to-speak real. To-know [question part.]. Person he/she to-shall to-think that >*

thèu bǎa rǔe pen mǎe-mót .

*you crazy or to-be witch.*

côj: thǔeng cà pen mǎe-mót . tèe kô pen mǎe-mót thǔi sǔaj mǔean naang fáa .

Joy: *Until to-shall to-be witch. But then to-be witch that beautiful the-same-as angel.*

níkkhū: phéu cèu . bǎa léew .

Nikki: *To-talk-nonsense. Crazy already.*

níkkhū kamlang-cà khāam thǎnǒn dǒoj mǎj moong sǎaj khwǎa .

*Nikki about-to to-cross street by no/not to-look left right.*

côj: jǎa khāam thǎnǒn trong níu nǎ . khraj lá thǔi bǎa kan nǎe . ǎu ! raw >

Joy: *Don't to-cross street at-this-point [emphatic part.]. Who then that/which crazy [reciprocal part.] for-sure. Hey! We >*

tòu thèksū paj dii kwàa . nǎng rǒt jen-jen >

*to-continue taxi from-now-on good [part. superlative degree]. To-sit car cool-cool >*

aarom cà dǎj dii khūen . ǎw ! thèksū mǐtèu maa léew .

*mood to-shall to-have-opportunity good to-increase. [expression of approval]! Taxi meter to-come already.*

côj bǒok mue riak thèksū . muea thèksū còot côj pèut pràtuu nǎa thǎam thèksū :

*Joy to-wave hand to-call taxi. When taxi to-stop Joy to-open door front to-ask taxi:*

côj: paj lâatphráaw sǎngkhom sǎngkhro? sooj sǎam mǎj khá .

Joy: *To-go Lad Phrao Sangkhom Songkhroh lane three [question part].>*  
*[polite part. f].*

khon khàp rôt theksû moong côj dūaj wɛɛw taa chûen-chôop . khǎw khít wâa sǎaw thǎng >

*Person to-drive car taxi to-look-at Joy with expression eye to-admire. He to-think that girl all >*

sǎong sǎaj mǎak . mii sǎaw sǎaj sǎaj nǎng jùu naj rôt . thǔeng rôt cà tít kô >

*two beautiful much. To-have/to-be-present girl beautiful to-sit to-stay in car. Although car to-shall to-be-stuck also >*

mǎj tham hǎj ngút ngút .

*not to-make to-give irritated.*

théksû: cheun . cheun kháp .

Taxi: *Please/to-invite. Please/to-invite [polite part. m].*

côj pèut pràtuu lǎng hǎj níkkû khǎw paj nǎng kòon . léew-kô khûen >

*Joy to-open door rear to-give Nikki to-enter to-go to-sit first. Afterwards to-ascend >*

taam phróom kàp rûp pít pràtuu rôt .

*To-follow in-unison with to-hurry to-close door car.*

côj: rew nòoj ná phû . raw sǎaj mǎak léew . lâat phráaw sǎngkhom >

Joy: *Fast a-little [incentive part.] older brother. We late much already. Ladphrao Sangkhom >*

sǎngkhro? sooj sǎam ná phû .

*Songkhroh lane three [incentive part.] older brother.*

khon kháp rôt theksû phájak nǎa rǎp sǎap . khǎw moong côj lé? níkkû thû kràcòk >

*Person to-drive car taxi to-nod face to-receive to-know. He to-look-at Joy and Nikki in mirror >*

lǎng . khon kháp jím lé? khít naj caj : “thǎng sǎong sǎaw chǎng nǎa rǎk nǎa enduu cing cing” >

*rear. Person to-drive to-smile and to-think in heart “All two girl specialist good-to to-love {lovely} good-to to-be-loving {charming} real [reduplication sign].*

pràmaan khrueng chûamòong tòo maa theksû kô maa thǔeng bǎan khǒong mɛɛw . níkkû long >

*About half hour to- taxi towards to-come {onwards, later} Taxi also/rather to-come to-arrive house belonging-to Maew. Nikki to-descend from car >*

càak rôt naj khànà thû côj càaj khǎa theksû hǎj khon khàp . côj hǎj thíp khǎw nùeng róoj bàat dūaj .

*in moment that Joy to-pay cost taxi to-give person to-drive. Joy to-give tip he/she one hundred Baht also.*

côj: ǎw ! chǎn hǎj thíp nùeng róoj .

Joy: *Here. I to-give tip one hundred.*

théksû rǎp nguen lé? wǎj côj . càak nán kô jàp khan-rêng >

*Taxi to-receive money and [to thank with a ‘wai’] Joy. From that then to-step-on accelerator >*



léew khàp òok paj . côj hěn mēew deun maa pèut pràtuu rúa . theu mii sǐ nâa >

*Then to-drive off to-go (direction indicator). Joy to-see Maew to-walk to-come door fence. She to-have color face {facial expression} >*

bûeng tueng .

*sulky.*

mēew: héuj côj ! níkkû ! phûak theu thammaj maa sǎaj lâ? . >

*Maew: Hey Joy! Nikki! Group you (you plural) why to-come late [emphatic part.] >*

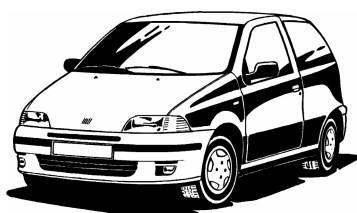
côj: jàa thǎam leuj nâa .

*Joy: Don't to-ask at-all [emphatic part.].*

níkkû: kôo rót man tít ná sí.!!

*Nikki: Well car it to-be-stuck. [emphatic part.][part. to emphasize the preceding statement].*

cd 1b Vocabulary  
track 11



รถ

รถ

rót

car

ติด

tít

1. to stick, to be stuck;  
2. to connect

รถ ติด

rót tít

1. traffic jam; 2. to be stuck  
in a traffic jam; to form a  
traffic jam



รถ เมล์

อีก แล้ว

`ík léew

once again, yet again

กับ

kàp

1. with; 2. and

กำลัง

kamlang

1. to be busy doing...  
(continuous tense); 2. power,  
force

กำลัง จะ

kamlang cà

just about to ...

หา

hǎa

1. to seek, to look for; 2. to  
accuse

ใน

naj

in

ช่วง

chûang

period, part, phase, stage

เวลา

weelaa

time

ในช่วง เวลา ที่

naj chûang weelaa

while, on the moment

ที่

thîi

that ...

ทั้ง สอง

tháng sǒong

both

ขึ้น

khûen

1. (to go) up; 2. to enter, to  
mount

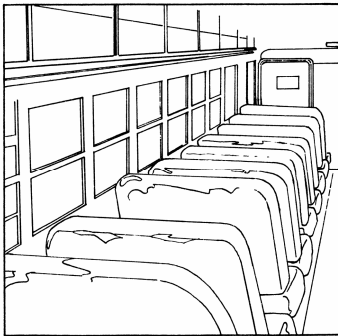


ทั้ง สอง

รถ เมล์

rót mee

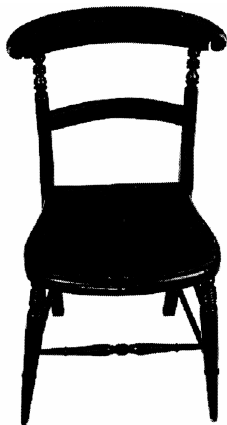
bus (for transport within the  
city)



ที่นั่ง



โหน



เก้าอี้

ปรับ

pràp

1. to adjust, to tune; 2. to level, to smooth; 3. to fine

อากาศ

aakàat

1. air; 2. weather

ปรับ อากาศ

pràp aakàat

air conditioning; air conditioned

ส้ม

sôm

orange, tangerine

สี ส้ม

sii sôm

orange (color)

เนื่องจาก

nûeang càak

1. due to; 2. to be a result of; to arise from

เครื่อง

khûeang

1. machine, apparatus, engine; 2. mechanism

เสีย

sǎa

1. broken; 2. spoiled

ทำให้

tham hâj

to make that, to cause to

อีก

ìik

1. more; 2. again; 3. other, another; 4. else; 5. yet; 6. as well

ทั้ง

tháng

all, everything of, everybody, total

ทั้ง คน

tháng khon

all people

แน่น

nên

1. tight, compressed, dense; 2. crowded; 3. to jam

โชค ดี

chòok dii

lucky; to be lucky

สอง

sǒong

two

สาว

sǎaw

girl, young woman

สอง สาว

sǒong sǎaw

the two young women

ได้

dǎj

1. to can; 2. to obtain; 3. particle for past tense

ที่

thîi

1. place; 2. in, at; 3. for, because; 5. that, the fact that, what; 6. that, which (relative pronoun)

นั่ง

nâng

to sit

ที่นั่ง

thîi nâng

seat, place to sit

ในขณะที่

naj khàrà thîi

while

ส่วนใหญ่

sùan jàj

1. a large part; 2. most of (...)

ยืน

juen

to stand

โหน

hǒon

to hang, to swing, to cling



ลง

ราว

raaw

rail; railing

หรือ

r<sup>ue</sup>

1. or; 2. question particle for a yes-no question

เกาะ

kò?

1. to hold, to cling, to clamp; 2. island

พนัก

phánák

backrest, squab (of a seat)

เก้าอี้

kâw? íi

chair

เพื่อ

phûea

1. in order to, so that

(conjunction); 2. on behalf of, for (preposition)

ไม่ให้

mâj hâj

to not allow; here: to not cause

ล้ม

lóm

to fall, to topple, to fall down

เมื่อ

mûea

1. when, while, at the time; 2. if; 3. first element in time-phrases (เมื่อ ก่อน (formerly); เมื่อ คืน นี้ (last night))

เบรค

brèek

break; to break (f. English)

พอ

phoo

1. just when, as soon as, just after

ลง

long

1. to descend; 2. to get off (a bus), to get out (of a car)

ป้าย

ทาง

thaang

1. way, path; 2. way, means, chance; 3. direction; 4. channel (diplomatic, official); 5. quarters, side (official, military)

ด่วน

dùan

1. urgent; 2. hasty; 3. express

ทางด่วน

thaang dùan

express way (in Bangkok); highway

เล่น

lên\*

1. to move, to run; 2. to glide, to sail; 3. to solder, to connect

ถนน

thànǎn

street

ดินแดง

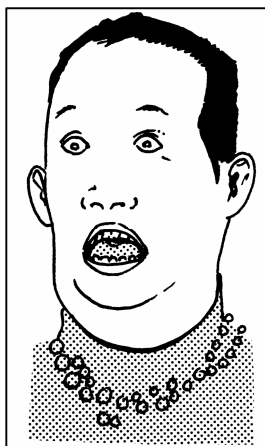
din dæeng

Din Daeng; street and district in Bangkok

มอง

moong

1. to look, to look at, to glance; 2. to consider; 3. to take care



อะไรกัน

เห็น

hěn

1. to see, to behold; 2. to have vision; 3. to discern, to



เหนื่อย



หก ล้ม



อุบัติเหตุ

ยาว  
แต่ไกล  
จอด  
ป้าย

โอ้  
เด็ก  
ด้วย  
คง

ต้อง  
ลุก  
ดีกว่า  
อะไร กัน

อยาก  
มัน

ซี้เกียจ  
เมื่อย

เหนื่อย  
ว่า

นะ  
น้ำใจ:

หน่อย

ซี

ถ้า  
อาจ จะ  
ถูก

jaaw  
tèe klaj  
còot  
pâaj

ôo  
dèk  
dûaj  
khong  
tông  
lúk  
dii kwàa  
àraj kan

jàak  
man  
khî kiat  
mûeaj

nûeaj  
wâa

ná  
námcaj

nòoj

sí

thâa  
àat cà  
thùuk

understand  
long, prolonged, stretched  
from far away  
1. to stop; 2. to park  
1. signboard, poster; *here*:  
bus stop (short for  
ป้าย รถ เมย์)  
oh!; ah!  
child  
1. also; 2. with  
1. probably, sure to, likely to  
(auxiliary verb)  
must  
to stand up  
better  
what?: exclamation of  
surprise  
to want  
1. it; 2. 3<sup>rd</sup> pers. Singular and  
plural (derogative)  
lazy  
to be tired, fatigued (from  
exertion)  
to be tired, to be exhausted  
1. to say; 2. to criticize, to  
scold; 3. ..., that (relative pr.)  
expletive particle ('please')  
good will, thoughtfulness;  
heart, spirit, friendliness  
1. a little, a trifle; 2. little,  
few  
1. incentive particle; 2. emphat-  
ic particle ('hey', 'come on')  
if  
maybe, perhaps  
1. particle to form the  
passive voice; 2. inexpensive,



แหม



ซื้อ



ไอติม

เหวี่ยง

หก ล้ม

ได้รับ

อุบัติเหตุ

ฉัน

สนใจ

อ๋อ

ดู ขี

น่ารัก

จริง

แหม

น่า สงสาร

เฮ้

หนู

พวก

พวก พี่

ลง

เถอะ

กัน

เดิน

ซื้อ

ไอติม

คน ละ

wiang

hòk lóm

dāj rāp

ubàtìhèet

chǎn

sǒn

új

duu sí

nāa rāk

cang

měe

nāa sǒngsǎan

āw

nūu

phûak

phûak phî

long

thèu?

kan

deun

súe

ajtim

khon lá

cheap; 3. right

1. to hurl, to throw, to cast;

2. to brandish

to fall, to tumble over, to slip

to get, to receive, to obtain

accident

I (informal female; archaic

Informal for men)

short for: สนใจ - sǒncāj;

to be interested in

oh, dear

look at it! look there!

sweet, cute, pretty, lovely,

charming

really, truly, indeed

interjection of surprise,

blame

pitiful, forlorn, sad

here! Look here; here you are

1. mouse; 2. Personal pronoun for the 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular (for kids and teenage girls)

group

we (as older sisters)

1. to descend, to go down;

2. to get out of; 3. to diminish

diminish

short for เกิด - thèut; particle

to mark a command or a request

particle to indicate plural or reciprocity: 'together', 'each other'

to walk

to buy

ice cream (also ไอศกรีม - ajsàkrim)

1. each; 2. per person



แม่ มด



นาง ฟ้า



ข้าม ถนน

แท่ง	thêeng	bar, chunk (classifier for ice cream cones)
พวก เขา	phûak khăw	they (3 <sup>rd</sup> person plural)
ค่อย ๆ (ค่อย - ค่อย)	khôj khôj	slowly, calm, easy
หมด	mòt	finished (adverb)
ใน	naj	in
สาม	săam	three
นาที	naathii	minute
“นี่ จ้อย”	nîi côi	“Joy, you...”
พูด เล่น	phûut lèn	to make jokes
...อยู่ได้	... jùu dâj	... constantly (idiom)
เดียว	dīaw	1. moment, instant; 2. in a moment, momentarily
อื่น	ùen	other, different
คน อื่น	khon ùen	other people
จะ	cà	to shall, to will (indicator of intention; near future)
เข้าใจ	khâwcaj	to understand
พูด จริง	phûut cing	to speak the truth; make no jokes
รู้ มั้ย	rúu mǎj	short for: รู้ไหม - rúu mǎj - ‘you know?’
คิด	khít	to think
คิด ว่า	khít wâa	to think that
บ้า	bâa	crazy
แม่ มด	mêe mót	witch
ถึง จะ ... แต่ ก็	thûeng cà ... tềe kô	maybe... but (still) ..., even as..., but still
เหมือน	mũean	as, equal to, the same
นาง ฟ้า	naang fáa	angel, fairy
เพ้อเจ้อ	phêu cêu	to talk foolishly, to talk nonsense
ข้าม	khâam	to cross
ซ้าย	sáaj	left
ขวา	khwǎa	right



แท็กซี่



เรียก



คน ขับ รถ

อย่า

jàa

don't (often followed by a verb)

ตรง นี้

trong níi

here, at this spot

น่า

nâa

stronger form of นะ - nâ (emphatic particle)

ใคร ละ

khraj là

who then; who actually

กัน

kan

particle to form plurality or reciprocity; 'together', 'each other'

แน่

nêe

certain

เออ !

êu

1. hey; 2. ah, whatever

แท็กซี่

théksîi

taxi

ต่อ

tò

1. to connect, to join; 2. to go on; to continue; 2. towards

ต่อ ไป

tò paj

1. to go on, to go further; 2. in the future

เย็น

jen

cool

อารมณ์

aarom

1. mood, feeling, temper; 2. humor

ดีขึ้น

dii khûen

better

แท็กซี่ มีเตอร์

théksîi miitêu

metered taxi

เรียก

rîak

to call

เปิด

pèut

to open

ประตู

pràtuu

door

หน้า

nâa

1. front, in front; 2. face

ประตู หน้า

pràtuu nâa

front door

ถาม

thăam

to ask

ลาดพร้าว

lâat phráaw

street in Bangkok ('studded with coconut trees')

สังคม สงเคราะห์

săngkhom

street in Bangkok

sôngkhró?

('helpful community')

ซอย

sooj

alley, street off a ถนน - thànǎn (through road)

มั๊ย

máj

shortened form of ไหม - mǎi (general question particle)

คน ขับ รถ

khon khàp rót

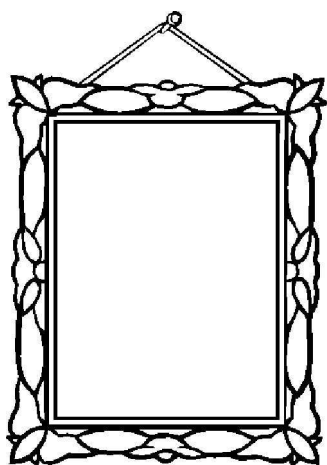
chauffeur, driver



แหว ตา



รีบ



กระจก

ด้วย	dûaj	1. also; 2. with
แหว ตา	wæw taa	expression in the eyes (way of looking)
ตา	taa	eye
ชื่น ชอบ	chûen chôop	to admire; to like
คิด	khít	to think
ว่า	wâa	1. to say; 2. to administer, to scold; 3. that (conjunction)
สวย	sǔaj	beautiful
ถึง	thûeng	until; to; up to, towards, as far as
ถึง ... ก็	thûeng ... ko	even if ... however still...; in spite of..., still
ทำให้	tham hâj	to make that, to cause that (causative)
หงุด หงิด	ngút ngít	irritated
เชิญ	cheun	1. please, go ahead; 2. to invite
หลัง	lǎng	behind
ประตู หลัง	pràtuu lǎng	back door
ไป	paj	1. to go; 2. to
ก่อน	kòon	first
แล้ว ก็	léew kô	1. (and) then; 2. (and) next; 3. and also
ตาม	taam	1. to follow; 2. according to
พร้อม	phróom	1. at the same time, in unison; 2. ready, set
รีบ	rûp	to hurry
ปิด	pít	to close
เร็ว	rew	fast
หน่อย	nòoj	(a) little; (a) few
นะ	ná	expletive particle ('please')
เรา	raw	we
สาย	sǎaj	late, too late
พี่	phû	older brother or sister (also used as a personal pronoun/ term of address (3 <sup>rd</sup> person singular)





ยิ้ม



จ่าย



บึ้ง ตึง



รั้ว

พยัก หน้า

รับ ทราบ

กระจก

กระจก หลัง

ยิ้ม

คิด ในใจ

ช่าง น่ารัก

น่า เอ็นดู

ครึ่ง

ชั่วโมง

ของ

ใน ขณะที่

จ่าย

ค่า

ทิป

(หนึ่ง) ร้อย

บาท

ไหว้

จาก นั้น

เหยียบ

คัน เร่ง

ออกไป

รั้ว

ด้วย

สี หน้า

บึ้ง ตึง

เฮ้ย

พวก เธอ

เลย

phájak nâa

ráp sâap

kràcòk

kràcòk lǎng

jím

khít naj caj

châang nâarâk

nâa enduu

khrueng

chûamoung

khõong

naj khànà thû

càaj

khâa

thíp

(nùeng) róoj

bàat

wâj

càak nán

jiap

khan rêng

òok paj

rúa

dûaj

sîi nâa

bûeng tueng

hêuj

phûak theu

leuj

to nod the head

to show that one understood  
or heard what is said

mirror

rear-view mirror

to smile

to think by oneself (to think  
in the heart)

lovely girl; cutie pie

lovely, charming, sweet

half, mid, midway

hour (as a unit of time)

1. thing; 2. of (possessive  
pronoun), belonging to

while

to pay

costs, price, value, expense

tip (from English)

(one) hundred

Baht

to greet or thank someone  
with a 'wâj'

after that

to put one's foot upon, to  
step on, to tread on

accelerator, gas pedal

away, to go away

fence

1. also; 2. with

expression (on s.o.'s face)

1. sullen, sulky, unsmiling,  
2. stern

hey!; hullo!; ah...

you (plural)

emphatic particle: 'at all' (in

		negations); very, utmost (in statements)
ละ	lâ	emphatic particle (also ละ - lá)
น่า	nâa	strong incentive particle
นะ ขี้	ná sí	emphatic/incentive particle

## Translation of dialogue 11.2

### Stuck in traffic again

Joy and Nikki are about to visit Maew at home while there are traffic jams. The two girls take an orange bus with air-conditioning. Because the engine of the air conditioner is broken, the bus gets very hot. And it is completely filled with people. Luckily the two girls have a seat while most people have to stand, hanging from hand-rails, or clinging to backrests of chairs, in order not to fall when the bus breaks. When the bus drives down from the express way and moves into Din Daeng Road, the girls can see a long traffic jam which reaches far into the distance. When the bus stops at a bus stop:

- Nikki: Oh! There are children getting on the bus. We'd better stand up to let the children sit down.
- Joy: What? I am still sore and tired. I don't want to get up. Let them stand.
- Nikki: What are you saying, Joy! Be a little nicer! If those children cannot sit down, maybe they'll be flung all over the place and they'll get an accident!
- Joy: I'm not interested. Oi! Look at that child! How cute. Ah, poor thing. Here, why don't you come and sit down. We are getting off already. Come on, Nikki, let's get off.

Joy and Nikki get off the bus. Then they walk on and buy an ice cream each. They walk without haste for a few minutes eating their ice cream.

- Nikki: Hey, Joy, you can go on making jokes all the time, but in a while people won't know whether you're joking or being serious, you know. People will think you're crazy, or a witch!
- Joy: I may be a witch, but then I'm a witch who's as pretty as an angel.
- Nikki: You're talking rot. You're crazy.

Nikki is about to cross the road, while neither looking left nor right.

- Joy: Don't cross the road here, girl! Who's the one who's crazy now? Eh! We'd better take a taxi from here. In a cool car our temper will get better. Ah! There comes a taxi-meter.

Joy waves her hand to call the taxi. When the taxi stops, Joy opens the front door and asks the driver:

- Joy: Can you bring us to Lad Phrao Sangkhom Songkhroh Soi three?

The taxi driver looks at Joy with an admiring expression in his eyes. He thinks: those are both very pretty girls. If there are pretty girls in my car, there might be a traffic jam, but at least I wouldn't become irritated.

- Taxi: Get in. Please get in.

Joy opens the back door to let Nikki get in first. Then she gets in herself, while quickly pulling the door of the car closed behind her.

- Joy: We'll have to hurry a bit, driver. We are much too late already. Lad Phrao Sangkhom Songkhroh Soi three, okay, driver?

The taxi driver nods that he has understood. He looks at Joy and Nikki in the rearview mirror, smiles, and thinks by himself: “These girls are both really very pretty and cute.”

In about half an hour, the taxi arrives at Maew’s house. Nikki gets out of the car while Joy pays the fare to the taxi driver. Joy also gives him a hundred Baht tip.

Joy: Here, I give you a hundred Baht tip.

The taxi driver takes the money and thanks Joy with a ‘wai’. Then he puts his foot upon the accelerator and drives off. Joy sees Maew walking towards them to open the fence door. She has an unsmiling expression on her face.

Maew: Hey Joy! Nikki! Why are you so late!?

Joy: Please don’t ask...

Nikki: Well, there were traffic jams! Why else!

## 11.3 Idioms

วะ	wá	emphatic particle; rather rustic. Listen to how market vendors use it. Young urbanites might use it jocularly.
อ้าย	âaj	particle used in front of a name. Intimate for friends, but insulting when used in front of the name of a stranger.
กู	kuu	‘I’ – This personal pronoun is used a lot by Thai people, but as a foreigner you should use it with care. It shows intimacy when used among friends, but it is highly insulting when used to other persons. Towards strangers it is used in anger, and on occasions where one deliberately wishes to insult someone.
มึง	mueng	‘you’ - This is the equivalent in the second person singular of กู (kuu)
มัน	man	neutral ‘it’, or ‘he’ or ‘she’ when you’re talking about your dog, cat, buffalo or other domestic animal. Insulting when used in talking about people you don’t like. It is also the third person singular equivalent of กู (kuu) and มึง (mueng). There are Thais who don’t like these three words, and who therefore never use them.
แจ๋ว	cǎew	1. clean; 2. clear of eyes and voice; and 3. ‘cool’, ‘terrific’, ‘way out’. This slang word can mean everything that’s cool and nice. This last meaning has been emphasized by a popular motion picture, called ‘แจ๋ว’, about a couple of cleaning ladies who are recruited to be spies, and get mixed up in all kinds of intrigues and situations.

เฮ้ย	héuj	‘ah’, ‘whatever’, or ‘hey!’. A rather rustic expression. Also jocularly used by the Bangkokian youth.
อย่าถามนะ	jàa thǎam nâ	‘Don’t ask...’ Used when one has just gone through a ‘terrible’ experience, after which the whole story is usually told in full detail.
นั่นนะซีเล่า	ngán nâ sii lâw	‘That’s how it is’, ‘that’s how it went’, or: ‘That’s why’
ข้างซ้าย	khâang sǎaj	left, the left side (also politically)
ข้างขวา	khâang khwǎa	right, the right side (also politically)

## 11.4 Grammar

### a. The imperative mood (and its negative)

The imperative mood is a grammatical mood that expresses direct commands or requests. It is also used to signal a prohibition, permission or any other kind of exhortation. There are two particles which are used in spoken Thai to form an imperative:

1. ซิ - sí (with as a longer, more emphatic variant ซี้ - sîi):

พูด ซิ	<i>to-say ‘sí’</i>
phûut sí	‘Say it’
ถามเขา ซิ ครับ	<i>to-ask he/she ‘sí’ [polite particle m.]</i>
thǎam khǎw sí khráp	‘Ask him’
บอกเขา ซี้	<i>to-say he/she ‘sîi’</i>
bòok khǎw sîi	‘Say it to him/her’

An imperative can also be formed by using the following pattern:  
Predicate + reduplicated adjective/adverb:

ทำ ดี ดี (ดี ๆ)	<i>to-do good good</i>
tham dii dii	‘Do it well’

Or the following pattern:  
Predicate + ให้ - hâj + adjective/adverb:

จัด ให้ เรียบ ร้อย	<i>to-arrange ‘hâj’ tidy</i>
càt hâj riáp róoj	‘Arrange (it, everything) tidily’

2. เอะ - thèu? (short for the written language variant เกิด - thèut)

This particle can be translated with ‘let’s’, ‘shall we’. With the help of this particle an imperative can be formed, following the pattern: Predicate + ‘thèu?’

ไป ตลาด กัน เอะ	<i>to-go/to market together ‘thèu?’</i>
paj tàlàat kan thèu?	‘Let’s go to the market’

A negative imperative is formed by using the following pattern:

อย่า - jàa + Predicate *or* ห้าม - hàam + Predicate

(ห้าม - hàam indicates a prohibition; อย่า - jàa indicates either a prohibition or a strong suggestion)

อย่า ไป ตลาด	<i>don’t to-go/to market</i>
jàa paj tàlàat	‘Don’t go to the market’

ห้าม ไป ตลาด	<i>to-forbid to-go/to market</i>
hàam paj tàlàat	‘You can’t go to the market’ (I forbid you)

The negative imperative can be emphasized by adding adjuncts:

ห้าม ไป ตลาด เป็น อัน ขาด	<i>to-forbid to-go/to market under-no-circumstance</i>
	(เป็น อัน ขาด - ‘under no circumstance’ (idiom))
hàam paj tàlàat pen-an-khàat	‘Under no circumstance you can go to the market’

อย่า เข้า ไป (โดย) เด็ด ขาด	<i>Don’t to-enter to-go/to absolutely-not</i>
	((โดย) เด็ด ขาด - <i>absolutely not</i> (idiom))
jàa khâw paj (dooj) dèt-khàat	‘You may absolutely not enter!’

**b. The passive voice**

In Thai, the passive voice is – unlike in English – only used in phrases which bear a clear negative meaning, and in phrases which in themselves seem positive, but which one chooses to use in a negative connotation. The passive voice is formed by using the pattern:

Subject + ถูก - thùuk + agent (if any)<sup>12</sup> + predicate:

ถูก - thùuk also means ‘right’ and ‘inexpensive’, ‘cheap’, but in passive phrases it must be translated with ‘by’:

กระเป๋าสตางค์ ของ ผม ถูก ขโมย ไป	<i>bag money belong-to I (m) ‘thùuk’ to-steal to-go/to</i>
krápăw sàtang* khǒong phǒm thùuk	‘My wallet has been stolen.’
khàmdooj* paj	

<sup>12</sup> agent: acting indirect object

หมู ถูก เสือ กิน

mǔu thùuk sǔea kin

pig 'thùuk' tiger to-eat

'The pig is eaten by the tiger.'

เขา ถูก เลือก เป็น ส.ส.

khǎw thùuk lûeak pen sǒosǒo

he 'thùuk' to-choose to-be M.P.

'He was chosen as a Member of Parliament.'<sup>13</sup>

Another pattern to form the passive voice is:

Subject + ถูก - thùuk + Predicate + โดย - dōoj + agent:

โดย - dōoj can often be translated with 'by'

เขา ถูก หลอก ลวง โดย เมีย น้อย

khǎw thùuk lòòk luang dōoj mia nóoj

he 'thùuk' deceive 'dōoj' minor-wife

'He has been deceived by his minor wife.'

Finally, the passive voice can be formed with the word 'โดน - dōon', which means 'to hit', and which is used in very negative passive sentences following the pattern:

Subject + โดน - dōon + Predicate:

เขา โดน ประหาร ชีวิต

khǎw dōon pràhǎan chiiwít

he 'dōon' to-execute

'He is executed.'

The negative of the passive voice is formed by putting ไม่ - mâj - 'no', 'not' in front of the passive voice particle, or in front of โดน - dōon:

หมู ไม่ ถูก เสือ กิน

mǔu mâj thùuk sǔea kin

pig no/not 'thùuk' tiger to-eat

'The pig has not been eaten by the tiger.'

เขา ไม่ ถูก หลอก ลวง โดย เมีย น้อย

khǎw mâj thùuk lòòk luang dōoj mia nóoj

he no/not 'thùuk' to-deceive 'dōoj' minor wife

'He has not been deceived by his minor wife.'

เขา ไม่ โดน ประหาร ชีวิต

khǎw mâj dōon pràhǎan chiiwít

he no/not 'dōon' to-execute

'He is not executed.'

## 11.5 Cultural notes

For the reason mentioned in the dialogue, Thai people yield their seat to children in the bus. With their short arms, children cannot reach the rails and straps which grown-ups can grab when the bus moves through Bangkok traffic by fits and starts, abruptly breaking and acceler-

<sup>13</sup> ส.ส.: สมาชิกสภา - sàmmāchík sàphaa\* - Member of Parliament

ating, swerving and twisting and wavering from lane to lane. It is a remarkable sight to see two chubby kids in school uniform wearily eating sweets in their comfortable seats, while a venerable looking grandmother is hardly able to keep her foothold in the jolting bus.

Despite the fact that they sometimes take hours to reach their end stations, Bangkok busses are very useful, as they're inexpensive and they'll take you anywhere, even to areas which lie far beyond the city limits. As every tourist knows, it is a true adventure everywhere on earth to mount an arbitrary city bus and remain seated until the terminal has been reached. In Bangkok, you can cross the city in half a day for the price of a few Baht, by getting on a bus and riding from north to south or from east to west. You'll be able to see the sights and smell the fragrance of the great city just by remaining seated and enjoying the pleasurable rhythm of the moving bus.

But remember; give up your seat for children. And nobody will blame you if you do the same for elderly and handicapped people...

The taxis in which one should agree upon a fare for the ride beforehand are nearly obsolete in Bangkok. Taxi's now all have a meter. But if you like bargaining, you can always take a 'túk' (ตุ๊กตุ๊ก). These three-wheeled motor taxis are ideal for short distances. They are not to be found everywhere in Bangkok, though, and they cannot use the expressways. In smaller towns you can still find trishaws or sǎamlóo (สามล้อ). Motor taxis (normal motorcycles, on which you take a seat behind the driver and cling on to the seat or the driver for dear life) operate everywhere in the city and can be found at the entrance areas of sois. They are principally meant to be used by the inhabitants of those sois, and cost only little. For a little more, they'll take you everywhere in the city. They can transport you from home to work and vice versa, for instance. If you're stuck in a traffic jam again, you can leave your driver and car behind, and jump on the back of a motor taxi. Via the sois and over the pavement their daredevil drivers bring you to exactly where you want to be in a fraction of the time it would take a taxi. They are by far the fastest and cheapest means of transport to any place in Bangkok; and also - especially out of their sois - the most exhilaratingly dangerous.

## 11.6 Writing V; The vowels and diphthongs

In Thai, vowels are subordinate to consonants. They cannot exist without them. As vowels are always written in connection with a consonant; they cannot be read or written alone. Although the sound of a vowel connected to a consonant is always pronounced after the sound of the consonant it is connected to, a vowel character can be written in front, above, behind or under a consonant. Some vowels, and all diphthongs and triphthongs, are written with a combination of several vowel characters, which are put 'around' the consonant – in front, above and behind it. If a syllable exists of a vowel only, an 'empty' consonant is used to write the vowel sound (again: in front, above, behind, under or around it). This empty consonant, or 'vowel bearer', is the 'อ'.

In its role as a vowel bearer, 'อ' has no sound of its own. 'อ' and the vowel connected to it are pronounced as the vowel and only as the vowel.

Remember that 'อ' has more functions than one, though: It can be used on its own as a character for the vowels 'oo' and 'o'; it is part of the vowel 'eu', and of the vowel 'ue', when written in an open syllable. It is also one of the three elements of the diphthong 'uea'.

Loose vowels are usually written with ‘อ’ as their bearer, and so are all vowels in the list below. When a vowel is used in combination with another consonant character, the vowel is pronounced after the relevant consonant.

vowel/ diphthong	example	pronunciation	vowel/ diphthong	example	pronunciation
อะ (อั-)	จะ (มัน)	aʔ, a	อา	มา	aa
อิ	กิน	iʔ, i	อี	มี	ii
อี	บึ้ง	ueʔ, ue	อีอ (อี)	มือ (ป็น)	ue
อุ	วุฒ	uʔ, u	อู	พูด	uu
เอะ (เอ็-)	เอะ	eʔ, e	เอ	เล	ee
แอะ	และ	ɛʔ, ɛ	แอ	แ่ง	ɛɛ
โอะ	โผะ	oʔ	โอ	โซ	oo
เอาะ	เเกาะ	oʔ	ออ	บอ	oo
เออะ (เอ็-)	เบอะ, เงิน	euʔ, eu	เออ (เอ็-)	เธอ, เต็น	<u>eu</u>
เอียะ	เลี้ยะ	iaʔ	เอีย	เสี้ย	iia
เอือะ	เกือะ	ueaʔ	เอือ	เปือ	<u>uea</u>
อัวะ	ชาวจัวะ	uaʔ	อัว (-ว-)	วัว, ต้วน	ua
เอา	เขา	aw	อาว	สาว	aaw
อำ	ดำ	am	เอย	เลย	euʔ, <u>eu</u>
ฤ*	กฤติ	ri, reu, <u>rue</u>	ฤ**	ฤช	<u>reu</u> , <u>rue</u>
ฎ**	ฎา	lue, <u>lue</u>	ฎ**	ฎาชา	<u>lue</u>
ไ	ใจ	aj	ไ	ไว	aj, aaj
ไอย***	ไทย	aj	อัย	วิทยาลัย	aj
รร	บรรดา, กรรม	am, a	ไอย	โดย	ooʔj

\* rare \*\*very rare \*\*\* only used in a few words; one of them is: ไทย (‘Thai’)

#### Writing VI: the triphthongs:

triphthong	example	pronunciation	triphthong	example	pronunciation
เอาว	เลว	eew	แอาว	แมว	ɛɛw
เอียว	เขียว	iaw	อวย	ดัว	uaj
เอือย	เหนื่อ	<u>ueaj</u>			



**Writing VII: unwritten vowel sounds (inherent vowels):**

Inherent ‘ <b>อ</b> ’ in a single, closed syllable: Example: <b>นก</b> - nók - ‘bird’	Inherent ‘ <b>า</b> ’ in an open end-syllable: Example: <b>ศิลป</b> - sǐnlápà - ‘art’
Inherent ‘ <b>oo</b> ’ in a syllable ending with a nasal consonant: Example: <b>นคร</b> - nákhoon - ‘city’	Inherent ‘ <b>า</b> ’ in open begin-syllable existing only of ‘ <b>อ</b> ’(oo àang): Example: <b>อร่อย</b> - àroj - ‘tasty’
Inherent ‘ <b>อ</b> ’ - ‘ <b>า</b> ’ in successive syllables written with only two consonants: Example: <b>สริ</b> - sòrà - 1. ‘brave’; 2. ‘celestial’	Inherent ‘ <b>า</b> ’ - ‘ <b>า</b> ’ in successive syllables: Example: <b>ลลนา</b> - lálánaa - attractive girl
Inherent ‘ <b>oo</b> ’ - ‘ <b>า</b> ’ in successive syllables written with only two consonants: Example: <b>มรดก</b> - moorádòk - ‘inheritance’	Semi-inherent ‘ <b>อ</b> ’- ‘ <b>ิ</b> ’ in words starting with <b>บริ</b> - bri Example: <b>บริการ</b> - booríkaan - ‘service’, ‘to be of service’

**11.7 Diacritics and punctuation marks**

In Thai script, no full stops, commas and capital letters are used. Reading stops within and between sentences are indicated by a space between words – which are otherwise connected to each other without spaces. Question marks, exclamation marks, colons, semicolons and quotation marks are used in Thai texts, but are modern additions to the Thai set of punctuation marks, just like brackets, dashes and ellipses. In modern publications, commas are sometimes seen but are frowned upon by traditionalists. Generally accepted Thai punctuation marks include:

๗ ไปยาลน้อย (*pajjaan nój*)

This sign shortens a long word. For instance, Bangkok has one of the longest official city names in the world, but in daily speech the name is shortened to ‘krungthêep’, written in Thai as: กรุงเทพฯ ๗ The name on Bangkok vehicle license plates is กรุงเทพมหานคร (krungthêepmáhānākhoon), without ๗

๘ - กาไรณ์ต์ (*kaaran*)

The ‘swirl’ over a consonant at the end of a word means that this particular consonant, or the consonant cluster at the end of this syllable is not pronounced.

ๆ ยมก (*jámók*)

De ‘*jámók*’, placed behind a word indicates that the word should be pronounced twice, in order to express plurality or variety.

ๆ ไปยาลใหญ่ (*pajjaan jàj*)

Has the same function as the abbreviation ‘etc.’, or the sign ‘&c.’: ‘et cetera’

## 11.8 Exercises

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

1. เขาเป็น คน ไทย
2. กรุงเทพฯ ะ เป็น เมือง ที่ สวย มาก
3. จ้อย มี หน้าตา เหมือน ดารา
4. คน ส่วนใหญ่ ชอบ กิน อาหาร ที่ ร้าน อาหาร
5. ที่ หัว หิน มี ชาย หาด สวย
6. เชิญ เข้า มา ใน บ้าน ของ เรา
7. ทำไม เธอ ไม่ สนใจ
8. ที่ มหาวิทยาลัย รามคำแหง มี นักศึกษา เยอะ
9. ข้าว ถูก หมา กิน
10. ใคร ขาย ไข่ไก่

2. Write down all the letters of the Thai alphabet about ten or twelve times. Pronounce the letter and its name while you write it down. You should be able to write every letter without looking at examples to much.

3. Write down thirty words from the lessons you have learned so far. Explain with each word how it is written, and why it is pronounced as it is pronounced. Write down their English translations.

4. Translate the following sentences:

1. ผม อยาก เรียน ภาษาไทย
2. อาหารไทย อร่อย มาก
3. ที่ ประเทศไทย มี อาชญากรรม มาก ไหม
4. ดิฉัน จะ เรียก เพื่อน มา
5. คุณ ชอบ ไป เทียว หัว หิน ไช้ ไหม
6. แมว อยู่ ใน ศาลา “ร้อยเอ็ด”

7. ช่วย ซื้อ ดินสอ ให้ หน่อย ชี
8. แหม ฉัน ยัง ไม่ เคย มา สาย เลย
9. ไป ถนน ดิน แดง ชี มอเตอร์ไซด์ ดี กว่า
10. เด็ก คน นั้น ถูก รถ ชน

## 11.9 Answers to exercise 1

1. He/she is a Thai.
2. Bangkok is a city which is very beautiful.
3. Joy looks like a movie star.
4. Most people like to eat in a restaurant.
5. In Hua Hin is a nice beach.
6. Go ahead, please enter into our house.
7. Why are you not interested ?
8. At Ramkhamhaeng University are many students.
9. The rice has been eaten by the dog.
10. Who sells chicken eggs?



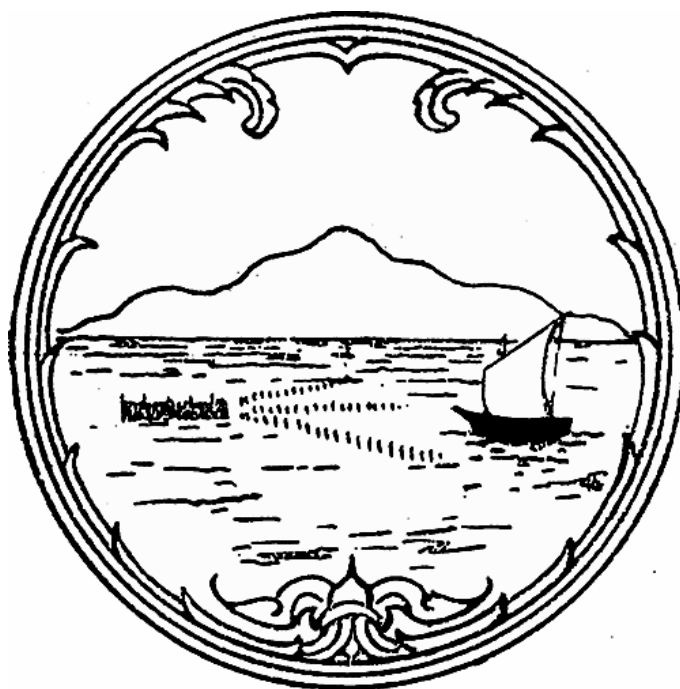
# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 12

### Out on the town in Bangkok

#### ไปเที่ยว กรุงเทพฯ ฯ

- 12.1 Introduction
- 12.2 Dialogue
- 12.3 Idioms
- 12.4 Cultural notes
- 12.5 Irregularities in Thai spelling and class modifiers
- 12.6 Writing VIII: The script and the tones.  
Further instructions in reading and writing
- 12.7 Exercises
- 12.8 Answers to exercise 1





## 12.1 Introduction

Part of lesson 12 is again a repetition exercise. Some subjects that have been presented to you in the course of the preceding lessons will be repeated, and tested against examples from reality. In this key lesson you'll bring your ready knowledge of the Thai script to perfection, and you'll take another step ahead in reading proficiency. In this lesson, the transcription and word-for-word translation of the dialogue will follow the dialogue in Thai for the last time. In the next part of the course, the word-for-word translation will be attached as an appendix. These appendices are meant as reminders, and practical help devices; they are not there to learn your lesson from. You'll see you'll need them less as your reading of the Thai script will become more and more fluent. Eventually you'll only be using the texts written in Thai and the two translations provided within the lesson (the word-for-word and the free translation). New words will be transcribed in the vocabulary lists. Words with an irregular pronunciation are marked with an asterisk (\*).

In the dialogue, Joy, Maew, Nikki, and Nikki's *farang* cousin Vincent are discussing ideas, and preparing themselves for a night out on the town in Bangkok.

cd 1b  
track 12

## 12.2 Dialogue

Out on the town in Bangkok

๑๒.๒. บท สนทนา  
ไป เที่ยว กรุงเทพ ฯ

[ไป เที่ยว กรุงเทพ ฯ]

จ้อย แมว และ นิกก็อยาก พา วินแซนซ์ ไป เที่ยว กรุงเทพ ฯ เขา ทั้ง สี่ คน พบ กัน ที่ บ้าน จ้อย ที่ เซ็นต์ หลุยส์ ซอย ๓ ถนน สาทร ได้ จ้อย เตรียม กับ แก้ว และ เครื่อง ต้ม ไข่ เลี้ยง เพื่อน ฯ

จ้อย: ตก ลง วินแซนซ์ เคย มา เที่ยว กรุงเทพ ฯ แล้ว ไช้ ไหม

วินแซนซ์: ไช้ แต่ ตอน นั้น ผม เคย ไป เที่ยว แต่ วัด พระ แก้ว และ สวน สัตว์ ดูลิต เท่านั้น เพราะ ญาติ ๆ พา ผม ไป เชียง ใหม่ ไป ห้วย หิน แล้ว ก็ ไป เกาะ เสม็ด สถานที่ เหล่า นั้น สวย มาก แต่ ผม ยัง ไม่ เคย มา เที่ยว กรุงเทพ ฯ จริง ๆ

นิกก็: ไช้ ตอน นั้น วินแซนซ์ ไม่ ค่อย ได้ ไป ไหน ใน กรุงเทพ ฯ นิกก็ พา เขา ไป ไหน ไม่ได้ ตอน นั้น พ่อ บอก ว่า นิกก็ ยัง เด็ก อยู่

วินแซนซ์: ตอน นั้น เธอ ยัง อายุ น้อย จริง ๆ ยัง ไม่ โต เหมือน ตอน นี้

นิกก็: แฮม เธอ เห็น ด้วย กับ พ่อ จัน อีก แล้ว นะ

จ้อย: อย่า มัว แต่ พุด เล่น กัน เลย เรา จะ ไป เที่ยว ที่ ไหน กัน ดี

- แมว: เรา น่าจะ พา วินแซนซ์ ไป พิพิธภัณฑสถาน แห่งชาติ วัดโพธิ์  
พระ ที่ นั่ง วิมานเมฆ พระ บรม มหาราชวัง ...
- นิกกี้: แล้ว ก็ ไป ตลาดนัด จตุจักร สยามเซ็นเตอร์ หลัง กระทรวง เจริญ  
นครเกษม แล้ว ก็ ไป โชว์โก๊ เซ็นทรัล ลาดพร้าว ... กรุงเทพฯ มี  
ห้างสรรพสินค้า เยอะ แยะ นะ



- จ้อย: แหม นิกกี้ อยาก ไป ซื้อ แต่ ของ เท่านั้น วินแซนซ์ เป็น ผู้ชาย รู้ มั้ย  
ถ้าเราเพียง แต่ พา เขา ไป ซื้อ ของ เขา อาจ จะ เบื่อ ไม่ ไป ไหน กับ  
เรา อีก เรา ควร จะ พา เขา ไป ชม พิพิธภัณฑสถาน ชิ-อู๋ ที่ โรงพยาบาล  
ศิริราช ...
- วินแซนซ์: อยาก พา ไป เทียว โรงพยาบาล หรือ
- จ้อย: ใช่ แล้ว โรงพยาบาล ศิริราช ดัง เรื่อง พิพิธภัณฑสถาน ชิ-อู๋ ชื่อ จริง คือ  
พิพิธภัณฑสถาน การ แพทย์ ศิริราช เป็น พิพิธภัณฑสถาน ด้าน นิติเวชศาสตร์  
แต่ คน ไทย เรียก ว่า พิพิธภัณฑสถาน ชิ-อู๋ เพราะ ใน พิพิธภัณฑสถาน แห่ง นี้  
เขา เก็บ สฟ แห้ง ของ ชิ-อู๋ อาชญากร ดัง ที่ สุด ของ ไทย อยาก ไป  
ไหม วินแซนซ์ คง ชอบ ไป ดู นะ
- แมว: ทำไม เรา ไม่ พา เขา ไป ที่ อื่นๆ ก่อน กรุงเทพฯ มี สถานที่ น่า สนใจ  
อีก มาก เช่น ตลาด น้ำ หรือ เรา พา เขา ไป ดู มวย ไทย ที่ สนาม



- มว ย ลุมพินี ก็ ได้
- จ้อย: สุด ยอด จริงๆ หรือ อาจ วินแซนท์ อยาก ไป เทียว พัฒนพงศ์ ด้วย  
เป็น สถานที่ ท่อง เทียว ยาม ราตรี ที่มี ตลาดนัด ชาย ของ ตลอด  
คืน ด้วย
- วินแซนท์: พัฒนพงศ์ หรือ ผม เคย ได้ยิน แล้ว ไม่ใช่ สถานที่ ท่อง เทียว นิยม  
ของ สุภาพบุรุษ ต่าง ชาติ หรือ จ้อย อยาก จะ พาผม ไป ทำไม ไม่  
ต้อง พา ไป เลย ที่อื่น ก็มี เยอะ
- จ้อย: ตามใจ นะ วินแซนท์ แล้ว แมว กับ นิกก็ ยัง มี ข้อเสนออื่น ใหม  
อยาก พา เพื่อน ไป ที่อื่น อีก หรือ เปล่า
- นิกก็: ใช่ จ้อย ลืม วัด อรุณ สวย น่า เทียว มาก แล้ว เรา ควร พา  
วินแซนท์ ไป เทียว ทัวร์ คลอง ธนบุรี ด้วย เรา ลง เรือ หาง ยาว ที่  
คลอง บางกอก น้อย แล้ว ก็ ชม บ้าน เมือง จาก ริม น้ำ
- แมว: เป็น ไอเดีย ที่ ดี นะ แต่ อย่า ลืม ว่า หลังจาก เทียว เสร็จ ใน ทุก วัน  
เรา น่า จะ พา พี่ วินแซนท์ ไป กิน ข้าว ใน ร้าน พิเศษ ด้วย
- จ้อย: แน่ๆ เลย ยังงั้น ตก ลง เรา จะ ไป เทียว ตลาดนัด จตุจักร พิพิธภัณฑ์  
สถาน แห่ง ชาติ พระ ที่นั่ง วิมานเมฆ สยาม เซ็นเตอร์ วัด โพธิ์ ...  
พิพิธภัณฑ์ ซี-อุย แล้ว ก็ ไป วัด อรุณ และ ไป ทัวร์ คลอง ธนบุรี  
ด้วย... แล้ว วินแซนท์ ชอบ ฟัง เพลง เพื่อ ชีวิต ใหม่

## Transcription and word for word translation of dialogue 12.2.

paj thíaw krungthêep .

*To-go/to to-make-a-pleasure-tour Bangkok .*

côj meew lé? níkkî jàak phaa winseên paj thíaw krungthêep . >

*Joy Maew and Nikki to-want to-lead/to-take Vincent to-go/to to-make-pleasure-tour Bangkok .>*

khăw thág sù khon phó p kan thíu bân côj thíu >

*He/she/they all four [class. for people] to-meet each-other at/in house Joy at/in >*

sen lűj sooj sām thànŏn sǎathoon tǎj . côj triam kàp-klēm lé? khruēang

*Sainte Louise soi three street 'Sathorn' South . Joy to-prepare snack and food-ingredient >*

dùem wáj líang phūean phūean .

*to-drink to-look-after friend friend.*

côj: tòk long . winseên kheuj maa thíaw krungthêep léew . chāj mǎj .

*Joy: O.K. . Vincent ever to-come to-make-pleasure-tour Bangkok already. Yes [question particle. Yes [question particle].*

- winseen: châj . tề toon-nán phỏm kheuj paj thiaw tề wát phrá kềw lé? >  
 Vincent: *Yes. But then I (m.) ever to-go/to to-make-pleasure-tour only/but Temple Holy Emerald and >*
- sũan sàt dùsít thawnán . phró? jâat-jâat phaa phỏm paj chiang mài .  
*Garden animal Dusit only. Because family-family to-lead I (m.) to-go/to Chiang Mai,*
- paj hũa hĩn . lếw kô paj kò? sàmèt . sàthhãan-thũ làw nán sủaj >  
*to-go/to Hua Hin. And then to-go/to Ko Samet . Place [class. f. groups] beautiful >*
- mâak tề phỏm jang mậj kheuj maa thiaw krungthêep cing-cing .  
*much but I (m.) yet no/not eve to-come to-make-pleasure-tour Bangkok really.*
- níkkũ: châj . toon-nán winseen mậj-khỏj dậj paj nắj nắj mueang krungthêep . >  
 Nikki: *Yes. Then Vincent hardly [particle of opportunity] to-go where in city Bangkok . >*
- níkkũ phaa khắw paj nắj mậj dậj . toon nán phỏo bỏok wũa níkkũ jang dềk jũu .  
*Nikki to-lead he to-go/to where no/not can. Period that father to-say that Nikki yet/still child to-remain.*
- winseen: toon-nán theu jang aajú nỏj cing-cing . jang mậj tợợ muean toon-nũ .  
 Vincent: *Then you yet/still age little really. Yet/still no/not big/mature same now.*
- níkkũ: mềe . theu hển dủaj kạp phỏo chắn`ũk lếw ná .  
 Nikki: *[interjection of surprise, indignation]. You to-see likewise with father I (f.) again already [emphatic part.].*
- cỏj: jầa mua tề phũut lên kan leuj . raw cà paj >  
 Joy: *Don't to-be-absorbed-in to-speak to-play together only/at-all. We shall to-go >*
- thiaw thũ-nắj kan dii .  
*to-make-pleasure-tour where together good.*
- mềew: raw nầa cà phaa winseen paj phớphớtháphan sàthhãan hềeng chầat . wát >  
 Maew: *We worth-doing shall to lead Vincent to Museum Place Nation. Temple >*
- phợợ . phrá thũ nằng wĩmaanmềek . phrá bởrom >  
*Bodhi (tree). Honored Place To-Sit Heavenly-abode-Cloud. Honored Supreme*
- máhhầa rầatchầawang ...  
*Exalted Palace... >*
- níkkũ: lếw-kỏ paj tầlàat nắt cầtucầk . sầjaam senteu . lắng >  
 Nikki: *And-then to-go/to market to-set-the-time Jatujak. Siam Center. Behind >*
- krầsủang . wềung nắkhoon kầsểem . lếw-kỏ paj sợợkợợ . senthrần lầat >  
*Ministry . Open-Space City Happy. And-then to-go/to Sogo. Central Lad >*
- phầầaw . krungthêep mii hầang sầpphầsỉnhầầa jếu? jế? nầ .  
*Phrao. Bangkok to-have store various-kinds-of-merchandise many many [emphatic part.].*

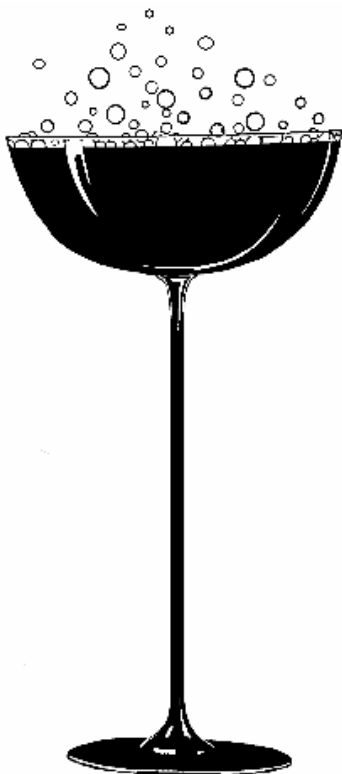
- côj: mề . níkkî jàak paj súe tềe khǒong thâwnán . >  
 Joy: [interjection of surprise, mild indignation]. Nikki to-want to-go to-buy thing only. >  
 winseên pen phûuchaaj rúu máj . thâa raw phiang tềe phaa khǎw paj >  
 Vincent to-be man to-know[question part.]. If we only but/only to-lead he to-go >  
súe khǒong . khǎw àat-cà bùea mǎj paj nǎj kàp raw`ík . raw khuan cà >  
 To-buy thing. He maybe bored to-go/to where with us again. We ought-to shall >  
 phaa khǎw paj chom phípíttháphan sii-uj thûi rǒongphájaabaan sîrîrát . >  
 to-lead he to-go/to to-admire museum Si-Uy at/in hospital Sirirath ... >
- winseên: jàak phaa paj thîaw rǒongphájaabaan rûe .  
 Vincent: To-want to-lead to-go/to to-make-pleasure-tour hospital [question particle].
- côj: chǎi lěw . rǒongphájaabaan sîrîrát dang rûeang phípíttháphan sii-uj . chûe cing >  
 Joy: Yes already. Hospital Sirirath well-known story/matter museum Si-Uy. Name real >  
 khûe phípíttháphan kaan phêet sîrîrát . pen phípíttháphan dâan nítîwêetchásàat . >  
 To-be museum matter/affair medical Sirirath. To-be museum field/aspect forensic-science, >  
 tềe khon thai ríak wâa phípíttháphan sii-uj phró? naj phípíttháphan hêeng ní  
 but people Thai to-call that/to-say museum Si-Uy because inside museum  
 [classifier for places] this >  
 khǎw kèp sòp hêeng khǒong sii-uj . àatchájakoon dang thûi-sút khǒong thaj .  
 he/they to-keep corpse dry of/belonging-to Si-Uy, criminal well-known [particle  
 superlative degree] of/belonging-to Thai(land).  
 jàak paj mǎj . winseên khong chôop paj duu ná .  
 To-want to-go [question particle]. Vincent probably to-like to-go to-see [emphatic  
 particle].
- mềw: thammaj raw mǎj phaa khǎw paj thûi uên uên koon . krungthêep mii sàthǎan thûi nǎa >  
 Maew: Why we no/not to-take he to-go place other [reduplication sign]. Bangkok to-have  
 place which worthy-to >  
 sǒnchaj `ík mâak . chên tàlàat nǎam . rûe raw phaa khǎw paj duu muaj thaj thûi >  
 to-be-interested-in more many. Example market water. Or we to-take he to-go to-  
 watch boxing Thai at >  
 sànnǎam muaj lumphínii kô dǎj .  
 field/stadium Lumpini rather to-can.
- côj: sút jôot cing cing . rûe àat winseên jàak paj thîaw phátphong dǔaj . pen sàthǎan thûi >  
 Joy: Most top really [reduplication sign]. Or maybe Vincent to-want to-go to-go-out  
 Phatphong also. To-be place which >  
 thông thîaw jaam raatrii thûi mii tàlàat nát khǎaj khǒong tàlòot khuen dǔaj .  
 to-roam-around to-go-on-a-trip period night which to-have/to-be-present market  
 to-make-an-appointment to-sell thing throughout night also.

- winseən: phátphong rǔe . phǒm kheuj dǎjjin léew . mǎj chǎj sàthǎan-thīu thông thǎaw nǐjom >  
 Vincent: *Phatphong [question particle]. I (m) once/ever to-hear already. No/not yes place to-roam-around to-go-on-a-trip to-be-popular >*
- khǒong sùphāapbùrút tàang chǎat rǔe . cǒj jàak cà phaa phǒm paj thammaj . mǎj >  
*Off/belonging-to gentleman different nation [question particle]. Joy to-want to-shall to-take/to-lead I (m) to-go/to why. No/not >*
- tōng phaa paj leuj . thīu uèn kô mii jéu? .  
*To-must to-take/to-lead to-go/to at-all. Place other rather/also to-have/to-be-present many.*
- cǒj: taam caj ná winseən . léew mǎew kǎp níkkhū jang mii khǒo sànǔe uèn mǎj . jàak phaa >  
 Joy: *To-follow heart [emphatic part.] Vincent. And/already Maew with/and Nikki still/yet to-have item to-propose other [question part.]. To-want to-take/to-lead >*
- phūean paj thīu uèn ìk rǔe plǎaw .  
*friend to-go/to place other still/yet or not.*
- níkkhū: chǎj . cǒj luem wát àrun . sǔaj . nǎa thǎaw mǎak . léew raw khuan phaa winseən paj >  
 Nikki: *Yes. Joy to-forget temple dawn. Beautiful. Worthy-to to-visit much/very. And/already we should to-take/to-lead Vincent to-go/to >*
- thǎaw thua khloong thonbùrii dǔaj . raw long ruea hǎang jaaw thīu khloong  
 baangkòok nóoj léew kô >  
*Tour canal Thonburi also. We to-descend boat tail long at canal Bangkok Noi and/already rather/also >*
- chom bǎan mueang càak rim nǎam .  
*To-admire house town/country from side/rim water.*
- mǎew: pen ajdia thīu dii nǎ . tǎe jàa luem wǎa . lǎng càak thǎaw sèt naj thúk wan raw nǎa cà >  
 Maew: *To-be idea which good [emphatic part.]. But don't to-forget that. Behind from (afterwards) to-go-on-a-trip ready in/at every day we should to-shall >*
- phaa phīu winseən paj kin khǎaw naj ráan phísèet dǔaj .  
*To-take/to-lead Vincent to-go/to to-eat rice in/at shop/restaurant special also.*
- cǒj: nǎe nǎe leuj . jang-ngán tòk long raw cà paj thǎaw tàlàat nát càtùcàk . phíphttháphan >  
 Joy: *Certain [reduplication sign] at-all. Thus to-fall down {to-agree} we to-shall to-go to-go-on-a-trip market to-make-an-appointment Jatujak. Museum >*
- sàthǎan hǎeng cǎat . phrá thīu nǎng wímaanmǎek . sàjǎam senteu . wát phǒo ...  
*place of/place nation. Revered<sup>1</sup> place<sup>2</sup> to-sit<sup>3</sup> {<sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup> and<sup>3</sup>: palace} Vimanmek. Siam Center. Temple bodhi-tree...*
- phíphttháphan sii-uj . léew kô paj wát àrun . lé? paj thua khloong thonbùrii dǔaj ...  
*Museum Si-Uy. And/already to-go/to temple dawn. And to-go tour canal Thonburi also ...*
- léew winseən chōop fang phleeng phūea chíiwít mǎj .  
*And/already Vincent to-like to-listen song for life [question particle].*

cd 1b Vocabulary  
track 13



ทั้งสี่คน



เครื่องดื่ม

เที่ยว

thiaw

1. to make a pleasure tour, to go on holiday, to wander, to roam about, to go (some-where) for fun, to go out on the town; 2. trip, journey

ไปเที่ยว

paj thiaw

to go out on the town; to go on holiday; to go (some-where) for fun

พา

phaa

1. to lead, to take (along), to bring (someone) along; 2. to carry (diseases)

พบ

phóp

1. to meet, to encounter; 2. to find, to come across, to discover

กัน

kan

1. reciprocal particle, 'each other'; 2. collective personal pronoun 'together'

พบกัน

phóp kan

to meet each other, to see each other

ทั้งสี่คน

tháng sù khon

all four, the four of them

เซนต์ หลุยส์ ซอย (...)

sen lŭj sooj

Sainte Louise Soi ...

ซอย

sooj

'soi', lane; side street of a ถนน (thànnǎn)

ถนน

thànnǎn

street, road, thorough-fare, avenue

สาทรใต้

sǎathoon tâj

South Sathorn; street in Bangkok

ใต้

tâj

1. South, Southern;  
2. beneath, under

เตรียม

triam

1. to prepare; to make ready;  
2. to get ready

กับ แกล้ม

kàp klĕem

snack(s)

เครื่องดื่ม

khruēang dùem

drink(s)

เลี้ยง

líang

1. to fête, to give a party 2. to feed, to look after, to provide food and shelter; 3. to rear, to breed; 4. to adopt

ตกลง

tòk long

1. O.K., all right; 2. to agree; 3. so...; 4. to fall down (literal meaning)



สวนสัตว์



ญาติ

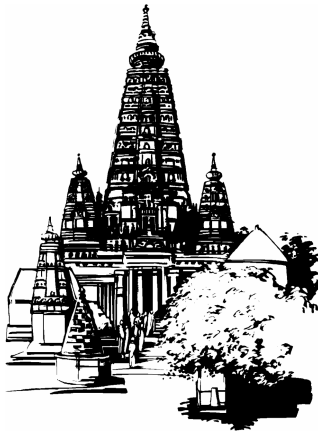


เกาะ

เคย	kheuj	1. ever, once; 2. to be accustomed to, to be used to
แต่	tèe	1. but; merely, only (adj., adv.); 2. since, from (prep.)
ตอน นั้น	toon nán	then, before, at that time, in those times
ตอน นี้	toon níi	now, in this time
วัด พระ แก้ว	wát phrá kĕw	The Temple of the Emerald Buddha in Bangkok
สวน	sŭan	garden
สวน สัตว์	sŭan sàt	zoo ('animal garden')
ดุสิต	dùsìt	'Fourth Heaven'; Name of a district in Bangkok
เท่านั้น	thâwnán	only, that much, that many; merely
เพราะ	phró?	1. because; 2. by reason of; 3. melodious, sweet sounding
ญาติ	jâat	family, kinsfolk, relative
ญาติ ๆ (ญาติ ญาติ)	jâat-jâat	family members, relatives
เชียงใหม่	chiang màj	Chiang Mai in Northern Thailand
หัว หิน	hŭa hĭn	Hua Hin on the Gulf of Thailand
แล้ว ก็	léew kô	1. then, afterward, subsequently; 2. and
เกาะ	kò?	island
เกาะ สมิต	kò? sàmèt	Samet Island
เสม็ด	sàmèt	sort of Eucalyptus tree
สถานที่	sàthăan thĭi	place, site, location, locality
เหล่า	lăw	group, class, species (classifier for groups)
ค่อย	khôj	slowly, softly, gently, without hurry, gradually
ไม่ ค่อย	mâj khôj	hardly, not much, not quite, scarcely
ไป ไหน	paj năj	1. where to?; 2. to go somewhere



แฮม



วัด



ต้นไม้

ไปไหน ก็ไม่ได้

ใน

ยัง

ยัง ... อยู่

อายุน้อย

โต

แฮม

เธอ

เห็น ด้วย กับ / กัน

ฉัน

อีก แล้ว

อย่า

มัว

แต่

มัว แต่

เล่น

พูด เล่น

เลย

น่า

น่า จะ

พิพิธภัณฑ์

paj năj kô mâj dâj

naj

jang

jang ... jùu

aajú nój

tòu

měe

theu

hěn dùaj kàp / kan

chăn

ìk léəw

jàa

mua

tèe

mua tèe

lên

phûut lên

leuj

nâa

nâa cà

phíphíttháphan

can't go anywhere

in

1. yet, still; 2 (in negative answers) not yet

to be still ... (young, fresh etc.)

young of age (literally: 'little age')

1. large, grown up;  
2. to grow up

expression of surprise or mild indignation

you (informal; mostly used to address young women, sometimes men)

to agree with/with each other  
I - informal; mostly f., also m. (old-fashioned)

again; once more

don't

to be absorbed in, to be only busy with

1. but; 2. only, just

only (completely) be absorbed in...

to play

to make jokes

1. at all (after a negative statement); 2. beyond, further; 3. to pass

1. worth doing; 2. ...-able, ...-ful; (น่ากลัว (nâaklua) - dreadful, fearful (กลัว - klua - to be afraid) (น่ารัก (nâarák) - loveable (รัก - rák - to love)  
3. should, ought to;  
4. emphasized form of นะ (nâ?)

should, ought to

museum



ตลาด



ห้างสรรพสินค้า



ซื้อ ของ

สถาน

sàthǎan

1. place, site; 2. duty, honor, rank; 3. thing, sort, kind

แห่ง

hèeng

1. place, site; 2. of, belonging to

ชาติ

châat

1. nation, country; 2. race, birth; 3. nationality; 4. rank, caste

พิพิธภัณฑ์ สถาน

phíphíttháphan

National Museum (The Museum of the Nation)

แห่ง ชาติ

sàthǎan hèeng châat

วัด

wát

temple

โพธิ์ (ต้น โพธิ์)

phoṇ (tôn phoṇ)

Bodhi (Bodhi tree)

พระ ที่ นั่ง

phrá thîi nâng

palace (literally: Honored Seat)

วิมานเมฆ

wímaanmêek

Heavenly Abode in the Clouds

พระ บรม มหา ราชวัง

phrá bòrom máhǎa  
râatcháwang

The Royal Palace  
(Honored Supreme Exalted  
Royal Residence)

ตลาด

tàlàat

market

นัด

nát

1. to make an appointment,  
to date; 2. to set the time;  
3. date, appointment

ตลาด นัด

tàlàat nát

market held on a fixed day of  
the week

จตุจักร

càtucàk

'Four Wheels'; weekend mar-  
ket in Bangkok

สยาม เซ็นเตอร์

sàjaam senteu

Siam Center

หลัง กระทรวง\*

lǎng kràsǔang

'Behind the Ministry', street  
in Bangkok

เว้ง นคร เกษม

wèung nákhon  
kàsèem

'Open Space in the Happy  
City', antiques- and second  
hand goods market in Bangkok

โซโก้

sòokòṇ

Sogo; large Department  
Store

เซ็นทรัล

senthrân

Central; large Department  
Store

ลาดพร้าว

lâat phráaw

'Coconut Slope'; street in  
Bangkok

ห้าง

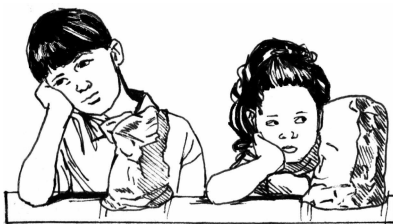
hâang

firm, shop, store





โรงพยาบาล



เบื่อ



อาชญากร

ห้างสรรพสินค้า

เยอะ แยะ

ซื้อ

ซื้อ ของ

เท่านั้น

มัย

ถ้า

เพียง แต่

เบื่อ

ควร

ควร จะ

ชม

ชี-อุย

โรงพยาบาล

ศิริราช

พิพิธภัณฑ์ ชี-อุย

การ แพทย์

นิติเวชศาสตร์

ศพ แห้ง

อาชญากร

สถานที่

น่า สนใจ

ตลาด น้ำ

มวย ไทย

สนาม มวย

ลุมพินี

พัฒน์พงศ์

hâang

sàpphásǐnkháa

jéu? jé?

súe

súe khǒong

thâwnán

máj

thâa

phiang tɛɛ

bùea

khuan

khuan cà

chom

sii-uj

rǒongphájaabaan

sìrìráat

phíphíttháphan

sii-uj

kaan phêet

nítìwêetchásàat

sòp hêeng

àatchájáakoon

sàtháan thîi

nâa sǒncaj

tàlàat náam

muaj thaj

sànnâam muaj

lumphínii

phátphong

department store

very much, very many

to buy

to buy things, to shop

only

question particle (shortened)

if, in case

only

1. bored; 2. to be bored

ought to, should

ought to, should

1. to admire; 2. to praise

Si-Uy; an infamous killer

hospital

The oldest hospital in Bangkok

The “Si-Uy Museum”

medical; the medical profession

forensic medicine

mummy

criminal

place, site, location

interesting

floating market

Thai boxing

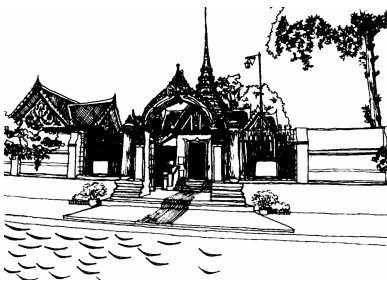
boxing stadium

Lumphini (The Buddha’s birth place; name of a park and a boxing stadium in Bangkok)

Phatphong; famous red light district in Bangkok



สุภาพบุรุษ



ริม น้ำ



แหล่งท่องเที่ยว

สถานที่ท่องเที่ยว

ยาม

ราตรี

ตลอดคืน

นิยม

สุภาพบุรุษ

ต่างชาติ

ข้อเสนอ

อรุณ

ควร

พา

ทัวร์

ธนบุรี

ลงเรือ

เรือหางยาว

คลองบางกอกน้อย

ชมบ้านเมือง

ริม น้ำ

ไอเดีย

เสร็จ

พิเศษ

แหล่ง

แหล่งท่องเที่ยว

แปลก

น่าสนใจ

ยังงั้น

ฟัง

sàthǎan thū thōong  
thīaw

jaam

raatrii

tàlòot khuen

níjom

sùphâapbùrút

tàang chàat

khôo sàněu

àrun

khuan

phaa

thua

thonbùrii

long ruea

ruea hǎang jaaw

khloong baangkook

chom bâan muang

rim náam

ajdia

sèt\*

phísèet

lèng\*

lèng thōong thīaw

plèek

nâa sǒncaj

jang-ngán

fang

touristic site

time, period

evening, night

the whole evening

1. to be popular; 2. to  
admire

gentleman

foreign

proposal, suggestion

dawn, sunrise

should, ought to

to take, to lead, to bring

tour

Thonburi, a town across  
the Chao Phraya river  
from Bangkok

to board a ship, to get into  
a boat

long tail boat

The Bangkok Noi Canal

to site-see

waterfront

idea (from English)

ready

special

place, location, spot

touristic location

strange

interesting

in that case (shortened  
form of อย่าง นั้น (jàang  
nán))

to hear, to listen to

ฟัง เพลง	fang phleeng	to listen to songs
เพลง เพื่ ชีวิต	phleeng phûea chiiwít	kind of Thai folk-rock

## Translation dialogue 12.2

### Out on the town in Bangkok

Joy, Maew and Nikki want to take Vincent out on the town in Bangkok. The four of them meet at Joy's home on Sainte Louise Soi 3, Sathorn Road. Joy has prepared snacks and drinks for her friends.

- Joy: So, Vincent, you have been on holiday in Bangkok before, haven't you?
- Vincent: Yes, but then I only went to the Temple of the Emerald Buddha and the Dusit Zoo, because my family took me to Chiang Mai, to Hua Hin and after that to Ko Samet. Those are very beautiful places, but I've never been out on the town in Bangkok, really.
- Nikki: Yes, at that time Vincent hasn't been anywhere in Bangkok. I couldn't take him anywhere, either. Dad told me I was still a child, then.
- Vincent: In those days you were still really young. Not as grown up as you are now.
- Nikki: Well, you just agree with my father again, don't you!
- Joy: Don't just sit there talking away. Where shall we go together?
- Maew: We should take Vincent to the National Museum, the Wat Pho, the Vimanmek Palace, the Royal Palace...
- Nikki: And also to the Jatujak weekend market, Siam Center, Lang Krasuang, The Na-Khorn Kasem market. And also to Sogo, and Central Lad Phrao. In Bangkok there are so many shopping malls!
- Joy: Oh dear, Nikki only wants to go shopping. Vincent is a man, don't you know? If we only take him out to go shopping, he'll be bored and maybe doesn't want to go anywhere with us anymore. We should take him to see the Si Uy Museum in the Sirirath Hospital.
- Vincent: Do you want to take me out to a hospital?
- Joy: Yeah. The Sirirath hospital is famous for its Si-Uy Museum. Its real name is the Sirirath Medical Museum. It is a museum on forensic medicine, but Thai people call it the Si-Uy Museum, because in this museum, they keep the mummy of Si-Uy, Thailand's most famous criminal. Do you want to go there? You'd probably like it, Vincent.
- Maew: Why don't we take him somewhere else, first. Bangkok has a lot of other interesting places. For instance the floating market. Or we could take him to see a Thai boxing match at Lumpini Boxing Stadium.
- Joy: Perfect! Or maybe Vincent would like to go out to Patphong also. That's a nighttime tourist attraction which has a market where goods are for sale all night long.
- Vincent: Patphong? I've heard about that. Isn't that a favourite tourist attraction for foreign gentlemen? Why do you want to take me there, Joy? You don't have to take me there. There are a lot of other places.
- Joy: It's up to you, Vincent. And Maew and Nikki, do you have some other suggestions? Do you want to take our friend to some other places or not?
- Nikki: Yes. Joy, you forgot the Temple of Dawn. It's beautiful. Very much worth visiting.

And we should take Vincent on a tour of the canals of Thonburi, as well. We'll get on a longtail boat at Khlong Bangkok Noi, and we'll go and see the city from the waterfront.

Maew: That's a very good idea. But don't forget that after we've finished touring every day, we'll should take Vincent to dinner in a special restaurant, as well.

Joy: Of course we'll do that. So, everyone agrees that we'll go to the Jatujak-market, the National Museum, the Vimanmek Palace, Siam Center, the Wat Pho... the Si Uy Museum, and to the Temple of Dawn. And we'll take him on a tour through the canals of Thonburi, as well... And, Vincent, do you like to listen to Thai folk-rock?

## 12.3 Idioms

### Spoken language; stopgaps, abbreviations and link words.

In Thai, like in every language, there is a difference between spoken (or popular) language and written (or official) language. The Thai popular and written languages mainly differ from each other through their separate vocabularies and pronunciation. See, for instance, the 'short' variants of the question particles, relative pronouns and demonstrative pronouns, which you are already acquainted to. Another phenomenon of the spoken language is that stopgaps and link words are well represented in it. Stopgaps and link words are often short, rapidly pronounced words which are used when a speaker wishes to emphasize something, has lost the direction of his argument for a moment, or corrects a mistake. Because Thai exists mainly of such short, rapidly pronounced words, in the ear of a beginning student, stopgaps and link words often tend to disappear in the mush of the spoken language. In order to follow an argumentation, you must sift the stopgaps, link words and other less important information from the bulk of the message in order to stay focused. Therefore, you must be able to recognize them and to determine whether they are relevant for the information in a sentence or not. In the course of your study you will automatically learn a lot of these sometimes meaningless but often significant expressions. A few are mentioned below:

ก็	kô; kôo	1. also, likewise, as well, too; 2. exactly; 3. rather; 4. then; 5. even
ตกลง	tòk long	'O.K., all right'; 'it's a deal'
แล้ว ก็	léew kôo, léew kô	'and then', 'and afterwards', 'and also'
เลย, ก็ เลย	leuj, kô leuj	1. 'at all' (in negations), 'and then'
เชื่อเถิด (เชื่อเถอะ)	chûea thèut (chûea thèu?)	'believe me'; 'you can take that for granted'
ตลอดเวลา	tàlòot weelaa	'always', 'again and again'
เยอะ แยะ	jéu? jé?	'a whole lot'
รี	rúe?, rúe	shortened question particle (abbreviation of หรือ - rûe)
หรือ; เหลือ	rěu; lěu	extended question particle (extension of หรือ - rûe)

มั๊ย	máj	shortened question particle (abbreviation of ไหม - mǎi)
อะไร กัน	àràj kan	‘What are you saying?’; ‘What do you mean?’
(เอา) อีก แล้ว	(aw) ìk léəw	‘now this again’; ‘there you are again’
แหม	mǎe	from ‘Jeez!’ (mild curse) to ‘Well well well’, (expression of mild annoyance, surprise or disbelief)
ช่าง มัน เกอะ	châng man thèu?	‘Just leave it’, ‘Let it be’
เ้า	âw	‘hey’, ‘look here’, ‘there!’ (to attract someone’s attention, to point something out, etc.)

### Structures with แล้ว (léəw)

แล้ว (léəw) means: ‘already’, ‘afterwards’, ‘then’, ‘later’. With the word แล้ว (léəw) as a core, there exist a couple of expressions which you will hear often in spoken language:

แล้ว ก็	léəw kôo	‘and then...’, ‘and afterwards...’
ก็ แล้ว กัน	kô léəw kan	1. ‘Go ahead’, ‘You can do...’, ‘...is also good’, ‘we can do...as well’; 2. ‘That’s all...’; 3. ‘That’s how it is...’
เป็น แล้ว กัน	pen léəw kan	1. ‘That’s done’; 2. ‘That’s been it...’
แล้ว แต่	léəw tèe	‘It’s up to...’; ‘The choice is yours (hers, his)’
แล้ว แต่ ชี	léəw tèe sii	‘It’s up to you/him/her (it doesn’t matter to me)’

### The words เพียง (phiang) and เท่านั้น (thâwnán)

เพียง (phiang) - ‘only’, ‘merely’, ‘just’. Within the sentence, the adverb เพียง (phiang) is placed in front of the clause it modifies:

เขา เพียง เป็น เด็ก	<i>he ‘phiang’ to-be child</i>
khăw phiang pen dèk	He is only a child.
เพียง คุณ คน เดียว	<i>‘phiang’ you [class. for people] only</i>
phiang khun khon diaw	Only you.

เท่านั้น - ‘only’, ‘as much as (not more than)’ – Within the sentence, the adverb เท่านั้น (thâwnán) is placed at the end of the clause it modifies:

มัน ห้าสิบ บาท เท่านั้น	It fifty Baht ‘thâwnán’
man hâa sîp bàat thâwnán	It’s only fifty Baht.

To intensify a statement, often both modifiers are used:

มัน เพียง ห้าสิบ บาท เท่านั้น	It ‘phiang’ fifty Baht ‘thâwnán’
man phiang hâa sîp bàat thâwnán	It’s only fifty Baht.

#### Variations on ไม่เป็นไร - mâj pen raj

As you already know ไม่เป็นไร means: ‘it doesn’t matter’, ‘never mind’, ‘It’s O.K.’, ‘you’re welcome’. Variations on this theme are for instance the following phrases:

ไม่เห็นเป็นอะไร	mâj hên pen àraj	(I/you/he/she) think(s) it’s only a trifle
ไม่เป็นอะไร	mâj pen àraj	1. It’s nothing; 2. It’s worthless; 3. I (you, she) don’t have anything (don’t suffer from any illness)

#### The question particle นะ (ná); the confirmation particle นะ (nâ)/ น่า (nâa)

The particle นะ (ná) can be used as an informal question particle:

ไป นะ	paj ná	‘Shall we go?’
กิน นะ	kin ná	‘Can I eat this?’; ‘Shall we eat this?’

The particle นะ (nâ)/ น่า (nâa) is used to give an expression mild emphasis:

ไป นะ	paj nâ	‘Go now’
กิน น่า	kin nâa	‘You can eat’

## 12.4 Cultural notes

A number of the interesting sites mentioned in this lesson are most visited by the Thai themselves and by foreign tourists in a lesser measure. The Thai love sight-seeing in their own country: the combination of watching, strolling, eating and buying. Most of the places mentioned in the dialogue to which the ladies want to take Vincent can be found in regular tourist guides. Below, is a list of places where you’ll find at least as many Thai visitors as foreign tourists:

Chiang Mai	เชียงใหม่: The capital of the North. A city with a pleasant climate, full of century-old temples.
Hua Hin	หัวหิน: Beach resort on the Southern peninsula. Favorite weekend resort for Bangkok people, so also many Thai tourists.

Ko Samet	เกาะเสม็ด: Beautiful tropical island for weekend trips from Bangkok. Also nice for a longer holiday.
Wat Phra Kaew	วัดพระแก้ว: The temple of the Emerald Buddha, situated in the compound of the old Royal Palace, opposite the Wat Pho, in Bangkok.
Dusit Zoo	สวนสัตว์ดุสิต: One of the largest and most beautiful zoos in Southeast Asia.
National Museum	พิพิธภัณฑสถานแห่งชาติ: Large museum with historic artifacts and exhibitions about Thailand's history. Houses the famous Inscription of King Ramkhamhaeng, as well as a large selection of other ancient inscribed posts and lintels. Also statues from the Dvaravati, Sriwijaya and Lopburi periods.
Wat Pho	วัดโพธิ์: Bangkok's oldest temple. Was built long before the city became the national capital.
Vimanmek Palace	พระที่นั่งวิมานเมฆ: Large teak palace. Once a residence of King Chulalongkorn on Ko Si Chang. In 1910, the structure was moved to Bangkok.
Royal Palace	พระบรมมหาราชวัง: The Chitralada Palace; the official abode of the Royal Family of Thailand.
Jatujak Weekend market	ตลาดนัดจตุจักร: An enormous market where almost everything is sold and bought. Only on Saturdays and Sundays.
Siam Center	สยามเซ็นเตอร์: A large complex of shopping malls, department stores, shops, bars, restaurants and cinemas.
Lang Krasuang	หลังกระสวย: Old quarter in Bangkok with shops in Sino-Portuguese style.
Nakhorn Kasem Market	เวียงนครเกษม: A neighborhood in Chinatown with a lot of antique shops.
Sogo Department Store	โซโก: Very large, modern shopping centre (Amarin Plaza)
Central Ladphrao	เซ็นทรัลลาดพร้าว: A large department store of the Central Group.
Si-Uy Museum	พิพิธภัณฑสถานซี-อุย: Forensic-medical museum. A museum full of medical samples, under which the conserved body of serial killer Si-Uy.
Phatphong	พัฒน์พงศ์: The best known red light district in Bangkok. With nightclubs, erotic shows, bars and a large night market.

## 12.5 Irregularities in Thai spelling and class modifiers

### a. The consonant combinations ‘ทร’, ‘จร’, ‘สร’ and ‘รร’

Remember that there are spelling anomalies in almost every language. Words are not always pronounced as they are written (English is famous for them), and different spellings can be used to convey the same sounds. In the vocabulary lists, these aberrantly spelled words are marked with an asterisk (\*). Listed below are a number of the most noteworthy spelling anomalies:

A number of words are spelled with the initial clusters **ทร** (th + r), **จร** (c + r), **สร** (s + r) or **รร** (s + r). These combinations are in fact not real clusters, but combinations of consonants with an aberrant spelling. The consonant combination **รร** is in fact pronounced either as the vowel ‘a’, or as ‘an’:

<b>ทร</b> - Is pronounced as: ‘s’	<b>ทรง</b> - song - ‘(hair) style’, ‘form’; <b>ทรง</b> - sâap - ‘to know’; <b>ทราย</b> - saaj - ‘sand’; <b>ทรวดทรง</b> - sùatsong - ‘shape’, ‘(slim) figure’
<b>จร</b> - Is pronounced as: ‘c’	<b>จริง</b> - cing - ‘real’
<b>ศรี</b> - Is pronounced as: ‘s’	<b>ศรี</b> - sîi - ‘majesty’, ‘glory’, ‘honor’; ‘glorious’
<b>สร</b> - Is pronounced as: ‘s’	<b>สร้อย</b> - sôoj - necklace; <b>สร้าง</b> - sâang - ‘to build’; <b>สระ</b> - sà? - 1. ‘pool’, ‘pond’; 2. ‘to shampoo’
<b>รร</b> - Is pronounced as: ‘a’ or ‘an’	<b>กรรม</b> - kam - ‘karma’; <b>ธรรม</b> - tham - ‘dharma’; <b>กรรไกร</b> - kankraj - ‘scissors’; <b>บรรยาย</b> - banjaaj - ‘lecture’

Attention! Not all of these consonant combinations are always read as stated above. Consider, for instance, the following words: **ทรมาน** - thoorámaan - ‘to torture’; **จระเข้** - coorákhêe - ‘crocodile’; **สรุป** - sàrùp - ‘to summarize’; **สระ** - sàrà - ‘vowel’; **ศร** - sôn - ‘arrow’; **เอกอัครราชทูต** - èekàkkhàráatcháthûut - ‘ambassador’.

### b. The consonant class modifiers ‘ห’ and ‘อ’

By placing a **ห** (h) - a HIGH CLASS consonant - in front of a LOW CLASS consonant, this LOW CLASS consonant is ‘upgraded’ to a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus endowed with all characteristics of a HIGH CLASS consonant. **ห** itself is not pronounced in these cases, and has the sole function of modifying the LOW CLASS consonant. By placing an **อ** (o) - a MIDDLE CLASS consonant - in front of a LOW CLASS consonant, this LOW CLASS consonant is ‘upgraded’ to a MIDDLE CLASS consonant, and thus endowed with all characteristics of a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. **อ** itself is not pronounced in these cases, and has the sole function of modifying the LOW CLASS consonant. Look at the following examples:

**หลาย**      hǎo hùp . loo ling . sàrà? aa . joo ják .      lǎaj      -      several

HIGH CLASS consonant **ห** modifies LOW CLASS consonant **ล** into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘**หลาย**’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a rising tone (see the diagram for the tone rules).



หนู                      hǒo hùp . noo nǔu . sàrà? uu.                      nǔu   -   mouse

HIGH CLASS consonant ห modifies LOW CLASS consonant น into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘หนู’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a rising tone (see the diagram for the tone rules).

หมาก                      hǒo hùp . moo máa . sàrà? aa . koo kàj.                      màak   -   betelnut

HIGH CLASS consonant ห modifies LOW CLASS consonant ม into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘หมาก’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone (see the diagram for the tone rules).

หน้า                      hǒo hùp . noo nǔu . máaj thoo . sàrà? aa .                      nâa   -   face

HIGH CLASS consonant ห modifies LOW CLASS consonant น into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘หน้า’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a falling tone. (see the diagram for the tone rules). Observe that the tone marker (ไม้โท - máaj thoo) is placed over the น, not on the ห itself.

อยาก                      oo àang . joo ják . sàrà? aa . koo kàj .                      jàak   -   to want

MIDDLE CLASS consonant อ modifies LOW CLASS consonant ข into a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. The word ‘อยาก’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a MIDDLE CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone. (see the diagram for the tone rules).

อยู่                      oo àang . joo ják . máj èek . sàrà? uu .                      jùu   -   to stay, to be busy to

MIDDLE CLASS consonant อ modifies LOW CLASS consonant ข into a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. The word ‘อยู่’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a MIDDLE CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone. Observe that the tone marker (ไม้เอก - máaj èek) is placed over the ข, not on the อ itself. (see the diagram for the tone rules).

Attention: In other cases, the อ doesn’t modify or ‘upgrade’ low class consonants, but functions independently as a short à of à?; this ‘a’ is not indicated by the vowel sign ะ, and can be called ‘inherent’.

อภิสิทธิ์                      àphísìt                      privilege

อนุมัติ                      ànúmát                      to approve of, to consent

อเมริกา                      àmeeríkaa                      America

อร่อย                      àròoj; àròj                      tasty, delicious

## 12.6 Writing VIII. The script and the tones. Further instructions in reading and writing

In lesson 1 you have seen the reference diagram for the tone rules of the Thai language. The diagram indicates which elements can be of influence on the spoken tone of a written word. Below, the reference diagram is reproduced once more:

### Reference diagram for the tone rules:

end of syllable		class of initial consonant		
		high	middle	low
no tone marker	any ending, except k, p, t or ?	rising ถาม ขา หาย	mid กิน บัว ตา	mid งาน เวลา เรียน
	k, p or t after a long vowel	low สอบ ถูก หาด	low แจก ตาบ โตด	falling ราด พุด เมฆ
	short vowel; k, p or t after a short vowel	low จะ หัก ลีบ ชุด	low จะ แปลก บท อิจู	high ชี ละ ยก พัด พบ
with máaj èek อ๋		low สู้ ห่ม ไข่ ถื่อน	low ป่า ก่อน แข่ง	falling น่า แม่ โธ่ ม่าน
with máaj thoo อั		falling ห้าม เลื่อ ข้าว	falling บ้าน ได้ ก้าง	high วัง ร้าน ทิ้ง ไว้ย
with máaj trii อี้			high กึก โต๊ะ เปียบ จ๊ะ	
with máaj càttawaa อ๊			rising แป้ จำ ไร่ นุ่ม	

In the consonant lists in chapter 1, you have seen that there are three classes (or registers) of consonants: HIGH, MIDDLE and LOW. You already know that these consonant classes have not been created without a reason. The consonant classes are there to enable us to write any possible Thai phoneme in any possible tone. Now that you have learned all Thai letters by heart, you also know to which class every individual consonant belongs: HIGH, MIDDLE or

LOW. As a reminder, below you'll find the HIGH, MIDDLE and LOW class consonants once more in their respective lists.

## The Three Consonant Classes

The following eleven consonants are **HIGH Class Consonants**:

ข - (khǎo khàj)	ฃ - (khǎo khùat)†	ฅ - (chǎo ching)
ฌ - (thǎo thǎan)	ฆ - (thǎo thǔng)	ผ - (phǎo phûeng)
ฝ - (fǎo fǎa)	ศ - (sǎo sǎalaa)	ษ - (sǎo ruesii)
ส - (sǎo sǔea)	ห - (hǎo hup)	

The following nine consonants are **MIDDLE Class Consonants**:

ก - (koo kàj)	จ - (coo caan)	ฎ - (doo chádaa)
ฏ - (too pàtāk)	ด - (doo dèk)	ต - (too tàw)
บ - (boo bajmáaj)	ป - (poo plaa)	อ - (oo àang)

The following twenty-four consonants are **LOW Class Consonants**:

ค - (khoo khwaaj)	ค - (khoo khon)†	ฌ - (khoo rákhang)
ง - (ngoo nguu)	ช - (choo cháang)	ซ - (soo sǒo)
ฌ - (choo cheu)	ญ - (joo jǐng)	ฑ - (thoo monthǒo)

ฒ - (thoo phûuthâw)	ณ - (noo neen)	ฑ - (thoo tháhăan)
ธ - (thoo thong)	น - (noo nŭu)	พ - (phoo phaan)
ฟ - (foo fan)	ภ - (phoo sǎmphaw)	ม - (moo máa)
ย - (joo ják)	ร - (roo ruea)	ล - (loo ling)
ว - (woo wěen)	ฬ - (loo cùlaa)	ฮ - (hoo nókhûuk)

†: obsolete consonants

With the help of these lists and the reference diagram for the tone rules, you can determine the tone of any written Thai word. You already know a substantial number of words, and you'll learn many more. Of course it won't be necessary to determine the tone of every syllable with the tone rules (the consonant classes and the tone reference diagram) in hand. After a while, you'll recognize the letter pattern, or the word picture, however you would like to call it, just as easily as you recognize the picture of the English words and sentences when you read this text. It has been a long time since you had to read English letter by letter. Your reading skills on this level might look far away for Thai, and indeed, you'll have to look up a lot of new words in vocabulary lists and dictionaries. But after a while you'll be able to *dream* the tone reference diagram, and you'll develop a natural ability to identify the High-, Middle- and Low characteristics of any Thai consonant you'll see. After a short while, you'll only need a fraction of a second to identify the class of a syllable's initial consonant, its long or short vowel, its ending and its tone marker – and you'll *know* in what tone that syllable is pronounced!

### Reading tones in Thai script: Practice through examples.

By looking at 24 examples of written Thai words, you will now be led step by step through the practice of reading written Thai in a practical way. You will see that the tones of each syllable are almost always clear from the way a Thai word is written, and can be easily calculated by the reader when taking the four factors which determine the tone of a syllable into consideration:

- a. The class of the initial consonant of the syllable (HIGH, MIDDLE or LOW);
- b. The length of the vowel of the syllable (LONG or SHORT)
- c. The ending of the syllable (VOWEL (OPEN)/NASAL/SEMIVOWEL or STOP)
- d. The tone marker (máaj èek, máaj thoo, máaj trii or máaj càttàwaa)

In short: If we want to know the tone of a written syllable, first of all, we look at the FIRST CONSONANT of the syllable: In which class does it belong; HIGH, MIDDLE or LOW? Next, we look at the VOWEL in the syllable: Is it LONG or SHORT? Then, we determine the ENDING of the syllable: Is it a VOWEL (open syllable), a NASAL CONSONANT (m, n, ng) or a SEMIVOWEL (j, w)? Or does the syllable end with a STOP (k, p, t or ? (glottal stop))? And last but not least, we look at the TONE MARKER which is placed over the first consonant of the syllable, or - if the

syllable starts with a cluster - over the last consonant pronounced before the first vowel. Remember that in clusters, the tone marker is placed over the second consonant in the cluster, but counts for the consonant class of the first. The consonant class of the whole cluster is always determined by that of the first consonant in the cluster.

1. นก » Initial consonant: noo nũu; Class: LOW. » Vowel: Inherent o; SHORT vowel. » Ending: koo kàj; consonant, STOP. » Written is: nók; HIGH TONE. » Meaning: 'Bird'.
2. ขาว » Initial consonant: khǎo khàj; Class: HIGH. » Vowel: sàrà? aa, LONG vowel. » Ending: woo wěen; SEMIVOWEL, no stop. » Written is: khǎaw; RISING TONE. » Meaning: 'White'.
3. ข้าว » Initial consonant: khǎo khàj; Class: HIGH. » Vowel: sàrà? aa; LONG vowel. » Ending: woo wěen; SEMIVOWEL, no stop. » Tone marker: máj thoo over HIGH consonant (ข). » Written is: khǎaw; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: 'Rice'.
4. ใคร » Vowel: máj múan; SHORT. » ค-ร - Cluster acknowledged. » Initial consonant in cluster: khoo khwaaj; Class: LOW. » Second consonant in cluster: roo ruea; LOW. » Written is: khraj; MID TONE. » Meaning: 'Who', 'somebody'.
5. ใคร่ » Vowel: máj múan; SHORT. » ค-ร - Cluster acknowledged. » Initial consonant in cluster: khoo khwaaj; Class: LOW. » Second consonant in cluster: roo ruea; Class: LOW. » Tone marker: máj èek over second consonant in cluster, but determinant for the first consonant in the cluster; Tone marker máj èek counts for LOW consonant. » Written is: khraj; FALLING TONE. Meaning: 'to covet', 'to desire'.
6. เอา » Compound diphthong acknowledged (เ+า = 'aw') » First part of diphthong: sàrà? ee. » Consonant: oo àang (without sound value; 'bearer' of diphthong 'aw'), class: MIDDLE. » Second part of diphthong: sàrà? aa. » Written is: aw; MID TONE. » Meaning: 'To take'.
7. เปล่า » Compound diphthong acknowledged (เ+า = 'aw') » First part of diphthong: sàrà ee. » Initial consonant in cluster: poo plaa; Class: MIDDLE. » Second consonant in cluster: loo ling; Class: LOW. » Second part of diphthong: sàrà? aa. » Tone marker máj èek over LOW consonant (ล), but determinant for the first consonant in the cluster (ป), a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. » Written is: plàw. » Pronunciation anomaly acknowledged; The word is: plàaw (with long aa); LOW TONE. » Meaning: 'Empty'; 'No'; 'Plain', 'Undiluted'; 'In vain'.
8. มาก » Initial consonant: moo máa; Class: LOW. » Vowel: sàrà? aa; LONG vowel » Ending: koo kàj; consonant, STOP. » Written is: mâak; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: 'Much', 'Many', 'A lot'.
9. แจ่ว » Vowel: sàrà? ɛɛ; long. » Initial consonant: coo caan; Class: MIDDLE. » Ending: woo wěen; SEMIVOWEL, no stop. » Tone marker máj càttàwaa

- over MIDDLE CLASS consonant (จ). » Written is: cĕew; RISING TONE. » Meaning: 1. ‘Clear’, ‘Limpid’; 2. ‘Sparkling’, ‘Clean’; 3. ‘Very good’, ‘Fantastic’; 4. ‘Cleaning lady’
10. กุก ๆ » Initial consonant: koo kàj; Class: MIDDLE. » Vowel: sàrà? u; SHORT. » Ending: koo kàj; Consonant, STOP. Tone marker: máj trii over MIDDLE CLASS consonant. Repetition sign (*pajjaannóoj*) acknowledged. » Written is: kúk kúk; HIGH TONE (twice). » Meaning: the clucking of chickens (onomatopoeia)
11. บาท » Initial consonant: boo bajmáaj; Class: MIDDLE. » Vowel: sàrà? aa; LONG. » Ending: thoo tháhăan; consonant, STOP. » Written is: bàat; LOW TONE. » Meaning: Baht; Thai monetary unit.
12. นะ » Initial consonant: noo nŭu; Class: LOW. » Vowel: sàrà? a. SHORT. » Ending: Glottal stop; STOP (unwritten). » Written is: ná?; HIGH TONE. » Meaning: particle, used to emphasize statements
13. ลวก » Initial consonant: loo ling; Class: LOW. » SEMIVOWEL woo wĕen; pronounced as ‘ua’ between two consonants. » Ending: koo kàj; Consonant, stop. » Written is: lŭak; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: ‘to parboil’, ‘to soft-boil’; ‘to scald’.
14. ทราบ » Spelling anomaly acknowledged: Initial consonant cluster thoo tháhăan and roo ruea represent initial /s/; Class of both consonants: LOW. » Vowel: sàrà? aa; LONG. » Ending: boo bajmáaj; consonant, STOP. » Written is: sâap; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: ‘to know’ (formal language)
15. สร้าง » Spelling anomaly acknowledged: Initial consonant cluster sŏo sŭea and roo ruea represent initial /s/; Class of sŏo sŭea: HIGH. Class of roo ruea: LOW. Vowel: sàrà? aa; LONG. » Ending: ngoo nguu; nasal consonant; NO STOP. Tone marker máj thŏo over second consonant in written consonant cluster representing /s/, but determinant for the first consonant in the cluster, ส (HIGH CLASS). » Written is: sâang; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: ‘To build’
16. จริง » Spelling anomaly acknowledged: Initial consonant cluster coo caan and roo ruea represent initial /c/. Class of coo caan: MID. Class of roo ruea: LOW. » Vowel: sàrà? i; SHORT. Ending: ngoo nguu; nasal consonant, NO STOP. » Written is: cing; MID TONE. » Meaning: ‘real’, ‘really’.
17. เยี่ยม » Compound diphthong acknowledged: (เ - + ี + ย = ‘ia’; ‘ia’). » First part of diphthong: sàrà? ee. » Initial consonant: joo ják; Class: LOW. » Second part of diphthong: sàrà? ii. » Third part of diphthong: joo ják. Ending: moo máa; nasal consonant, NO STOP. » Tone marker: máj ěek over LOW CLASS consonant. » Written is: jĭam; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: 1. ‘To visit’; 2. ‘Very good’, ‘Marvelous’, ‘Cool’, ‘Fine’.

18. เมือง » Compound diphthong acknowledged: (เ - + ๑ + ๑ = ‘uea, uea’). » First part of diphthong: sàrà? ee. Initial consonant: moo máa; Class: LOW. » Second part of diphthong: sàrà? ue. » Third part of diphthong: oo àang. » Ending: ngoo nguu; nasal consonant, NO STOP. » Written is: mueang; MID TONE. » Meaning: ‘City’, ‘Country’.
19. แล้ว » Vowel: sàrà? ɛɛ; LONG. » Initial consonant: loo ling; Class: LOW. » Ending: woo wǎen; semivowel, NO STOP. » Tone marker: máj thoo over LOW CLASS consonant. » Written is: léew; HIGH TONE. » Meaning: ‘Already’, ‘Then’, ‘Later’.
20. อะไร » Polysyllabic word acknowledged: » First syllable: Initial consonant: oo àang (as a vowel bearer; no independent sound value); Class: MIDDLE » Vowel: sàrà? a. » First syllable pronounced as à?; LOW TONE. » Second syllable: Vowel: máj málaj; SHORT. » Initial consonant second syllable: roo ruea; Class: LOW. » Second syllable pronounced as: raj; MID TONE. » Written is: àraj (correctly pronounced); araj (normal, informal pronunciation). » Meaning: ‘Something’, ‘What’, ‘What?’
21. นิยม » Polysyllabic word acknowledged: » Initial consonant of first syllable: noo nǔu; class: LOW. » Vowel: sàrà? i; SHORT. First syllable pronounced as ní (ní?); HIGH TONE. » Second syllable: Initial consonant: joo ják; Class: LOW. » Inherent, unwritten vowel: o. » Ending: moo máa; nasal consonant, NO STOP. Second syllable pronounced as jom; MID TONE » Written is: níjom. » Meaning: ‘To like’, ‘To admire’, ‘To favor’, ‘To be popular’, ‘To be favorite’.
- 22.อร่อย » Polysyllabic word acknowledged: First syllable: oo àang; Class: MIDDLE; pronounced as ‘à?’, ‘ò?’ or ‘oo’ as a single vowel in an open syllable; here pronounced as: ‘à?’, LOW TONE » Second syllable: Initial consonant: roo ruea; Class: LOW. Second letter: oo àang; pronounced as ‘oo’ or ‘o’ in a closed syllable. Here: ‘oo’. » Ending: joo ják; semivowel, NO STOP. » Tone marker: máj èek over LOW CLASS consonant, modified by preceding oo àang (MIDDLE CLASS) (Although ๑ forms a syllable all by itself – pronounced as ‘à?’ – it still functions as a modifier for roo ruea, which is also the initial consonant of the second syllable, and reacts on máj èek as a MIDDLE CLASS consonant). » Second syllable pronounced as ròoj, LOW TONE. » Written is: àròoj. » Meaning: ‘Tasty’, ‘Delicious’
23. ซ่อม » Initial consonant: soo sǔo; Class: low. » Second letter: oo àang; here pronounced as vowel ‘oo’. » Ending: moo máa; nasal consonant, NO STOP. » Tone marker: máj èek over a low class consonant. » Written is: sǔom, FALLING TONE. » Meaning: ‘To mend’, ‘To repair’.
24. เกษตรกรรม » Multi-syllabic Pali-Sanskrit compound loan word acknowledged. » First syllable: Vowel: sàrà? ee. » Initial consonant: koo kǎj; Class: MID-

DLE. » Inherent ‘a’; SHORT. » First syllable pronounced as kà?; LOW TONE. (Attention! sàrà? ee is not part of the first syllable). » Second syllable: Initial consonant: sǎo r̥uēsǎ; Class: HIGH. » Attention! The second syllable uses initial vowel sàrà? ee. » Final consonant: too tàw; STOP. » Second syllable pronounced as sèet; LOW TONE. » Third syllable: Cluster acknowledged. » Attention! The final consonant of the second syllable also acts as the first consonant of the initial cluster of the third syllable: too tàw; Class: MIDDLE. » Second consonant of the initial cluster of the third syllable: roo ruea; Class: LOW. » Inherent, unwritten a; SHORT. » Third syllable pronounced as trà?; LOW TONE (correct); tra; MID TONE (not emphasized). » Fourth syllable: Initial consonant: koo kàj; Class: MIDDLE. » Special vowel sign acknowledged: roo ruea written twice is pronounced like sàrà? a. » Final consonant: moo máa; nasal consonant, NO STOP. » Fourth syllable pronounced as: kam; MID TONE. » Written is: kàsèttrakam. Tones: LOW-LOW-MID-MID. » Meaning: ‘agriculture’.

Now you know all the characters and rules of the Thai script, you probably already recognize a lot of words in the Thai dialogues which start off each lesson, certainly when you reread the first few lessons with the knowledge you possess now. You know which consonants belong in which class group, and you know how important the consonant classes are to determine (and to write!) the tone of a word or syllable. You know which vowels are written in front, behind, under, above and around a consonant. You know the difference between long and short vowels, and you know that there are exceptions on the tone rules. Something that you might or might not be aware of, is that the Thai dialogues you have seen and read would look a bit strange to the average Thai. The spelling and grammar are correct, but for a native Thai speaker there is something unnatural about the texts. Because... why are there spaces between the words? His conclusion would of course be that this is a Thai language course for foreigners, and that spaces are inserted between words to facilitate word recognition by the ‘*farang*’ student.

because a Thai would write all words in a sentence directly behind each other only where a writer of English would put a period or a comma a Thai would leave open a little space between two letters also the Thai writing system does not use any capital letters but sometimes ‘quotation marks’ question marks and exclamation marks are used!

This is not as difficult as it seems; you’ll get used to it very quickly. But at the start of your study, it is convenient to exercise with texts that have been slightly adapted from real written Thai by having spaces between the words. The lessons up to and including lesson 24 have been adapted for the benefit of the foreign student. From lesson 25 on, you’ll be reading Thai as the Thai read it.

It is recommended to look back regularly to the parts of the preceding lessons which are written in Thai script. This is very good for the development of your ability to recognize a Thai word in just a glance; an ability that you have also acquired for English and other languages in which you are proficient, although you probably won’t remember when.

When you’ll look at the next lessons, you will see that from lesson 13 on, the transcription of the Thai dialogue doesn’t follow directly after the Thai text anymore, but will be given at the end of the lesson, as an appendix. In this manner, you’ll be able to determine for yourself whether you still need the transcription or not, without having it all too conspicuously on the next page of your book. Try to use the transcription less and less as you proceed.



It might seem like a big step, but remember: millions of people have learned reading Thai, and so will you.

## 12.7 Exercises

### 1.

a. Answer the following questions in Thai. Write your answers down in the phonetic transcription script:

1. What does Joy offer her friends?
2. Has Vincent already been in Thailand before this trip? Where?
3. Why couldn't Nikki show Vincent around when he was in Bangkok the last time?
4. Where does Maew want to take Vincent?
5. Do you think Nikki likes shopping? How do you know?
6. Where does Joy want to take Vincent?
7. Does Vincent want Joy to show him around Patpong?
8. What further suggestions does Nikki offer for sightseeing?
9. Where will the ladies eventually take Vincent?
10. Is Vincent partial to Thai folk-rock music?

b. Now try and write your answers down in Thai script.

### 2.

a. Answer the following questions in Thai. First write your answers down in the phonetic transcription script, then in Thai script. Try to answer in grammatically correct Thai sentences:

1. Have you ever been to Thailand?
2. If so, where? If not, where would you like to go in Thailand?
3. What do you think of Bangkok?
4. Do you like Thai food?
5. How do you like Chiang Mai?
6. What do you think is special about the Wat Phra Kaew?
7. Which department store in Bangkok do you like most? Why?
8. In which hotel do you stay when you are in Bangkok? Why?  
(to pass the night: แรม - rɛm)

b. Choose thirty words from lessons 1 to 12. Explain with each word how it is written (which consonants, which vowels, which tone markers, etc.), and why it is pronounced as it is.

## 12.8 Answers to exercise 12.7.1

1. cōj líang kàp klêem lɛʔ khruêang dùem hâj phûean kin .

๑. จ้อย เลี้ยง กับ แกลั่ม และ เครื่อง ต้ม ให้ เพื่อน กิน

2. winseən kheuj maa thíaw mueang thaj léew . khǎw kheuj maa thíaw kò? sàmèt . Chiang mǎj . léew kô hũa hĩn . lé? sǎn sàt dùsít dùaj .
๒. วินเซนท์ เคย มา เที่ยว เมือง ไทย แล้ว เขา เคย มา เที่ยว เกาะ เสม็ด เชียง ใหม่ แล้ว ก็ หัว หิน และ สวน สัตว์ ดุสิต ด้วย
3. weelaa nán níkkū jang dèk jùu .
๓. เวลา นั้น นิกก็ ยัง เด็ก อยู่
4. meew jàak phaa winseən paj phípíththáphan sàthǎan hēeng cháat . wát phoḥ . phrá thūn nāng wímaanmēek . lé? phrá bōrom mahāa rāatchāwang .
๔. แมว อยาก พา วินเซนท์ ไป พิพิธภัณฑสถาน แห่ง ชาติ วัด โพธิ์ พระ ที่ นั่ง วิมานเมฆ และ พระ บรม มหา ราชาวั
5. níkkū jàak phaa winseən paj thíaw thūn tàlàat . lé? thūn hāang sàpphāsīnkhaá thāwnán .
๕. นิกก็ อยาก พา วินเซนท์ ไป เที่ยว ที่ ตลาด และ ที่ ห้าง สรรพสินค้า เท่านั้น
6. cōj jàak phaa winseən paj phípíththáphan sii uj thūn roṅgphájaabaan sìrīrāt .
๖. จ้อย อยาก พา วินเซนท์ ไป ชม พิพิธภัณฑชี-อุย ที่ โรงพยาบาล ศิริราช ...
7. winseən māj jàak paj phátphong . khǎw jàak paj thíaw thūn uēn māk kwāa
๗. วินเซนท์ ไม่ อยาก ไป พัฒนพงศ์ เขา อยาก ไป เที่ยว ที่ อื่น มาก กว่า
8. níkkū sàneu paj thíaw wát àrun kan . léew theu sàneu wāa phūak theu cà phaa winseən paj thíaw thua khloong thonbùrīi dùaj .
๘. นิกก็ เสนอ ไป เที่ยว วัด อรุณ กัน และ เธอ เสนอ ว่า พวก เธอ จะ พา วินเซนท์ ไป เที่ยว ท้าว คลอง ธนบุรี ด้วย
9. tòk long phūak phūuǵing phaa winseən paj tàlàat nāt cātúcāk . phípíththáphan sàthǎan hēeng cháat . phrá thūn nāng wímaanmēek . phípíththáphan sii uj . sàjaam senteu . wát phoḥ . wát àrun . léew kô paj thíaw thua khloong thonbùrīi dùaj .
๙. ตก ลง พวก ผู้หญิง พา วินเซนท์ ไป ตลาด นัด จตุจักร พิพิธภัณฑสถาน แห่ง ชาติ พระ ที่ นั่ง วิมานเมฆ พิพิธภัณฑชี-อุย สยาม เซ็นเตอร์ วัด โพธิ์ วัด อรุณ แล้ว ก็ ไป เที่ยว ท้าว คลอง ธนบุรี ด้วย
10. winseən māj dāj phūut .
๑๐. วินเซนท์ ไม่ได้ พุด